

For enquiries regarding this toolkit, please contact:



17 GD Waverly Business Park, Wyecroft Rd, Mowbray 7705

PO BOX 12971, Mowbray, 7705, South Africa

T: +27 21 447 9566 F: +27 86 619 1623 Website: www.teampata.org



BASED AT STELLENBOSCH UNIVERSITY,  
FACULTY OF HEALTH SCIENCES

3rd Floor, Waterside Place, South Gate,  
Tyger Waterfront, Carl Cronje Drive,  
Bellville, Western Cape 7530

T: +27 21 918 4376 F: +27 21 918 4389

Toll Free: 0800 050 050

Website: www.sun.ac.za/southtosouth



P.O. Box 37580, Overport City  
Durban, 4067

T: +27 860 109 510

E: kidzalive@zoe-life.co.za or  
info@zoe-life.co.za

Website: www.zoe-life.co.za

"This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 3.0 South Africa License. To view a copy of this license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/3.0>"



ISBN: 978-0-620-50411-9

**Share** – You are free to copy, distribute and transmit this work  
**Attribution** – You must acknowledge the copyright holder and fully reference this work  
**Noncommercial** – You may not use this work for commercial purposes  
**No Derivative Works** – You may not alter, transform or build upon this work

PAEDIATRIC  
HIV CARE & TREATMENT TOOLKIT

# PAEDIATRIC HIV Care and Treatment

A TOOLKIT FOR MULTIDISCIPLINARY HEALTH CARE TEAMS





# INTRODUCTION



In response to the urgent need to expand care and treatment for children with HIV and their families, South to South in collaboration with PATA (Paediatric AIDS Treatment for Africa) and Zoe-Life, have brought together this comprehensive toolkit for public sector health facilities in Africa.

PATA is a network of frontline healthcare workers dedicated to expanding access to care for children affected and infected with HIV and their families throughout the African continent. PATA values and promotes models of care that address both the medical and psychosocial needs of the child and that offer high quality, integrated, patient-centred, and affordable services. The foundation of PATA lies with the PATA teams - multidisciplinary Treatment Teams of nurses, pharmacists, counsellors and doctors, who work together at clinics across Sub-Saharan Africa to form a community of compassionate and committed individuals who provide treatment and care to children infected with HIV and their families. The fundamental purpose of PATA is to assist Treatment Teams to improve the quality of health care they deliver to their patients. The principle of PATA lies in the belief that Treatment Teams can best improve themselves, (collectively and individually) and the quality of their work through self-initiated projects in which they have a sense of ownership, responsibility and pride.

The South to South Program for Comprehensive Family HIV Care and Treatment (South to South), an organisation based at the University of Stellenbosch, is a USAID specialist partner in the Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission (PMTCT) of HIV, Paediatric HIV, and Psychosocial programming, and responds to specific clinical and health systems strengthening needs within South Africa. As a capacity building organisation, South to South provides technical assistance through training, mentoring, resource development, and quality improvement support of healthcare workers and district teams.

Zoë-Life is a purpose-driven organisation based in South Africa that aims to equip children, communities, and countries to experience authentic abundance. This is achieved through partnering to multiply resources and through strengthening systems within a context of learning from strengths and best practices. Zoë-Life developed KidzAlive, a caregiver-facilitated, child-focused psychosocial care model designed for HIV-infected and affected children and their families. The programme offers psychosocial care and support to children and their caregivers from the point of preparing caregivers and healthcare workers for testing of children, through child-centered testing, age appropriate disclosure, care and support, treatment literacy, and adherence support as well as wellness for HIV affected children. The model and tools enable caregivers and healthcare workers to give informed and age-appropriate support to children in ways that celebrate their individual personalities using counselling and educational play.

It is our hope that the availability of this resource will help us get one step closer to the goal of eliminating the devastating effect of paediatric HIV and AIDS, and will contribute to the good health and well-being of children and families affected by HIV and AIDS throughout Africa.

# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

In response to the urgent need to expand care and treatment for children with HIV and their families, the South to South Partnership for Comprehensive Family HIV Care & Treatment Program, has developed a comprehensive toolkit for public sector health facilities in Africa.

The *Paediatric HIV Care and Treatment: A Toolkit for Multidisciplinary Health Care Teams* is a collection of job aides, reference guides, and decision-making tools which reflects the collaborative effort, collective experience, and knowledge of many institutions and individuals who are tirelessly committed to strengthening health care systems in Africa. The authors have drawn upon various curricula and program materials, incorporated theories of best practice, and enhanced these materials based on their own field experiences as well as the invaluable feedback from facilitators, participants, and health care providers.

South to South, PATA, and Zoe Life would like to express their sincere appreciation to the many individuals, institutions, and organisations who contributed a significant amount of their time and tireless effort to the development and design of this Toolkit. Special thanks to Joan Marston, Chief Executive Officer of the International Children's Palliative Care Network, for making the material available for the palliative care section. The International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease (The Union) [www.theunion.org](http://www.theunion.org) for permission to draw from the 'Desk-guide for diagnosis and management of TB in children. S.M Graham et al 2010, specifically Wall Chart 1 (Pg 141): Guidance for the screening of children in close contact with an adolescent of adult with newly diagnosed pulmonary TB, Wall Chart 2 (Pg 142): Guidance for the diagnosis of children who present with symptoms suggestive of TB, Strict Symptom Criteria (Pg 139) and Indications for requiring hospitalization/referral (Pg 138). We also thank Purple Mosaic, for laying out and designing the Toolkit.

This document was made possible through funding provided by the United States Agency for International Development (USAID), under the President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief (PEPFAR), and PATA funders, which include One to One Children's Fund, Sidaction, and the Diana Princess of Wales Memorial Fund. The KidzAlive Programme is funded by PEPFAR CDC. We also acknowledge the following organizations for their support: Department of Health, Republic of South Africa; University of Witwatersrand; Stellenbosch University; Tygerberg Children's Hospital; International Centre for AIDS Care and Treatment Programs at Columbia University (ICAP); University of Cape Town; Red Cross Children's Hospital, and the Baylor International Paediatric AIDS Initiative.

## **The following references serve as key documents which informed the main components of the toolkit:**

1. Integrated Management of Childhood Illness for High HIV Settings - Chart Booklet, World Health Organisation & Unicef. 2008.
2. Antiretroviral Therapy for HIV Infection in Infants & Children Towards Universal Access, World Health Organisation. 2010 Revision.
3. Antiretroviral Drugs for Treating Pregnant Women and Preventing HIV Infection in Infants, World Health Organisation. 2010 Version.
4. Republic of South Africa Department of Health. Primary Health Care Standard Treatment Guidelines and Essential Medicines List. 2008.
5. McKerrow NH, et al. Step by Step Guide for the Management of Children on ART. Pietermaritzburg, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. 2008.

## DISCLAIMER

The content expressed herein does not necessarily reflect the views of the funders. Although every effort was made to ensure that all information in this document is accurate and up-to-date, the authors accept no liability for the consequences of inaccurate or misleading data due to errors in writing or printing/duplication. Every effort has been made to ensure that drug doses are presented accurately, but readers are advised that these should only be followed in conjunction with the drug manufacturer's published literature.

## TERMS OF USE

The terms of use for dissemination and reproduction of the Toolkit are outlined by the Creative Commons licensing below. The principle of these terms is to ensure open-access while maintaining appropriate recognition of intellectual property in line with the philosophy of the collaborators.

*"This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 3.0 South Africa License. To view a copy of this license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/3.0>"*



ISBN: 978-0-620-50411-9

- Share** - You are free to copy, distribute and transmit this work
- Attribution** – You must acknowledge the copyright holder and fully reference this work
- Noncommercial** – You may not use this work for commercial purposes
- No Derivative Works** – You may not alter, transform or build upon this work





# HOW TO USE YOUR TOOLKIT

The *Paediatric HIV Care and Treatment: A Toolkit for Multidisciplinary Health Care Teams* is designed to assist and empower multidisciplinary HIV care teams based in hospitals, clinics, and health facilities across Africa, who provide services to infants, children, and their families, living with HIV.

The Toolkit contains innovative job aides, tools, and reference material on aspects of care in children infected with HIV. Each section begins with relevant background information, followed by a summary of each topic. The Toolkit is not a training package and we encourage users to adapt the content in line with local guidance. For this purpose, the Toolkit is contained in a binder so that the individual job aides can be copied, faxed, individually laminated, and used separately for specific purposes. It is strongly recommended that if documents are removed from the Toolkit, they should be copied first and the original replaced immediately. The Toolkit is intended to be a dynamic document, allowing individual tools to be up-dated and replaced over time. We also encourage you to add additional material to this folder, which you may deem useful.



## **KEY MESSAGE:**

***Highlights important information, and provides concise statements about a topic area and overall message and/or purpose of the section and associated tools***

This Toolkit information is for anyone to share, copy, distribute and transmit, as long as you:

- attribute the material to ECHO, South to South, PATA, and Zoe Life; as well as maintain citations to other sources cited in the Toolkit;
- do not use any of the material for commercial purposes – our work is not intended for generating profit;
- do not change or alter the contents in any way without consulting.

Please refer to Terms of Use for additional information.

No matter how you use this Toolkit, we hope it contributes to better services for children and their families affected by HIV!

## 1 IMCI & ART

- 11 Introduction
- 12 Starting ART
- 14 Providing Follow up
- 17 Mouth and Skin Lesions Pictionary

## 2 HIV CARE PACKAGES

- 24 HIV Exposed Infant Care Package
- 25 HIV Infected not on ART Care Package
- 26 HIV Infected on ART Care Package
- 27 Physical Head to Toe Examination of a Child

## 3 DIAGNOSIS

- 30 Antibody versus Virologic Tests
- 31 Under 18 Months Testing
- 34 18 Months or Older Testing
- 35 Rapid HIV Testing Procedure
- 36 Dried Blood Spots (DBS) for Infant Diagnosis
- 37 Standard Operating Procedure: Taking Blood from Infants for the HIV DNA PCR Test
- 46 Standard Operating Procedure: Taking Blood for HIV Antibody Testing

## 4 ART ELIGIBILITY, INITIATION & FOLLOW UP

- 49 Children Eligible for ART
- 51 Initiation and Follow up
- 52 ARV Drugs Mechanism of Action
- 53 Infant/Child with Confirmed HIV Infection
- 54 First Line ART Regimens
- 56 ARV Dosing Charts
- 58 Routine Follow up Visit
- 61 Side Effects of ARV Drugs
- 63 Drug Interactions
- 66 ARV and Food
- 69 Monitoring for Adverse Events
- 73 Managing ARV Toxicity
- 77 Treatment Failure
- 81 Immune Reconstitution Syndrome

## 5 PICTONARY OF PAEDIATRIC WHO STAGING

- 91 WHO Staging Conditions
- WHO STAGE 1**
- 94 - Persistent Generalised Lymphadenopathy
- WHO STAGE 2**
- 95 - Papular Pruritic Eruptions
- 96 - Recurrent or Chronic Upper Respiratory Tract Infections
- 97 - Extensive Wart Virus Infection
- 98 - Fungal Nail Infection
- 98 - Unexplained Persistent Hepatosplenomegaly
- 99 - Recurrent Oral Ulcerations
- 100 - Herpes Zoster
- 101 - Linear Gingival Erythema
- 102 - Extensive Molluscum Contagiosum
- 103 - Bilateral Painless Parotid Swelling
- WHO STAGE 3**
- 104 - Oral Thrush - Persistent or Recurrent
- 105 - Anaemia, Neutropaenia & Thrombocytopenia
- 106 - Persistent or Recurrent Diarrhoea
- 107 - Unexplained Moderate Malnutrition
- 108 - Lymphoid Interstitial Pneumonitis



# CONTENTS

109	- Chronic HIV-Associated Lung Disease
110	- Unexplained Persistent Fever
111	- Necrotizing Ulcerative Gingivitis or Periodontitis - Acute
112	- Oral Hairy Leukoplakia
113	- Recurrent Severe Bacterial Pneumonia
114	- Pulmonary Tuberculosis & TB Lymphadenitis

## WHO STAGE 4

115	- Oesophageal Candidiasis
116	- Kaposi's Sarcoma
117	- Cryptococcal Meningitis
118	- Unexplained Severe Malnutrition
119	- Recto-Vaginal Fistula
120	- Cytomegalovirus (CMV) Infection
121	- HIV Encephalopathy
122	- Pneumocystis (PCP) Pneumonia
123	- Cerebral or B-Cell Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma
124	- Progressive Multifocal Leukoencephalopathy
124	- Central Nervous System Toxoplasmosis
125	- HIV-Associated Cardiomyopathy
126	- HIV-Associated Nephropathy
127	- Recurrent Severe Bacterial Infections
128	- Chronic Isosporiasis
129	- Chronic Cryptosporidiosis
130	- Extra-Pulmonary Tuberculosis

## 6 PROPHYLAXIS

131	PMTCT Nevirapine
134	Cotrimoxazole for Prophylaxis

## 7 TB/MALARIA

138	TB Screening
143	The Tuberculin Skin Test
147	TB Treatment
148	TB Prophylaxis
149	Antiretroviral Therapy in TB/HIV Co-Infection
150	BCG Disease
153	Malaria Diagnosis and Treatment Tool for Primary Care

## 8 NUTRITION

167	Infant Feeding Recommendations for HIV Positive Mothers
173	The AFASS Criteria for Infant Formula Feeding
174	Girl's Weight-for-Age Birth to 5 years (WHO)
175	Boy's Weight-for-Age Birth to 5 years (WHO)
176	Girl's Length/Height-for-Age Birth to 5 years (WHO)
177	Boy's Length/Height-for-Age Birth to 5 years (WHO)
178	Girl's Head Circumference-for-Age (WHO)
179	Boy's Head Circumference-for-Age (WHO)
180	Girl's Weight-for-Age 5 - 10 years (WHO)
181	Boy's Weight-for-Age 5 - 10 years (WHO)
182	Girl's Height-for-Age 5 - 19 years (WHO)
183	Boy's Height-for-Age 5 - 19 years (WHO)
184	Girl's Weight-for-Age (SA)
185	Boy's Weight-for-Age (SA)
186	Weight for Length/Height Charts (SA)
187	Nutrition Risk Score in Children: Birth - 14 years
188	Nutritional Management of HIV-related Symptoms

## **9 DEVELOPMENT**

- 211 Head Circumference-for-Age Girls
- 212 Head Circumference-for-Age Boys
- 213 Developmental Milestones Red Flag
- 224 Developmental Milestones Monitoring for ART Clinics
- 230 Basic Infant Neuromotor Assessment: The Six Test Positions

## **10 PALLIATIVE CARE AND HIV**

- 231 Foreword
- 232 Pain in HIV Infected Children
- 233 Pain Assessment Tools
- 235 Basic Principles of Pain Management
- 236 Spiritual Pain
- 239 Determining the Level of Palliative Care Intervention Required

## **11 PSYCHOSOCIAL SUPPORT AND DISCLOSURE FOR CHILDREN & ADOLESCENTS**

- 242 Psychosocial Framework
- 243 Communicating with Children
- 244 Disclosure
- 246 Step by Step Guide for Conversations with Children Towards Disclosure
- 247 Assessing Adherence When Working with Children and Infants
- 249 Adherence Counselling Forms for Infants/Children
- 255 Creating an Adolescent-Friendly Environment
- 256 How to Talk to Adolescents
- 257 Stages of Adolescence
- 259 HIV Testing - The 'KidzwhoTest' Model



# IMPORTANT TELEPHONE NUMBERS

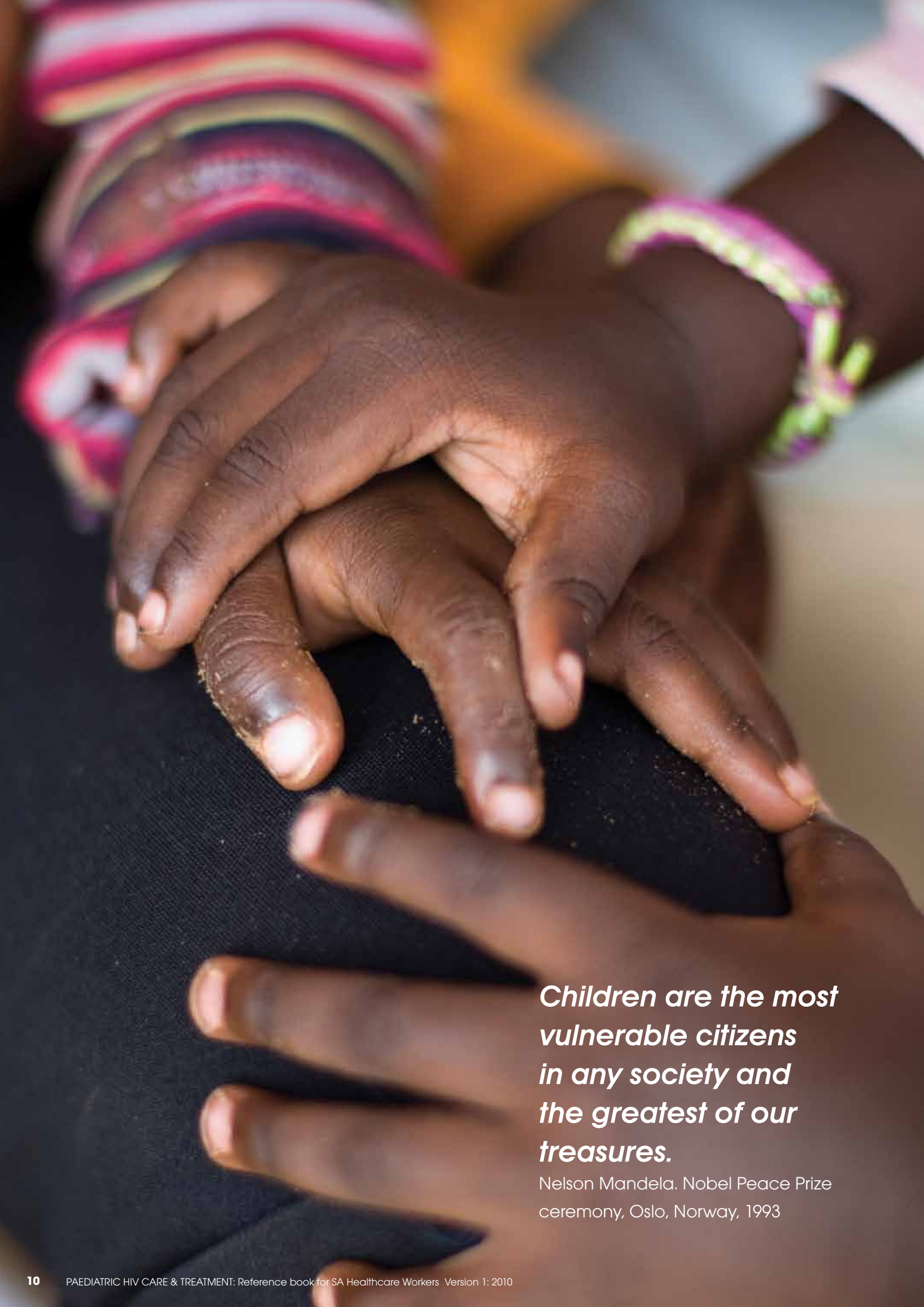
---

CONTACT	ORGANISATION	NUMBER

---

CONTACT	ORGANISATION	NUMBER





***Children are the most  
vulnerable citizens  
in any society and  
the greatest of our  
treasures.***

Nelson Mandela. Nobel Peace Prize  
ceremony, Oslo, Norway, 1993

# IMCI & ART





# IMCI & ART



## INTRODUCTION

The Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI) approach is a primary WHO strategy for reducing deaths in young children. The IMCI case management process assists health care workers to accurately identify and manage those conditions responsible for most deaths in young children, namely acute respiratory infections, diarrhoea, malnutrition and other infections. At the same time, the IMCI case management process ensures that each child receives preventative care, such as immunization and vitamin A supplementation.

South Africa was the first country to include identification and management of HIV infection in children in the IMCI Chart Booklet. Earlier editions focused on identification and provision of palliative care to children with AIDS, but as more treatments became available, the IMCI approach was adapted to include these. With a shift in the South African HIV programme in 2010, where ART was to be provided at all public health sectors, nurses were placed at the forefront of initiating and following up children on ART. This required that IMCI be expanded to include ART provision as a component of the package of health services provided at Primary Health Care (PHC) level. As a result, a simple six step approach to initiating ART in children as well as a seven step approach to providing follow-up has been added to the IMCI Chart Booklet. These steps can be used to initiate and provide follow-up to the majority of children who require ART at PHC level, especially when the diagnosis is made early, before the child develops severe signs and complications.

As this South African specific ART supplement to the IMCI Chart Booklet has been found to be extremely useful for healthcare workers, it has been included in this Toolkit as an adjunct tool to assist frontline healthcare workers when managing HIV infected children. The content has been adapted in alignment with the WHO recommendations whilst retaining the stepwise approach. These pages however do not replace the existing IMCI chart booklets or the need for formal IMCI and ART training.

This section also includes patient management recording forms based on the stepwise guidelines as well as a 'Skin and Mouth Condition' pictorial from the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness for High HIV Settings Chart Booklet (World Health Organisation 2008).

# STARTING ART

## FOLLOW THE SIX STEPS

### STEP 1: DECIDE IF THE CHILD HAS CONFIRMED HIV INFECTION

- Child less than 18 months: POSITIVE HIV Virological (PCR) test
- Child 18 months and above: POSITIVE HIV Antibody test

### STEP 2: DECIDE IF THE CHILD IS ELIGIBLE TO RECEIVE ART

- Stage the child (WHO Clinical staging)
- Record the child's CD4 count and percentage
- Decide whether the child is eligible based on the eligibility criteria (See recommended WHO eligibility criteria on page 49)
- If criteria met, move to STEP 3
- If the child does not meet the eligibility criteria, classify as CONFIRMED HIV INFECTION not on ART, and follow up (at least 3 monthly). Continue Cotrimoxazole prophylaxis and do clinical staging and a CD4 count at least six monthly to assess if the child meets the criteria for initiation of ART.

### STEP 3: DECIDE IF THE CAREGIVER IS ABLE TO GIVE ART

- Check that the caregiver is willing and able to administer ART
- The caregiver should ideally have disclosed the child's HIV status to another adult who can assist with providing ART (or to be part of a support group)
- If caregiver is able to give ART, move to STEP 4
- If not, classify as CONFIRMED HIV INFECTION not on ART, and follow up regularly with intensive psychosocial support and counseling

### STEP 4: DECIDE IF A NURSE SHOULD INITIATE ART BASED ON LOCAL GUIDELINES

- If the child has associated opportunistic infections or is severely ill, the initiation of ART may be best done at the next level of care.

### STEP 5: ASSESS AND RECORD BASELINE INFORMATION

- Record the following information:
  - Weight, height, and head circumference
  - WHO Clinical stage
  - Assess and Classify for Malnutrition and Anaemia
  - Laboratory results as per local protocol: VL (if available), CD4 count and percentage
  - Feeding assessment and problems
  - TB classification
- If the child has SEVERE MALNUTRITION, SEVERE ANAEMIA, TB or POSSIBLE TB, refer to the next level of care for initiation of ART
- If Hb is less than 10g/dL, classify as ANAEMIA and treat. Do not delay starting ART.
- Send any outstanding laboratory tests.

### STEP 6: START ART

- Decide on treatment regimen as per local guidelines (See recommended WHO first line ARV regimens for children on page 54 - 55)
- Determine ARV drug dosages based on the weight of the child (See recommended WHO ARV drug dosages on page 56)
- Remember to give Cotrimoxazole (page 134)
- Give other routine treatments (immunization, Vitamin A and deworming)
- Follow up after one week

# STARTING ART: FOLLOW THE SIX STEPS RECORDING FORM

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Age: \_\_\_\_\_ Weight: \_\_\_\_\_ Temp: \_\_\_\_\_ °C Date: \_\_\_\_\_

<p><b>ASSESS</b> <b>STEP 1: CONFIRM HIV INFECTION</b></p> <p><b>Child &lt; 18 months:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> POSITIVE HIV Virological Test    <input type="checkbox"/> POSITIVE HIV Antibody Test</p> <p><b>Child &gt; 18 months:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> POSITIVE HIV Virological Test    <input type="checkbox"/> POSITIVE HIV Antibody Test</p>		<p><b>RECORD ACTIONS AND TREATMENTS HERE: ALWAYS REMEMBER TO COUNSEL THE MOTHER AND PROVIDE ROUTINE CARE</b></p>
<p><b>STEP 2: IS THE CHILD ELIGIBLE TO RECEIVE ART?</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Yes    <input type="checkbox"/> No</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> CONFIRMED HIV INFECTION (Step 1)</p> <p>Stage 1    <input type="checkbox"/> Stage 2    <input type="checkbox"/> Stage 3    <input type="checkbox"/> Stage 4    <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown</p> <p>CD4: Count _____ %</p> <p>CD4 Criteria met:    <input type="checkbox"/> Yes    <input type="checkbox"/> No    <input type="checkbox"/> N/A</p>		
<p><b>STEP 3: IS THE CAREGIVER ABLE TO GIVE ART?</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Caregiver available and willing to give medication?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Caregiver has disclosed to another adult (or is part of a support group)</p>		
<p><b>STEP 4: SHOULD ART BE NURSE-INITIATED?</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Yes    <input type="checkbox"/> No</p>		
<p><b>STEP 5: ASSESS AND RECORD BASELINE INFORMATION</b></p> <p>Weight: _____ kg    Height: _____ cm</p> <p>Head circumference: _____</p> <p>Assess and classify for malnutrition:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> GROWING WELL    <input type="checkbox"/> NOT GROWING WELL</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> SEVERE MALNUTRITION</p> <p>Development:    <input type="checkbox"/> Normal    <input type="checkbox"/> Delayed</p> <p>Classify for TB:    <input type="checkbox"/> TB confirmed    <input type="checkbox"/> TB Exposed    <input type="checkbox"/> Possible TB</p> <p>Who Clinical Stage:    <input type="checkbox"/> 1    <input type="checkbox"/> 2    <input type="checkbox"/> 3    <input type="checkbox"/> 4</p> <p>Hb (if available): _____ g/dl    Viral load (if available) _____</p> <p>CD4: Count _____ cells/mm<sup>3</sup>    Percentage: _____ %</p>		
<p><b>STEP 6: START ART</b></p> <p>• Decide on a treatment regimen as per local guidelines</p> <p>• Determine ARV drug dosage based on the weight of the child</p> <p>• Remember to give Cotrimoxazole</p> <p>• Give other routine treatments</p>		
<p><b>PROVIDE FOLLOW UP CARE</b></p>		<p>Record ARVs and dosages here</p> <p>Record other treatments here</p>

# PROVIDING FOLLOW UP

## FOR CHILDREN ON ART (CHILD 2 MONTHS TO 5 YEARS): FOLLOW THE SEVEN STEPS

### STEP 1: ASSESS AND CLASSIFY

- **ASK**

Does the child have any problems?  
Has the child received care at another health facility since the last visit?

- **CHECK FOR GENERAL DANGER SIGNS**

Ask: Is the child able to drink or breastfeed?  
Does the child vomit everything?  
Has the child had convulsions?  
Look: see if the child is lethargic or unconscious.  
Is the child convulsing now?

- **CHECK FOR ART DANGER SIGNS (if present, REFER URGENTLY)**

Severe skin rash  
Difficulty breathing and severe abdominal pain  
Yellow eyes  
Fever, vomiting, rash (only if on Abacavir)  
Severe pallor

- **CHECK FOR MAIN SYMPTOMS (Treat and follow up accordingly)**

Cough or difficulty breathing  
Diarrhoea  
Fever  
Ear problem  
Mouth and Skin lesions

### STEP 2: MONITOR PROGRESS ON ART

- Assess and classify for **Malnutrition and Anaemia**  
Record the child's weight, height and head circumference
- Assess **Development**  
Decide if the child is developing well/ has some delay/ is losing milestones
- Assess **Adherence**  
Ask how often, if ever, the child misses a dose. Record your assessment
- Assess for **Drug Side Effects**  
Ask specifically about the side effects of the drugs the child is taking  
Manage mild side effects
- Assess **Clinical Progress**  
Assess the child's clinical WHO stage and document if any new stage 3 or 4 staging events  
Compare with the stage at previous visits
- Monitor **Blood Results**  
Record results of tests that have been sent  
Send tests that are due

### **STEP 3: PROVIDE ART**

- If the child is stable, continue with the current regimen
- Remember to check drug doses - these will need to increase as the child grows

### **STEP 4: PROVIDE OTHER HIV TREATMENTS**

- Provide cotrimoxazole prophylaxis (pg 134)

**NOTE:** Remember cotrimoxazole can be stopped once the child has been stable on ART for at least six months, and has had two CD4 counts higher than 500cells/mL (or higher than 15%) taken at least three months apart.

### **STEP 5: PROVIDE ROUTINE CARE**

- Check that the child's immunizations are up to date
- Provide Vitamin A and deworming if due

### **STEP 6: COUNSEL THE MOTHER OR CAREGIVER**

- Use every visit to provide support to the mother or care giver
- Key issues to discuss include:
  - How the child is progressing, feeding, adherence, side-effects and correct management, disclosure (to others and the child), and support for the caregiver
  - Remember to check that the mother and other family members are receiving the care that they need

### **STEP 7: ARRANGE A FOLLOW UP**






# ART FOLLOW UP: RECORDING FORM





Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Age: \_\_\_\_\_ Weight: \_\_\_\_\_ Temp: \_\_\_\_\_ °C Date: \_\_\_\_\_

<b>STEP 1: ASSESS AND CLASSIFY</b>					
ASK: Does the child have any problems? If yes, record here: ASK: Has the child received care at another health facility since the last visit? If yes, record here:					
<b>Check for General Danger Signs:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> NOT ABLE TO DRINK OR BREASTFEED <input type="checkbox"/> CONVULSIONS DURING THIS ILLNESS <input type="checkbox"/> VOMITS EVERYTHING <input type="checkbox"/> LETHARGIC OR UNCONSCIOUS <b>Check for ART Danger Signs:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Severe skin rash <input type="checkbox"/> Difficulty breathing and severe abdominal pain <input type="checkbox"/> Yellow eyes <input type="checkbox"/> Fever, vomiting, rash (only if on Abacavir) <input type="checkbox"/> Severe pallor	Provide pre-referral treatment and <b>REFER URGENTLY</b>	Record actions taken			
<b>Check for Main Symptoms</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Cough or difficult breathing <input type="checkbox"/> Diarrhoea <input type="checkbox"/> Fever <input type="checkbox"/> Ear problem <input type="checkbox"/> Other problems <input type="checkbox"/> Mouth and skin lesions <b>Consider (screen for) TB</b> <input type="checkbox"/> No classification required <input type="checkbox"/> TB <input type="checkbox"/> TB EXPOSURE <input type="checkbox"/> Possible TB	Assess, classify, treat and follow up according to IMCI guidelines. Refer if necessary.  If TB, refer. If POSSIBLE TB, manage according to IMCI Chart booklet and refer if needed.	Record actions taken			
<b>STEP 2: MONITOR ARV TREATMENT</b>					
<b>Assess and classify for Malnutrition</b> Weight _____ kg    Height _____ cm Head circumference _____ cm <input type="checkbox"/> GROWING WELL <input type="checkbox"/> NOT GROWING WELL <input type="checkbox"/> SEVERE MALNUTRITION <b>Assess development</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Developing well <input type="checkbox"/> Some delay <input type="checkbox"/> Losing milestones <b>Assess adherence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Takes all doses <input type="checkbox"/> Occasionally misses a dose <input type="checkbox"/> Frequently misses doses <input type="checkbox"/> Not taking medication <b>Assess side-effects:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Nausea <input type="checkbox"/> Diarrhoea <input type="checkbox"/> Rash <input type="checkbox"/> Sleep disturbances <input type="checkbox"/> Dizziness <input type="checkbox"/> Tingling, numb or painful hands, feet or legs <input type="checkbox"/> Abnormal distribution of fat <input type="checkbox"/> Other <b>Assess clinical progress:</b> Stage when ART initiated <input type="checkbox"/> Stage 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Stage 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Stage 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Stage 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown Any new Stage 3 or 4 conditions?: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <b>Monitor blood results:</b> Record latest results here: Date taken _____ CD4 (if available): Count _____ cells/mm3 Percentage % _____ Viral Load (if available) _____ If on Lopinavir/Ritonavir (yearly): LDL Chol _____ TGs _____	<b>IF ANY OF THE FOLLOWING ARE PRESENT, REFER THE CHILD TO THE NEXT LEVEL OF CARE</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not gaining weight for 3 months</li> <li>Loss of developmental milestones</li> <li>Suspected Treatment Failure                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- New clinical Stage 3 or 4 illnesses (clinical treatment failure)</li> <li>- CD4 count decreasing (immunological failure)</li> <li>- Viral load increasing despite adherence counselling and support (virological failure)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Significant side effects                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- LDL cholesterol higher than 3.5 mmol/L</li> </ul> </li> <li>TGs higher than 5.6 mmol/L</li> </ul> Manage side effects  Send tests that are due <input type="checkbox"/> CD4 count <input type="checkbox"/> Viral load <input type="checkbox"/> LDL, cholesterol and Triglycerides	Record actions taken			
<b>STEP 3: PROVIDE ART</b>		<b>STEP 4: PROVIDE OTHER HIV TR</b>		<b>STEP 5: PROVIDE ROUTINE CARE</b>	
ARVs	DOSAGE	OTHER	DOSAGE	MEDICATION Vitamin A Deworming Immunizations Other medication	RECORD
REMEMBER TO CHECK DOSES - THESE NEED TO BE INCREASED AS THE CHILD GAINS WEIGHT					
<b>STEP 6: COUNSEL</b>					
Use every visit to educate and provide support to the caregiver. Key issues to discuss include: How the child is progressing, adherence, side-effects and correct management, disclosure (to others and to the child) and support for the caregiver.					Record actions taken
<b>STEP 7: PROVIDE FOLLOW UP</b>					
If the child is well, make a follow-up date in one month's time. Follow-up any problems more frequently					




# MOUTH AND SKIN LESIONS PICTONARY IMCI CHARTBOOK FOR HIGH INCIDENCE HIV SETTING

IDENTIFY SKIN PROBLEM IF SKIN IS ITCHING				
SIGNS	CLASSIFY AS:	TREATMENT	UNIQUE FEATURES IN HIV	
 <p>Itching rash with small papules and scratch marks. Dark spots with pale centres.</p>	<p><b>PAPULAR ITCHING RASH (PRURIGO)</b></p>	<p>Treat itching: - Calamine lotion - Antihistamine by mouth If not improved, 1% hydrocortisone.</p> <p>Can be an early sign of HIV and needs assessment for HIV.</p>	<p>Is a Clinical Stage 2 defining disease.</p>	
 <p>An itchy circular lesion with a raised edge and fine scaly area in centre with loss of hair. May also be found on body or web of feet.</p>	<p><b>RINGWORM (TINEA)</b></p>	<p>Whitfield's ointment or other anti-fungal cream if few patches.</p> <p>If extensive Refer, if not give: ketoconazole for 2 up to 12 months (6-10kg) 40 mg per day. For 12 months up to 5 years give 60mg per day. Or give griseofulvin 10mg/kg/day.</p> <p>If in hairline shave hair. Treat itching as above.</p>	<p>Extensive: There is a high incidence of coexisting nail infection which has to be treated adequately, to prevent recurrences of tinea infection of skin.</p> <p>Fungal nail infection is a Clinical Stage 2 defining disease.</p>	
 <p>Rash and excoriations on torso, burrows in web space and wrist. Face spared.</p>	<p><b>SCABIES</b></p>	<p>Treat itching as above.</p> <p>Manage with anti-scabies medications: 25% topical benzyl benzoate at night, repeat for 3 days after washing.</p> <p>1% topical lindane cream or lotion once - wash off after 12 hours.</p>	<p>In HIV positive individuals scabies may manifest as crusted scabies.</p> <p>Crusted scabies presents as extensive areas of crusting mainly on the scalp, face, back and feet. Patients may not complain of itch but the scales will be teeming with mites.</p>	



# IDENTIFY SKIN PROBLEM IF SKIN HAS BLISTERS/SORES/PUSTULES

SIGNATURE		SIGNS	CLASSIFY AS:	TREATMENT	UNIQUE FEATURES IN HIV
	Vesicles over body. Vesicles appear progressively over days and form scabs after they rupture.	<b>CHICKEN POX</b>	Treat itching as above. Refer URGENTLY if pneumonia or jaundice appear.	Presentation atypical only if child is immunocompromised. Duration of disease is longer. Complications more frequent. Chronic infection with continued appearance of new lesions for >1 month; typical vesicles evolve into nonhealing ulcers that become necrotic, crusted and hyperkeratotic	
	Vesicles in one area on one side of the body with intense pain or scars plus shooting pain. Herpes zoster is uncommon in children except where they are immuno-compromised, for example if infected with HIV	<b>HERPES ZOSTER</b>	Keep lesions clean and dry. Use local antiseptic. If eye involved give acyclovir - 20 mg/kg (max 800 mg) 4 times daily for 5 days. Give pain relief. Follow-up in 7 days.	Duration of disease longer. Haemorrhagic vesicles, necrotic ulceration. Rarely recurrent, disseminated or multifidematomal. Is a clinical Stage 2 defining disease.	
	Vesicular lesion or sores, also involving lips and/or mouth.	<b>HERPES SIMPLEX</b>	If child unable to feed, refer. If first episode or severe ulceration, give acyclovir as above.	Extensive area of involvement. Large ulcers. Delayed healing (often greater than a month). Resistance to Acyclovir common. Therefore continue treatment till complete healing of ulcer. Chronic HSV infection (>1 month) is a clinical Stage 4 defining disease.	
	Red, tender warm crusts or small lesions.	<b>IMPETIGO OR FOLLICULITIS</b>	Clean sores with antiseptic. Drain pus if fluctuant. Start cloxacillin if size >4cm or red streaks or tender nodes or multiple abscesses for 5 days (25-50 mg/kg every 6 hours). Refer URGENTLY if child has fever and/or if infection extends to the muscle.		

# IDENTIFY PAPULAR LESIONS: NON-ITCHY

	PRESENTING SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	CLASSIFY	MANAGEMENT & TREATMENT	UNIQUE FEATURES IN HIV
	<p>Skin coloured pearly white papules with a central umbilication.</p> <p>It is most commonly seen on the face and trunk in children.</p>	<p><b>MOLLUSCUM CONTAGIOSUM</b></p>	<p>Can be treated by various modalities:</p> <p>Leave them alone unless superinfected.</p> <p>Pricking each lesion with a needle or sharpened orange stick and dabbing with phenol Electrodesiccation.</p> <p>Liquid nitrogen application (using orange stick).</p> <p>Curettage.</p>	<p>Incidence is higher</p> <p>Giant molluscum (&gt;1cm in size), or coalescent double or triple lesions may be seen.</p> <p>More than 100 lesions may be seen.</p> <p>Lesions often chronic and difficult to eradicate.</p> <p>Extensive molluscum contagiosum is a clinical Stage 2 defining disease.</p>
	<p>The common wart appears as papules or nodules with a rough (verrucous) surface.</p>	<p><b>WARTS</b></p>	<p>Topical salicylic acid preparations (eg. Duofilm).</p> <p>Liquid nitrogen cryotherapy.</p> <p>Electrocautery.</p>	<p>Lesions more numerous and recalcitrant to therapy.</p> <p>Extensive viral warts is a Clinical Stage 2 defining disease.</p>
	<p>Greasy scales and redness on central face, body folds.</p>	<p><b>SEBBHORREA</b></p>	<p>Ketoconazole shampoo.</p> <p>If severe, refer or provide topical steroids.</p> <p>For seborrheic dermatitis: 1% hydrocortisone cream x 2 daily. If severe, refer.</p>	<p>Seborrheic dermatitis may be severe in HIV infection. Secondary infection may be common.</p>

# MOUTH PROBLEMS: THRUSH

	SIGNS	CLASSIFY	TREATMENT
	Not able to swallow.	<b>SEVERE OESOPHAGEAL THRUSH</b>	Refer urgently to hospital. If not able to refer, give fluconazole. If mother is breast-feeding check and treat the mother for breast thrush. (STAGE 4 disease)
	Pain or difficulty swallowing.	<b>OESPHAGEAL THRUSH</b>	Give fluconazole. Give oral care to young infant or child. If mother is breast feeding, check and treat the mother for breast thrush. Follow up in 2 days. Tell the mother when to come back immediately. Once stabilized, refer for ART initiation. (Stage 4 disease).
	White patches in mouth which can be scraped off.	<b>ORAL THRUSH</b>	<p>Counsel the mother on home care for oral thrush. The mother should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Wash her hands.</li> <li>- Wash the young infant/child's mouth with a soft clean cloth wrapped around her finger and wet with salt water.</li> <li>- Instill 1ml nystatin four times per day or paint the mouth with half strength gentian violet for 7 days</li> <li>- Wash her hands after providing treatment for the young infant or child</li> <li>- Avoid feeding for 20 minutes after medication.</li> <li>- If breastfed, check mother's breasts for thrush. If present (dry shiny scales on nipples and areola), treat with nystatin or GV.</li> <li>- Advise the mother to wash breasts after feeds.</li> <li>- If bottle fed, advise to change to cup and spoon.</li> <li>- If severe, recurrent or pharyngeal thrush, consider symptomatic HIV.</li> <li>- Refer for ART initiation (stage 3 disease).</li> <li>- Give Paracetamol if needed for pain.</li> </ul>
	Most frequently seen on the sides of the tongue, a white plaque with a corrugated appearance.	<b>ORAL HAIRY LEUCOPLAKIA</b>	Does not independently require treatment, but resolves with ART and Acyclovir (Stage 2 disease)



*Nursing is a work  
of Heart!*



*Investment in AIDS will be repaid  
a thousand-fold in lives saved  
and communities held together.*

Dr. Peter Piot, Executive Director, UNAIDS





# HIV CARE PACKAGES



# HIV CARE PACKAGES

Depending upon a child's HIV test results, whether there is any ongoing HIV exposure, and ARV treatment eligibility, every child may be categorized as either:

- HIV Negative
- HIV Exposed
- HIV Infected not on ART
- HIV Infected on ART

This is a helpful approach since each patient category can be provided with a certain "care package" or set of healthcare services outlined by national HIV care and treatment guidelines. The exception is patients found to be HIV Negative whom require only routine child health services.



## *KEY MESSAGE:*

***Care Packages are a reminder to offer comprehensive prevention, treatment, and support services.***

The following pages outline the various HIV care and treatment packages for children. They may be used as checklists during patient visits, copied for insert into clinic files, or implemented as a quick reference to ensure comprehensive service provision. Busy clinics might not allow for every aspect of the care package to be provided at every visit, however, at some point the entire care package should be offered to ensure quality service provision and successful patient outcomes.

## HIV EXPOSED INFANT CARE PACKAGE

- ✓ Measure weight, height, and head circumference. Plot on growth chart, interpret, and classify nutritional status.
- ✓ Screen for the following concerning clinical features:
  - Hospitalization
  - Cough
  - TB
  - Fever
  - Oral thrush
  - Diarrhoea
  - Malnutrition
  - Developmental DelayIf any are present, conduct a thorough clinical review and determination of possible repeat HIV testing.
- ✓ Ongoing HIV testing and diagnosis. Does the infant have any new HIV testing results to evaluate?
  - If yes, determine the HIV status based upon test results
  - If no, does the infant need repeat testing today based on age and time since weaning?
- ✓ Assess and educate the mother on her infant feeding options and important steps she can take to minimize HIV transmission while promoting overall feeding safety and healthy infant outcomes.
- ✓ Provide vertical transmission prevention prophylaxis therapy to all HIV exposed infants in the first 6 weeks of life and continue thereafter, if:
  - Infant is breastfeeding AND
  - Mother is not on lifelong ART
- ✓ Assess the child's development
- ✓ Provide Cotrimoxazole prophylaxis therapy (CPT)
- ✓ Ensure the infant receives routine child health services such as immunisation, Vitamin A supplementation, and deworming.
- ✓ Take a family history for HIV, TB, and any other concerns that may impact the infant's health or ability to receive ongoing chronic care. Encourage HIV testing for all family members, even if clinically well.
- ✓ Ensure the mother is accessing her own HIV care, treatment, and maternal support services.
- ✓ Discuss family planning with the infant's parents and offer further information or family planning services as requested.
- ✓ Document health information in the Child Health Record / Passport and clinic file. Key information includes:
  - HIV test information: Type of test, test date, test results
  - Breastfeeding status (exclusive, mixed feeding, weaned, etc.)
  - Nutritional and developmental assessment
  - Any medical problems and treatments, including drug dosages
  - Counseling notes
  - Due date for repeat HIV testing if indicated
  - Review date



## HIV INFECTED NOT ON ART CARE PACKAGE

- ✓ Measure weight, height, and head circumference (HC if less than 3 years). Plot on growth chart, interpret, and classify nutritional status.
- ✓ Screen for the following concerning clinical features:
  - Hospitalization
  - Cough
  - TB
  - Fever
  - Oral thrush
  - Diarrhoea
  - Malnutrition
  - Developmental Delay.If any are present, conduct a thorough clinical review and investigations as indicated.
- ✓ Ongoing reassessment of ART eligibility.
  - Clinical review for any new WHO staging conditions at least every 3 months. More frequent review for children with active illness, pending investigations or complications.
  - CD4 percentage (Under 5y of age) and/or total CD4 count (all ages) every 6 months.
- ✓ Provide Cotrimoxazole prophylaxis as indicated.
- ✓ Psychosocial support to the child and family, including the reassessment and empowerment of the child disclosure process. Involve the child in his/her own healthcare.
- ✓ Ensure the child receives routine child health services such as immunisation, Vitamin A supplementation, and deworming.
- ✓ Take a family history for HIV, TB, and any other concerns that may impact the infant's health or ability to receive ongoing chronic care. Encourage HIV testing for all family members, even if clinically well.
- ✓ Discuss family planning with the infant's parents and offer further information or family planning services as requested.
- ✓ Document health information in the Child Health Record / Passport and clinic file. Key information includes:
  - Child age and WHO stage
  - HIV test information: Type of test, test date, test results
  - Nutritional and developmental assessment
  - Any medical problems and treatments, including drug dosages
  - Laboratory results (CD4%, FBC, etc.)
  - Counselling notes
  - Review date

## HIV INFECTED ON ART CARE PACKAGE

- ✓ Measure weight, height, and head circumference (HC if less than 3 years). Plot on growth chart, interpret, and classify nutritional status.
- ✓ Assess and treat any new illness while considering:
  - Are there any new WHO staging conditions? Especially Stage 3 or 4 which may represent a poor response to ART.
  - Are there any treatment side effects or toxicities?
- ✓ Provide ongoing care for any chronic conditions.
- ✓ Provide routine ART monitoring as per your local guideline schedule.
  - Clinical response
  - Immunologic (CD4) and virologic (viral load) response if available
  - ART toxicity surveillance
- ✓ Assess and promote patient adherence to the treatment regimen.
  - Discuss successes and challenges
  - Medication bottle inspection and pill counts
  - Caregiver support – provide individualized adherence counselling support when indicated.
- ✓ Provide Cotrimoxazole prophylaxis as indicated.
- ✓ Psychosocial support to the child and family, including the reassessment and empowerment of child disclosure process. Involve the child in his/her own healthcare.
- ✓ Ensure the infant receives routine child health services such as immunisation, Vitamin A supplementation, and deworming.
- ✓ Take a family history for HIV, TB, and any other concerns that may impact the infant's health or ability to receive ongoing chronic care. Encourage HIV testing for all family members, even if clinically well.
- ✓ Discuss family planning with the infant's parents and offer further information or family planning services as requested.
- ✓ Document health information in the Child Health Record / Passport and clinic file. Key information includes:
  - Child age and WHO stage
  - Nutritional and developmental assessment
  - Any medical problems and treatments
  - ARV regimen, dosages and quantity dispensed
  - Cotrimoxazole dosing and quantity dispensed (if indicated)
  - Laboratory results (CD4%, FBC, etc.)
  - Counselling notes
  - Review date

# PHYSICAL HEAD TO TOE EXAMINATION OF A CHILD

1



- **Skeletal abnormalities:** motor activity, gait, shape
- **Skin abnormalities:** colour, hydration
- **State of health:** severity of illness, level of consciousness, growth and nutrition, development, level of hygiene

2



- Temperature
- Pulse (rate, rhythm and volume)
- Respiration
- Colour

3



- Weight (check against previous records)
- Head circumference
- Height/Length

4



- Anterior fontanelle
- Posterior fontanelle (neonates)
- Hair
- Scalp
- Face

5



- Position & alignment
- Vision including fields
- Eyebrows
- Eyelids
- Conjunctiva
- Sclera
- Cornea
- Iris
- Pupils

6



- Size
- Position
- Ear canal
- Ear drum
- Hearing

7



- Nasal Mucosa
- Septum
- Turbinates
- Frontal and Maxillary Sinuses

8



- Lips
- Buccal mucosa
- Teeth
- Gums
- Tongue
- Pharynx
- Hard & soft palates
- Lymph nodes

9



- Size of trachea
- Position of trachea

10



- Length of fingers
- Fingers and nails

11



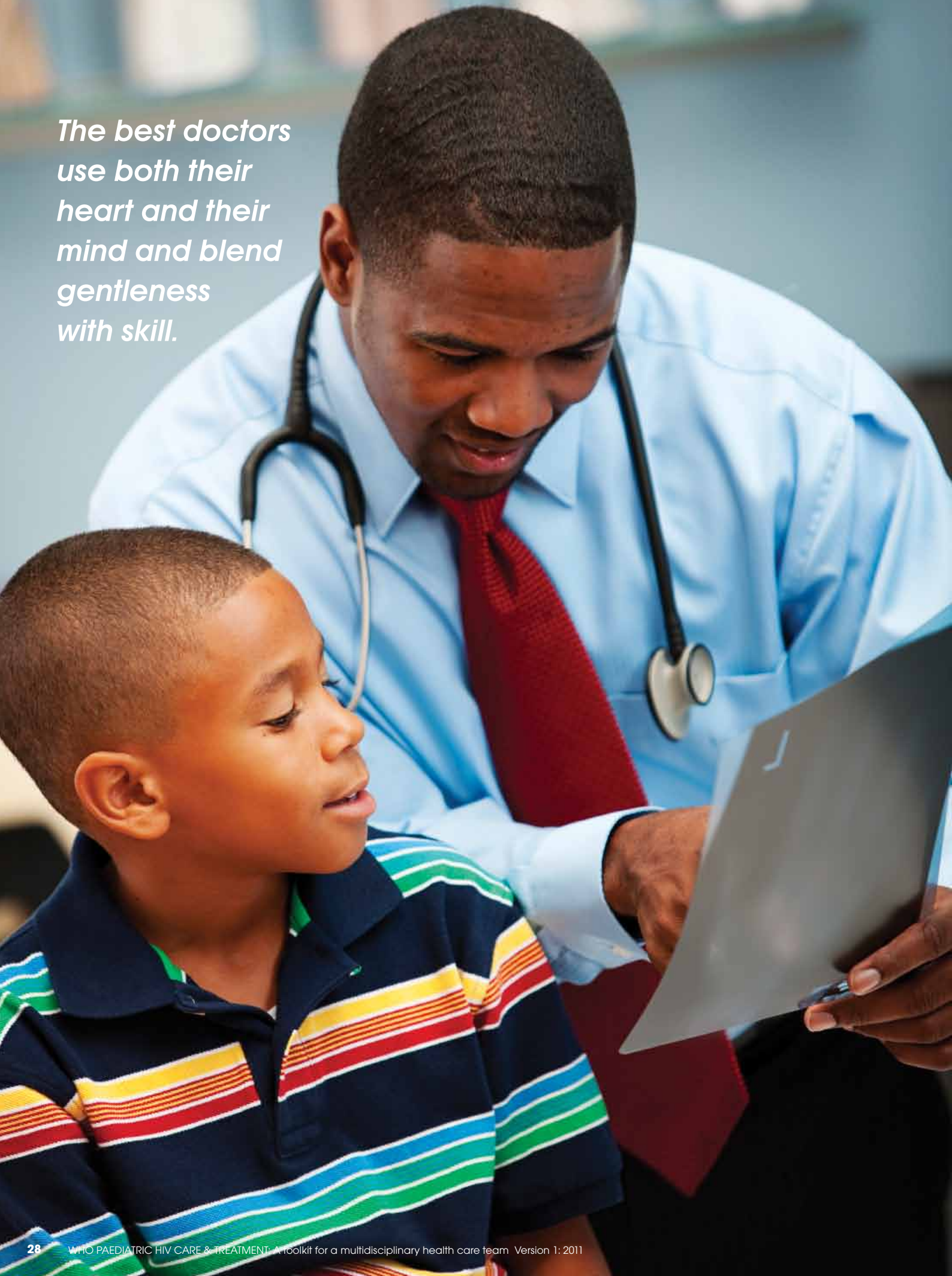
- Observe shape, symmetry of chest movements, breathing
- Palpate: position of apex beat
- Percussion: dullness
- Auscultation: breath & heart sounds

12



- Genitalia

*The best doctors  
use both their  
heart and their  
mind and blend  
gentleness  
with skill.*





# DIAGNOSIS



# DIAGNOSIS

Approximately half of perinatally HIV-infected children who do not receive any treatment will die by two years of age. Therefore, early identification of children exposed to and infected with HIV is key to reducing the risk of death. This begins with the identification of HIV-infected women during pregnancy and close mother-infant follow-up. However, some infants and children are “late comers” or become ill with concerning symptoms. Therefore, just as all children are assessed for malnutrition and anaemia, HIV infection needs to be considered in all children.



## KEY MESSAGE:

**Early identification of HIV status among children is essential to prevent rapid HIV progression and death.**

*This health service delivery approach is called Provider Initiated Counselling & Testing (PICT) and is the recommended approach to HIV testing. Historically, HIV testing was often delegated to Voluntary Counselling and Testing (VCT) rooms and delivered as a separate service from routine child healthcare. In PICT, healthcare workers must take an active role in routinely integrating the offering of HIV testing to all children who come to the health facility. Of course, children with concerning signs and symptoms or family members with HIV will remain a priority focus. However, with the PICT approach we also recognize that HIV-infected patients can appear healthy and unaware of their status. The only way to know for sure is to test. The PICT approach to HIV testing remains voluntary and continues with pre- and post-test counselling information.*



**KEY MESSAGE:**

*Routine offering of HIV testing should be integrated into routine child health visits. An example of a PICT approach is expanding where HIV testing takes place to include exam or immunisation rooms for a one-stop consultation service.*

**ANTIBODY VERSUS VIROLOGIC TESTS**

HIV testing can be done using either antibody or virologic tests. The table below explains some of the important differences between these tests.

ANTIBODY TESTS	VIROLOGIC TESTS
<p>These tests detect antibodies made by immune cells in response to the virus.</p> <p>They do not detect the virus itself.</p> <p>Antibodies from the mother pass on to the child and most have gone by 12 months of age, but in some instances they do not disappear until the child is 18 months of age.</p> <p>This means that a positive antibody test in children under the age of 18 months is not a reliable way to check for infection in the child. However, a positive test would indicate the infant is HIV exposed which may be of use in situations of unknown maternal HIV status.</p>	<p>These tests directly detect the presence of the HIV virus or products of the virus in the blood.</p> <p>Positive virological tests can therefore reliably detect HIV infection at any age, even before the child is 18 months old.</p> <p>If the tests are negative and the child has been breastfeeding, this does not rule out infection as the infant may have just become infected.</p> <p>Virological tests done six weeks or more after completely stopping breastfeeding rule out infection.</p>
<p><b>Examples of antibody tests:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rapid HIV tests</li> <li>• ELISA</li> </ul>	<p><b>Examples of virologic tests:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HIV DNA PCR (collected by DBS)</li> <li>• HIV RNA PCR (viral load)</li> </ul>



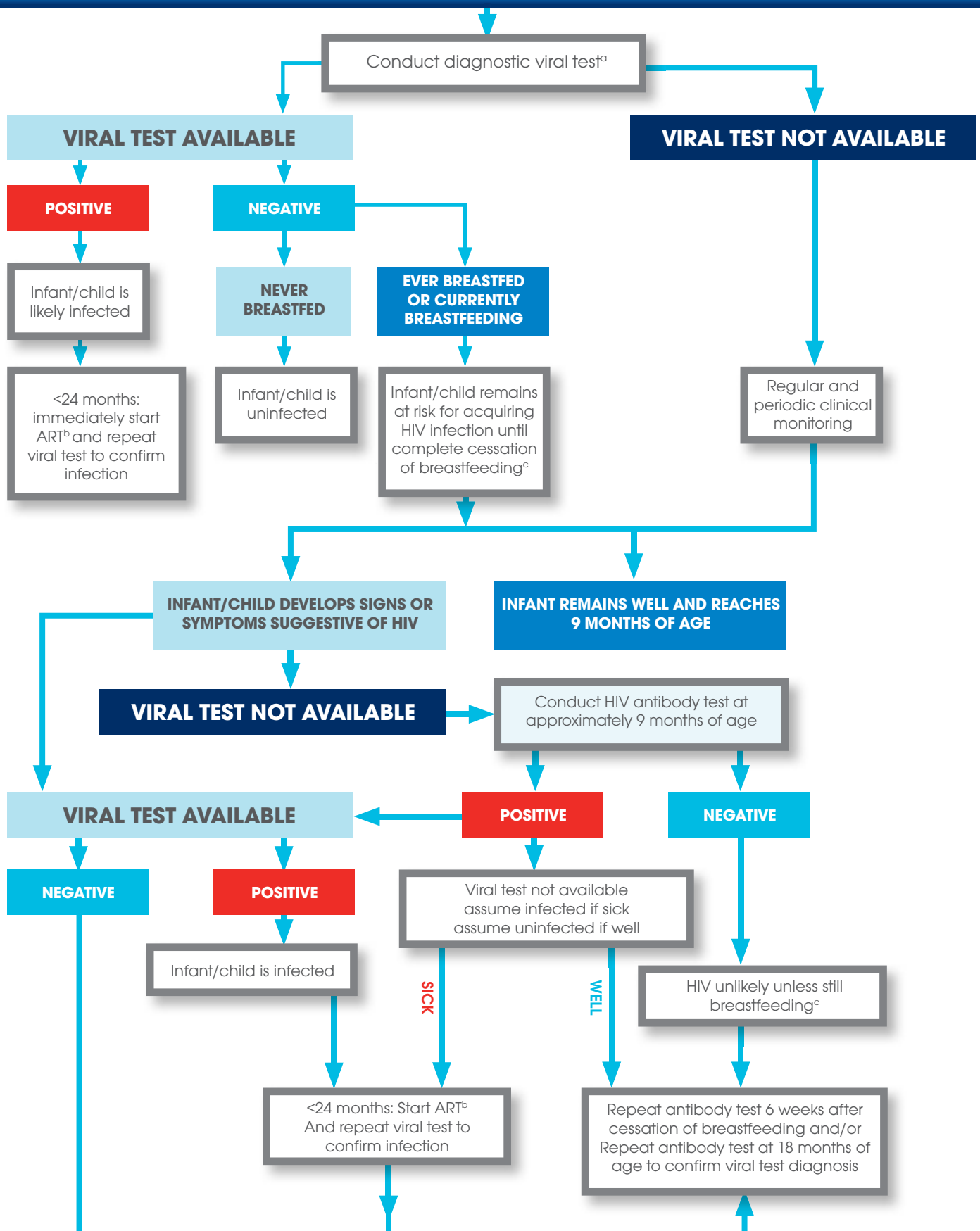
**KEY MESSAGE:**

*Below 18 months of age a virologic test is needed to determine if a child is infected with HIV.*

*Using two different rapid tests for confirming HIV infection in children 18 months or older is preferred to ELISA due to rapid results, especially at primary healthcare facilities where specimen transport to a laboratory is required. ELISA is indicated as a tie-breaker when rapid tests differ. (See algorithm, page 35)*

Establishing the presence of HIV infection in HIV exposed infants and children less than 18 months of age in resource-limited settings

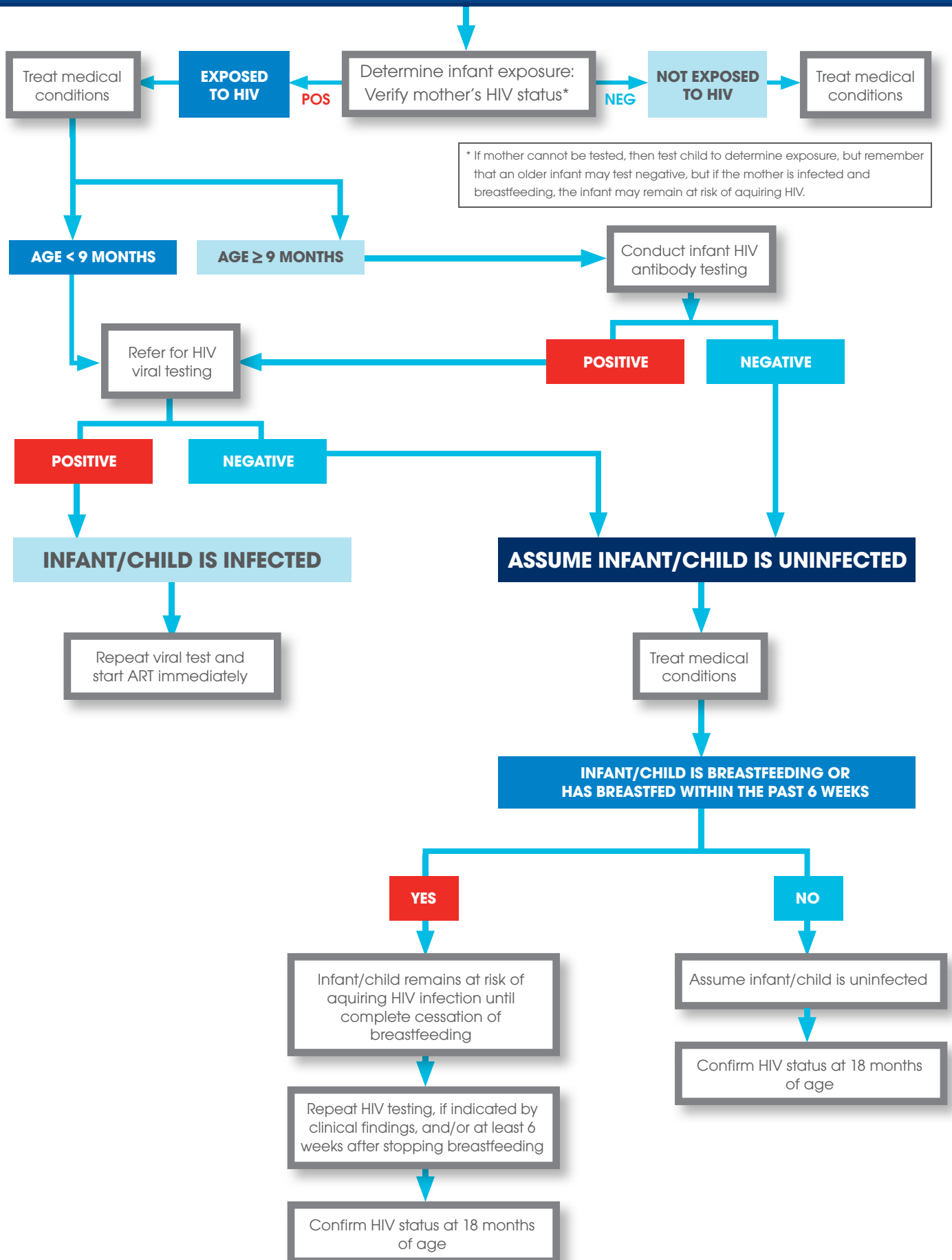
**HIV EXPOSED INFANT OR CHILD < 18 MONTHS**



a For newborn, test first at or around birth or at the first postnatal visit (usually 4 - 6 weeks)  
 b Start ART, if indicated, without delay. At the same time, retest to confirm infection.  
 c The risk of HIV transmission remains as long as breastfeeding continues.

Establishing the presence of HIV infection in sick infants and children less than 18 months of age, in resource-limited settings where viral testing **IS AVAILABLE**.

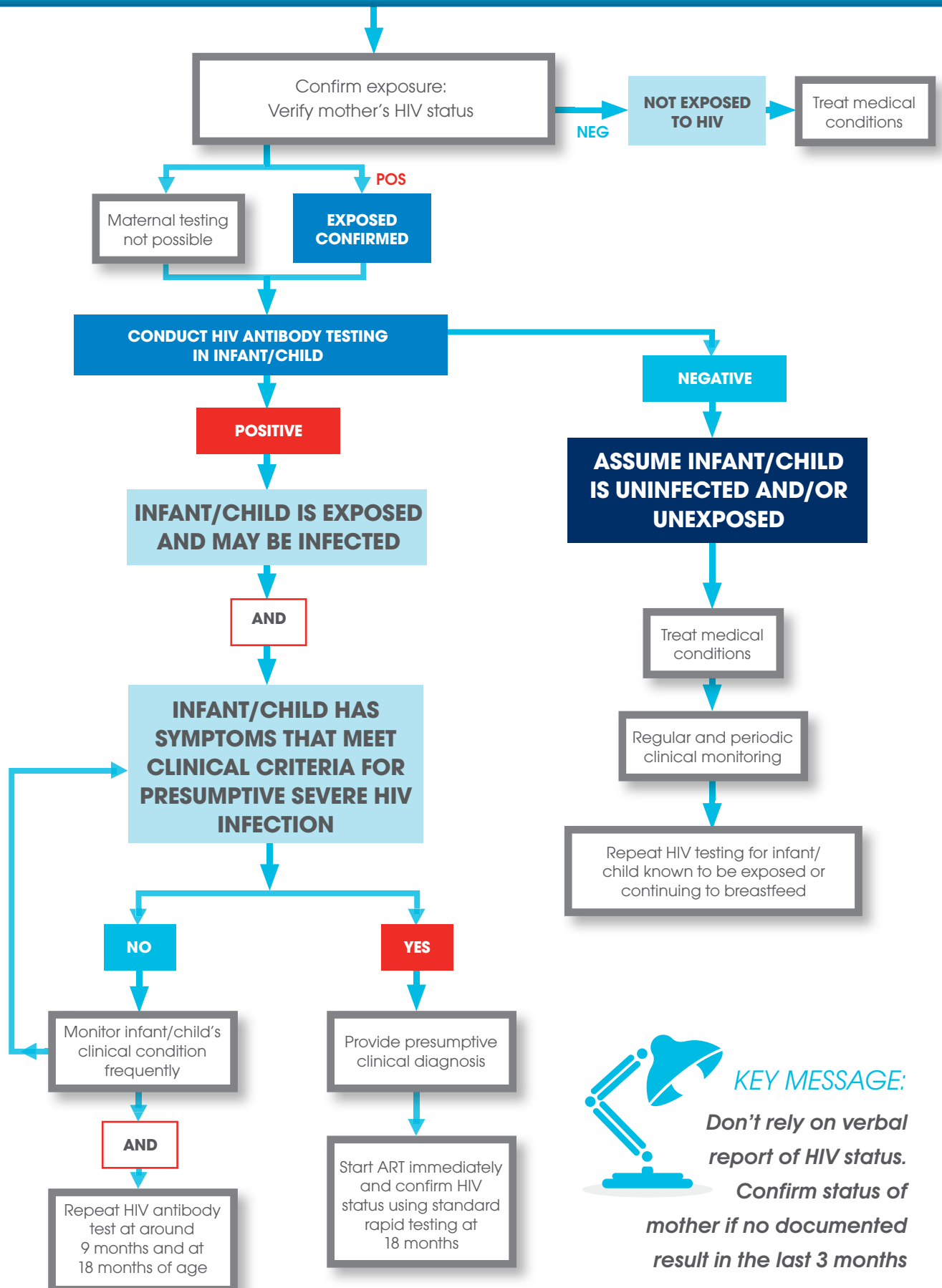
**SICK INFANT/CHILD ≤ 18 MONTHS OF AGE WITH UNKNOWN HIV EXPOSURE & SIGNS & SYMPTOMS SUGGESTIVE OF HIV INFECTION**





Establishing the presence of HIV infection in sick infants and children less than 18 months of age, in resource-limited settings where viral testing is **NOT AVAILABLE**.

**SICK INFANT/CHILD ≤ 18 MONTHS OF AGE WITH UNKNOWN HIV EXPOSURE & SIGNS & SYMPTOMS SUGGESTIVE OF HIV INFECTION**



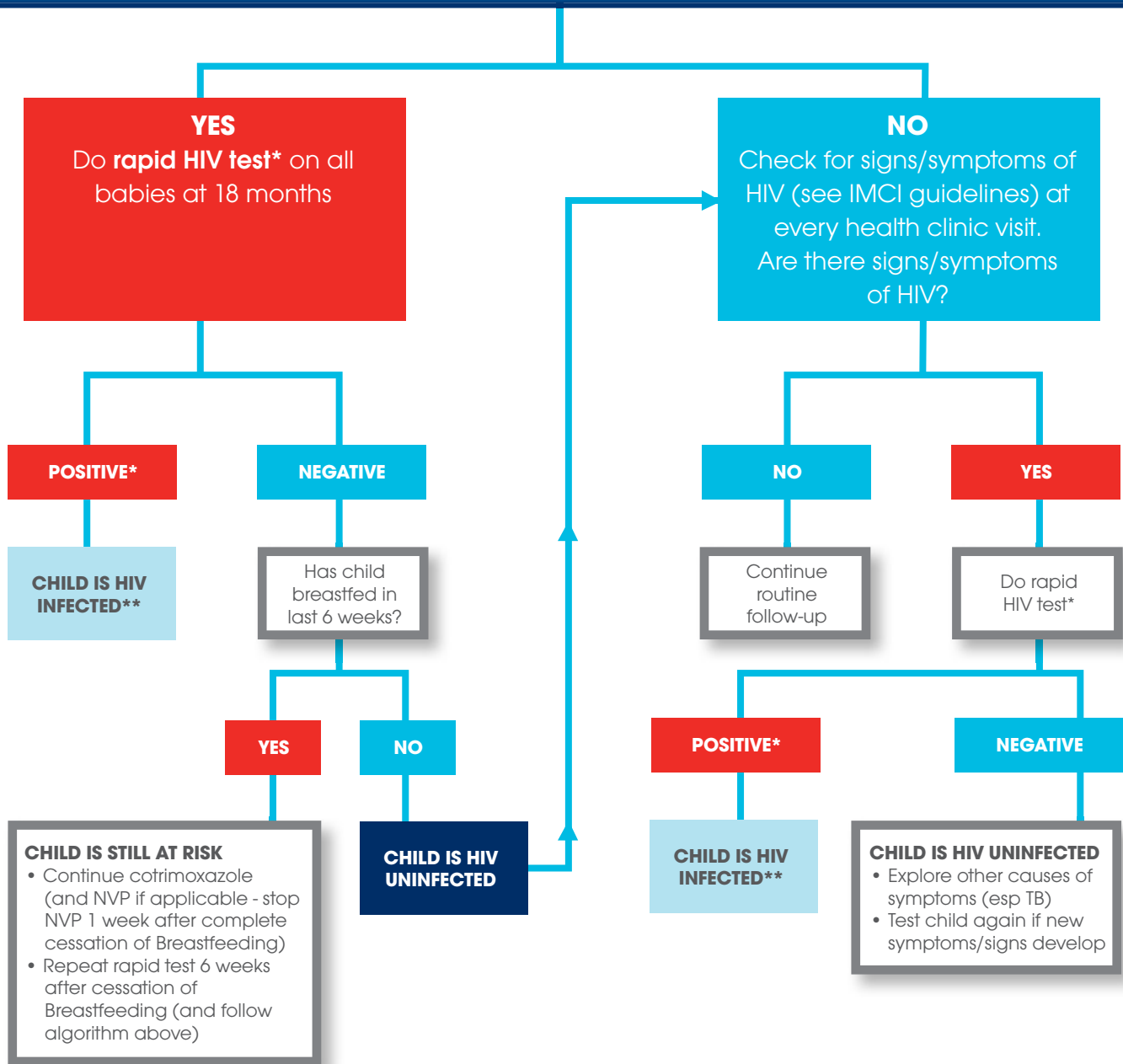
**KEY MESSAGE:**

*Don't rely on verbal report of HIV status.*

*Confirm status of mother if no documented result in the last 3 months*

# HIV TESTING IN CHILDREN >18 MONTHS

## HIV EXPOSED?

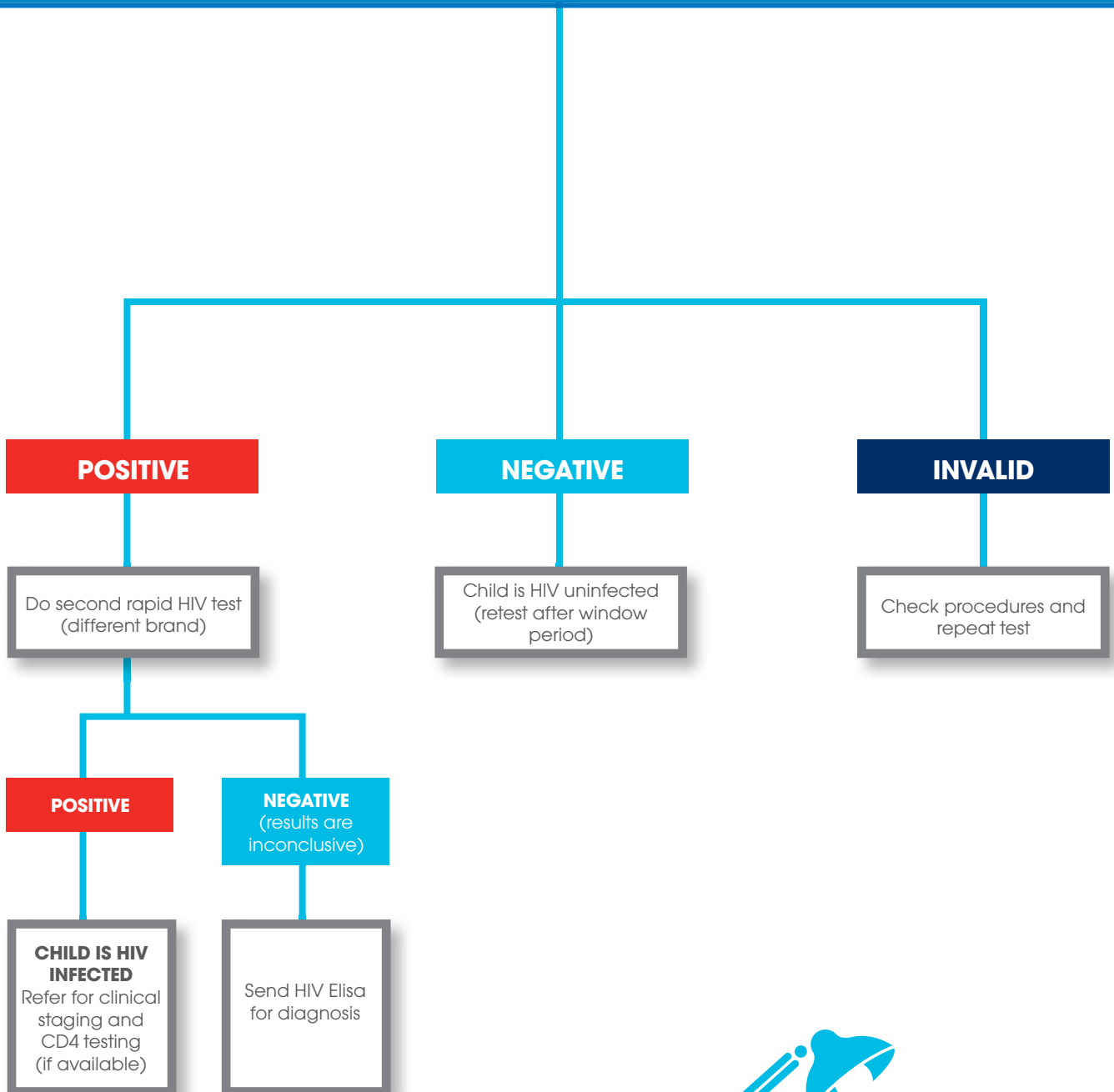


\*\* ALL HIV INFECTED children need to be urgently referred to an ART clinic for clinical staging and CD4 testing (if available). They should be started on cotrimoxazole while awaiting referral and further management

\* See page 35 for rapid HIV testing procedures

# RAPID HIV TESTING PROCEDURE

**DO RAPID HIV TEST (see pg 46)**



## KEY MESSAGE:

*Always take into consideration your clinical assessment of the patient. If test results do not conform to your clinical assessment, consider repeating the test or referring for a second opinion.*

# DRIED BLOOD SPOTS (DBS) FOR INFANT DIAGNOSIS

---

## CHOOSE WHERE YOU WILL PRICK THE INFANT ACCORDING TO SIZE AND AGE:

**a. SMALL INFANTS UP TO ABOUT THE AGE OF 4 MONTHS AND UP TO 5 KG – PRICK THE HEEL.**

The best area is the lateral section of the heel.

Do not prick the back of the heel where the bone is.



**b. LARGER INFANTS BETWEEN 4 AND 10 MONTHS OLD, OR MORE THAN 5 KG – PRICK THE BIG TOE.**

The lateral side or outside part of the big toe works best.

Do not prick the very end of the toe where the bone is close to the skin.



**c. OLDER INFANTS OVER 10 MONTHS OR MORE THAN 10 KG – PRICK THE FINGER.**

The best finger is the ring finger on the left hand as this finger will be the least used by the baby.

Select the lateral side of the fingertip.

Do not prick the very end of the finger where the bone is close to the skin.

The thumb is not recommended because it will be the most painful.



# STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES FOR TAKING BLOOD FROM INFANTS FOR THE HIV DNA PCR TEST

- Two types of blood samples can be used for an HIV DNA PCR test:
  1. Dried blood spots (DBS)
  2. Whole blood in an EDTA / purple top tube
- Dried blood spots are technically easier to obtain, and are suitable for blood sampling in the primary health care setting.
- Handle all specimens as if they are capable of transmitting infectious agents.

## 1. DRIED BLOOD SPOT COLLECTION AND STORAGE

Dried blood spots (DBS) can be collected from a heel-stick (or toe-stick or finger-stick) or venous blood onto filter paper (DBS card). The filter paper is framed, preprinted with 3 circles and has space for labeling.

### Materials Required:

- Powder-free gloves
- Disinfectant for skin
- Cotton wool or gauze
- Single use, spring-loaded lancing device (e.g. Hemocue or similar device)
- DBS Cards (Figure 1: correctly labeled)
- Zip-lock plastic bags (biohazard bags)
- Desiccant sachets
- Drying rack
- Laboratory forms per country protocol



**DBS Collection Kits** containing consumables for blood sampling and collection are available and instructions for performing the procedure are printed on the back of each kit.



## CONTENTS OF A COLLECTION KIT



The **Safety Lancet** makes a sufficiently deep incision (2.25mm) to ensure an adequate flow of blood.

The lancet is safe, puncturing the skin and retracting automatically within one or two milliseconds. The needle is concealed inside the plastic casing before and after use and the lancet cannot be reused.



**Hemocue safety lancet**

protective tab



**BD Genie lancet**

Read the instructions on the protective tab. **Twist** (Hemocue) or **Pull** (BD Genie) off the protective tab, hold against skin, and press the white plunger

### **Method for collection (see Figures 7 - 10)**

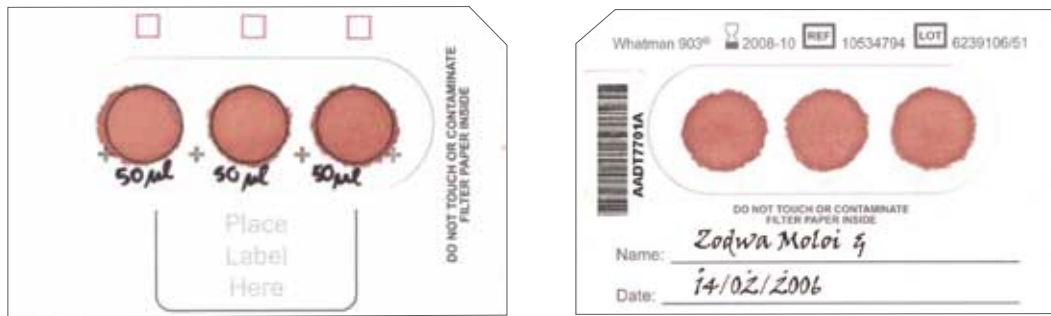
- Label the DBS card with the patient's name, patient's hospital or clinic number and the date that the sample was obtained. Use a ballpoint pen or other water-indelible marker directly on the paper (Figure 1).
- Complete the laboratory form and if required, carefully stick the bar-code from that form onto the back of the DBS card as shown in Figure 1.
- Clean the selected area of skin (heel, toe or finger) with a skin disinfectant and allow to dry. Take care to keep away from bony prominences (Figure 3).
- Position the foot or hand with the puncture-site downwards.
- Use the loaded lancing device to puncture the skin to allow the blood to flow.
- While holding the foot correctly (Figures 7 – 10), apply & release pressure to allow a drop to form. Do not squeeze or "milk" the puncture site as this may dilute the blood with tissue fluid. Wipe away/discard first drop of blood. Once a drop of blood has formed, lightly touch the drop to the preprinted circle on the filter paper (DBS card) allowing it to soak onto the circle. Allow the next drop of blood to form, and allow it to soak onto the adjacent marked circle on the filter paper.
- Repeat until all marked circles are adequately filled with blood. The preprinted circles hold 50-75 uL blood each when fully filled (Figure 1). Samples with insufficient blood cannot be processed (Figure 6). Fill all three of the marked circles. If insufficient blood flow occurs, a second puncture may need to be made. Do not excessively saturate the card with blood. Do not touch or attempt to smear the blood spots.
- Apply gauze or cotton wool to the puncture site after obtaining sufficient blood.
- Dispose of the lancet into a sharps container.

### **Method for drying:**

- Place the DBS cards in a drying rack to dry (Figure 4). Place only one card per drying slot in the drying rack and do not allow the cards to touch each other.
- Allow to dry for at least three hours. The blood spots should be a dark brown colour once properly dried.
- Do not dry artificially with heat and do not expose to direct sunlight.

### **Method for storing/submission to laboratory:**

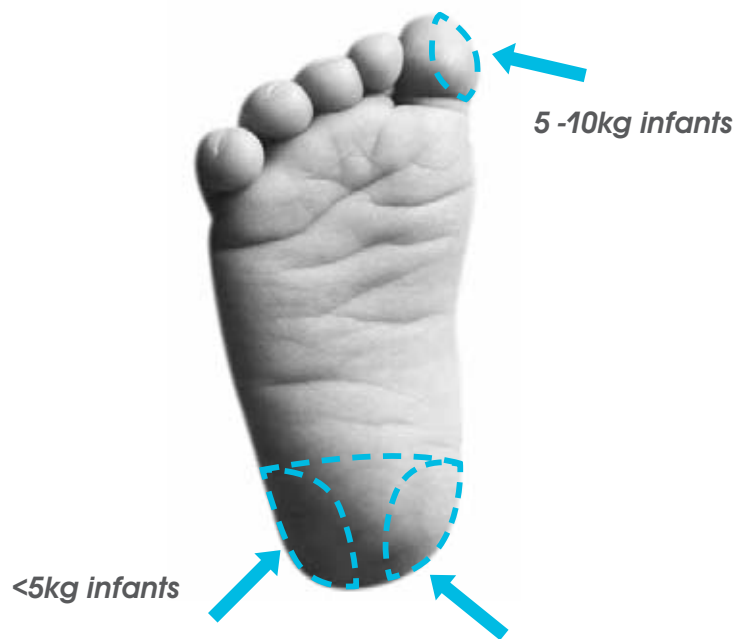
- After the blood spots have dried, place each card in a separate zip-lock plastic bag. Insert one desiccant sachet per bag (Figure 5).
- Fold the corresponding, completed laboratory form in half and insert into the pocket of the plastic bag with the patient details facing outwards.
- Ensure all information is provided on the laboratory form including:
  - Baby's date of birth
  - Contact details for the sister or doctor concerned
  - Clear description that this is the baby's sample if the mother's hospital number is used
- DBS samples are very stable and, if necessary, can be kept overnight or over the weekend before being submitted to the laboratory.



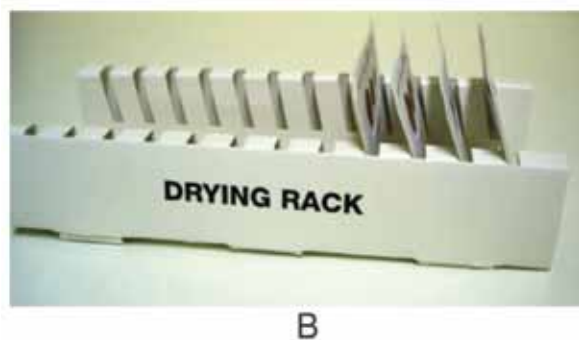
**Figure 1.** The size of the blood spot and the penetration of the spot through to the reverse side of the card allow for some assessment of the blood volume. All 3 preprinted circles should be completely filled with blood.

### PROCEDURE FOR HEEL PRICK

1. Warm the area
2. Wash hands, put on gloves
3. Position baby with foot down
4. Clean area, dry 30 sec
5. Press lancet into foot, prick skin
6. Wipe away first drop
7. Allow large drop to collect
8. Touch blood drop to card
9. Fill entire circle with drop
10. Fill at least 3 circles
11. Clean foot, no bandage



**Figure 3.** Heelprick and toe stick positions



**Figure 4.** Dry completely before packing (blood turns dark red)



**Figure 5.** One DBS card and one dessicant sachet per biohazard bag



**Figure 6.** Insufficient sample for processing – samples rejected

Blood spots should fill the circle and should not be 'smeared' or crusted. Blood spotted outside the circle cannot be used.

**Note:** 7-10 reflect the previously used 'Guthrie DBS cards', however the principles of blood sampling are the same as for the framed DBS cards.



**Figure 7.** Correct holding position by mother and handling of heel



**Figure 8.** Allow large drop of blood to collect





**Figure 9.** Lateral view of correct grip for heelprick



**Figure 10.** Collection from toe-prick

## 2. WHOLE BLOOD COLLECTION

Clotted whole blood samples interfere with HIV DNA PCR test results and will not be processed by the laboratory. Take care to mix whole blood samples well.

### Materials Required:

- Powder-free gloves
- Disinfectant for skin
- Cotton wool or gauze
- Single use, spring-loaded lancing device (e.g. Hemocue) or 23 Gauge needle (blue)
- EDTA tube (BD microtainer with BD Microgard closure; 8mm diameter; BD catalogue no. 365975)
- Zip-lock plastic bags
- Complete the local laboratory requisition form with all the patient's details (Figure 2).
- Label the microtainer.

### Collect blood in an approved purple top (EDTA) microtainer by using one of the following methods:

#### 1. Heel/Finger Prick Method

- Clean the proposed puncture site and position as mentioned above.
- Puncture heel or finger using the disposable lancing device.
- Allow drops of blood to collect and fall into the purple top microtainer gently shaking the tube after each drop to prevent clotting. Squeezing at the puncture site will dilute the blood with tissue fluid.
- Ideally there should be 500µl (microlitres) of blood (minimum volume of 250µl)
- Place the lid on the microtainer and invert several times to prevent the formation of clots.

#### 2. 'Vein Drain' Method

- Using a 23 Gauge (blue) needle, prick the baby on the dorsal vein of the hand. (usually overlying the 4th metacarpal)
- Allow blood to drop out slowly out of the back of the needle into the purple top microtainer gently shaking the tube after each drop to prevent clotting.
- Ideally there should be 500µl (microlitres) of blood (minimum volume of 250µl)
- Place the lid on the microtainer and invert several times to prevent the formation of clots.
- Remember to maintain universal precautions as there is a greater risk of sustaining a needle-stick injury when using this method.

#### 3. Formal venesection

- Blood can also be sampled into larger EDTA Vacutainer / purple top tubes. Minimum volume of whole blood is 1ml to allow for dilution with EDTA in the tube.

### 3. RECORD KEEPING

#### **For PCR testing the following record keeping is required:**

1. Correctly completed laboratory form to ensure that the laboratory can inform the clinic should there be a problem with the PCR test and infant testing rates can be measured to assess the PMTCT program.
2. Clinic infant testing register to document infants that have been tested and ensure PCR test results are obtained and communicated to parents or caregivers. Document the treatment site to which HIV-infected infants have been referred for care.
3. Specimen transport check list as a record of the PCR sample being transported to the laboratory for analysis
4. Infant's Child Health Record/Passport to maintain complete medical records indicating that a PCR test has been done, the date it was done & the test result

#### **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS:**

##### **CONTRIBUTORS**

From the **Wits Paediatric HIV Clinics** and **JHB Hospital PCR Laboratory\***, Department of Molecular Medicine & Haematology, National Health Laboratory Service & University of the Witwatersrand:

Kapila Bhowan  
Glenn Driver  
Rivka Hofman  
Janet Patton

Lauren Blackburn  
Linda Erasmus\*  
Tsakani Mhlongo  
Gayle Sherman

Ashraf Coovadia  
Robert Foromo  
Megan Murray

##### **FUNDED BY:**

PEPFAR through the Centers for Disease Control & Prevention, South Africa and UNICEF

##### **CLINICAL PICTURES**

courtesy of Dr.Tracy Creek and the BOTUSA-Francistown PMTCT Project, Francistown, Botswana

**7th edition: 9 March 2009**

**For more information please contact:**

**Prof Gayle Sherman: [gayle.sherman@nhls.ac.za](mailto:gayle.sherman@nhls.ac.za) or**

**Megan Murray: [infant.dx@nhls.ac.za](mailto:infant.dx@nhls.ac.za) or 011 489 8543**

# STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE: TAKING BLOOD FOR HIV ANTIBODY TESTING

## WHOLE BLOOD - SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND TESTING PROCEDURES

- Check kit before use. Use only items that have not expired or been damaged.
- Allow kit and stored specimens to reach room temperature before use.
- Always use universal safety precautions when handling specimens.
- Keep work area clean and organized.
- Please note that this is intended for use as a guideline only. Refer to product insert or standard operating procedure (S.O.P.) for further information.

### Abott Determine Test - used as an example

*Image courtesy of Gary Pieterse*



- Determine HIV Rapid Test kit components.



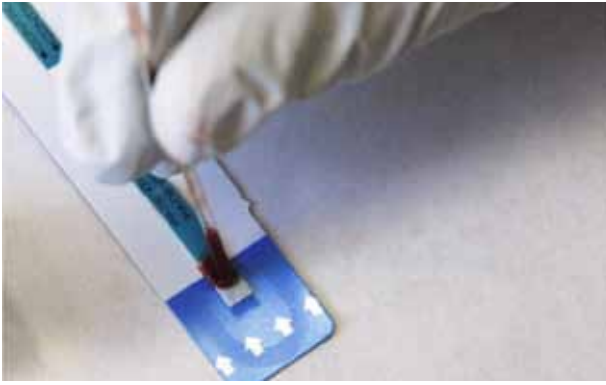
- Completely remove the foil cover from the test strip and label it with the patient's details



- Clean the patient's finger using an alcohol swab.
- Allow the finger to air-dry. Prick the patient's finger.
- Wipe away the first drop of blood. Allow another drop of blood to collect at the puncture site.
- Collect the blood into the Determine heparinised capillary tube.



- Allow the blood to run into the capillary tube, until between the two black lines



- Gently touch the capillary tube to the test pad, allowing the blood to flow onto the pad.
- Avoid damaging the test pad by tapping it too hard.
- Allow the contents of the capillary tube to empty onto the pad.
- A small drop will be left behind in the tube.



- Add one drop of Determine Chase buffer to the test pad, holding the bottle at 90 degrees to the test strip.
- This will allow the accurately measured drop to be dispensed.



- Using a digital timer, time the test for **15 minutes**.
- Do not read after 60 minutes.
- In this case, discard the strip and retest.
- Record the results on the results log.



**positive** (patient and control lines present)



**invalid** (no control line)



**negative** (only control line present)



**invalid** (patient line visible but no control line)





*A mother understands  
what a child does not say.*

Jewish proverb

# ART ELIGIBILITY, INITIATION & FOLLOW-UP

ART ELIGIBILITY,  
INITIATION



# ART ELIGIBILITY, INITIATION & FOLLOW UP

In 2010 paediatric HIV care guidelines expanded eligibility criteria for the initiation of antiretroviral therapy (ART). This was in response to a greater understanding about the rapid and often unpredictable progression of HIV infection to serious illness and death, especially in young infants.



## KEY MESSAGE:

**Assessment for ART should be made on an ongoing basis for children not yet initiated.**

The determination of ART eligibility is made using several factors, including patient age, WHO stage based on clinical condition and immunologic stage based on CD4. The CD4 count in children normally starts higher than adults, reaching adult-level values at around 5 years of age. Therefore, for children under 5 years of age, the CD4 percentage in addition to the standard total CD4 count is considered useful.

## WHEN TO START ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY IN INFANTS AND CHILDREN

### ART Eligibility for children with **CONFIRMED HIV INFECTION**

AGE CATEGORY		CRITERIA	
		Immunological	Clinical WHO staging
INFANTS	Less than 12 months of age	ALL, irrespective of CD4 count or WHO staging	
	12 - 24 months of age	ALL, irrespective of CD4 count or WHO staging (Conditional WHO recommendation. Use local guidance)	
CHILDREN	24 - 59 months of age	CD4% ≤ 25% <b>OR</b> CD4 count > 750 cells/mm <sup>2</sup> (whichever is lower)	<b>OR</b> Stage III and IV
	Age 5 years and older	CD4 count > 350 cells/mm <sup>2</sup> (As in adults)	<b>OR</b> Stage III and IV



## Special considerations

CONSIDERATION	RECOMMENDATION
<b>Viral testing not available</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the WHO Presumptive diagnostic criteria for children &lt;18 months</li> <li>• Initiate ART</li> <li>• Confirm HIV infection as soon as possible</li> </ul>
<b>CD4 count not available</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The predictive value of the total lymphocyte count (TLC) for mortality is not reliable, especially for younger infants, and it is therefore not recommended to use TLC to guide decisions on starting ART</li> </ul>

## Criteria for presumptive diagnosis of severe HIV disease in infants and children <18 months of age where viral testing is not available

**A PRESUMPTIVE DIAGNOSIS OF SEVERE HIV DISEASE SHOULD BE MADE IF:**

<p><b>1.</b> The child is confirmed as being HIV anti body-positive</p> <p><b>AND</b></p>	<p><b>2a.</b> The infant is symptomatic with two or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• oral thrush</li> <li>• severe pneumonia</li> <li>• severe sepsis</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <p><b>2b.</b> A diagnosis of any AIDS-indicator condition(s) can be made</p>
---	---

**Other findings that support the diagnosis of severe HIV disease in an HIV-seropositive infant include:**

- Recent HIV-related maternal death or advanced HIV disease
- Child's %CD4+ <20%

**Confirm the diagnosis of HIV infection as soon as possible.**

AIDS-indicator conditions include some, but not all, HIV paediatric clinical stage 4 conditions such as Pneumocystis pneumonia, cryptococcal meningitis, severe wasting or severe malnutrition, Kaposi sarcoma and extrapulmonary TB.

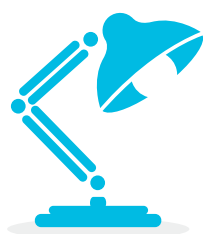
### As per the IMCI definition:

**Oral thrush:** Creamy white-to-yellow soft small plaques on red or normally coloured mucosa which can often be scraped off (pseudomembranous), or red patches on the tongue, palate or lining of mouth, usually painful or tender.

**Severe pneumonia:** Cough or difficulty breathing in a child with chest indrawing, stridor or any of the IMCI general danger signs; i.e. lethargic or unconscious, not able to drink or breastfeed, vomiting, and presence or history of convulsions during current illness; responding to antibiotics.

**Severe sepsis:** Fever or low body temperature in a young infant with any severe sign, e.g. fast breathing, chest indrawing, bulging fontanelle, lethargy, reduced movement, not feeding or sucking breast milk, convulsions.

It is unclear how often CD4 is lowered in the above conditions in HIV-uninfected children.



### KEY MESSAGE:

**Remember that an important requirement of ART initiation is also psychosocial readiness, including a supportive caregiver.**

# ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY

## INITIATION & FOLLOW UP

---

- Treatment for HIV infection involves the use of antiretroviral drugs to suppress (reduce the frequency of) replication of HIV in the body and its destruction of the immune system.
- The primary goal of ART is to:
  - Suppress the viral load as much as (and as long as) possible. It's best if the viral load is suppressed to an undetectable level
  - Restore and/or preserve immunological function (stabilise or improve CD4 count)
  - Stabilise and/or improve clinical status (no new HIV-related infections, improved growth, stable or improved neurological status)
  - Improve quality of life (e.g. improved appetite, increased energy, fewer symptoms)
- Antiretroviral drugs are divided into classes based on how and where they attack the virus during the HIV lifecycle. Drugs of different classes work to disrupt viral replication at different times during the cycle. In order to treat HIV effectively, a combination of ARV drugs is required.

### **Once an HIV infected child is eligible for ART (see ART eligibility page 49), the caregiver needs to:**

- 1.** Prepare the family for ARV initiation (see page 247)
- 2.** Record baseline clinical and laboratory information
  - Child's weight and height (see page 174)
  - WHO Clinical Staging (see Pictionary of WHO Stages section, page 90)
  - Presence of symptoms suggestive of TB (see page 139)
  - Developmental level (see page 209)
  - CD4 count and percentage, Viral load, FBC if on AZT, ALT if on NVP
- 3.** Choose an effective ARV regimen
  - ARV Treatment Guidelines for Children (see pages 54 & 55)
  - Correct dosage and formulation - (see pages 56 & 57)
  - Possible drug-drug and drug-food interactions to take into consideration (see pages 63 - 67)
- 4.** Develop an appropriate follow-up schedule for monitoring of ART
  - Ongoing monitoring includes assessment of clinical status, laboratory parameters and adherence.
  - Monitoring includes the assessment of response to ART for:
    - **Efficacy:** Monitor success or failure of the treatment (see page 77).
    - **Safety:** Monitor for toxicity or adverse events related to ART. (Side effects for specific antiretroviral drugs are listed on page 69 - 71 and evaluation and management on page 73)



# ARV DRUGS

## MECHANISM OF ACTION

### CCR5 INHIBITORS

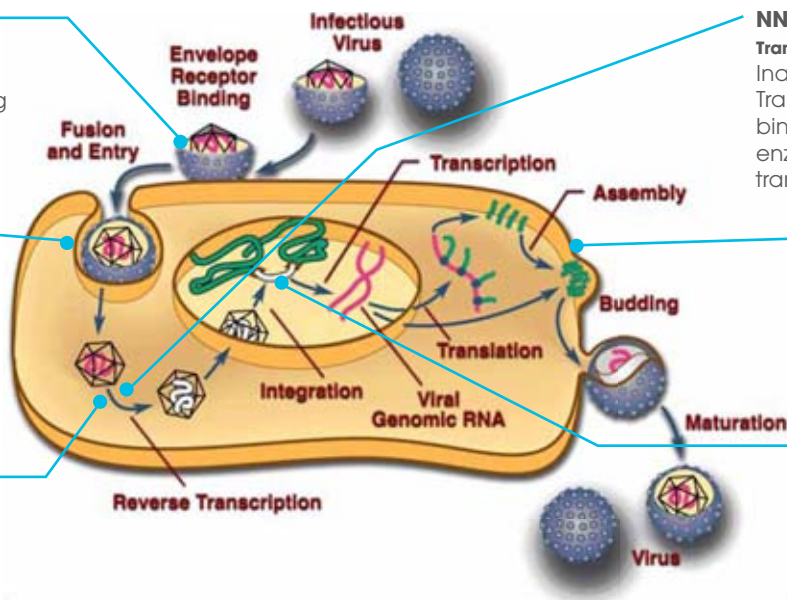
Prevent attachment of the viral gp120 protein to the CCR5 co-receptor by binding to this receptor. This results in entry inhibition

### FUSION INHIBITORS

Bind to the viral gp41 and prevents the conformational change required for viral fusion and entry into cells

### NRTI's (Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors)

Mistaken for a nucleotide and incorporated in the growing DNA chain prevents further growth of the pro-viral DNA chain



### NNRTI's (Non-Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitor)

Inactivates the Reverse Transcriptase enzyme by binding directly to the enzyme. This prevents reverse transcription from taking place

### PI's (Protease Inhibitors)

Proteins necessary for viral assembly is not available due to Protease enzyme inhibition

### INTEGRASE INHIBITORS

Prevent Integrase enzyme from integrating viral DNA into the nucleus

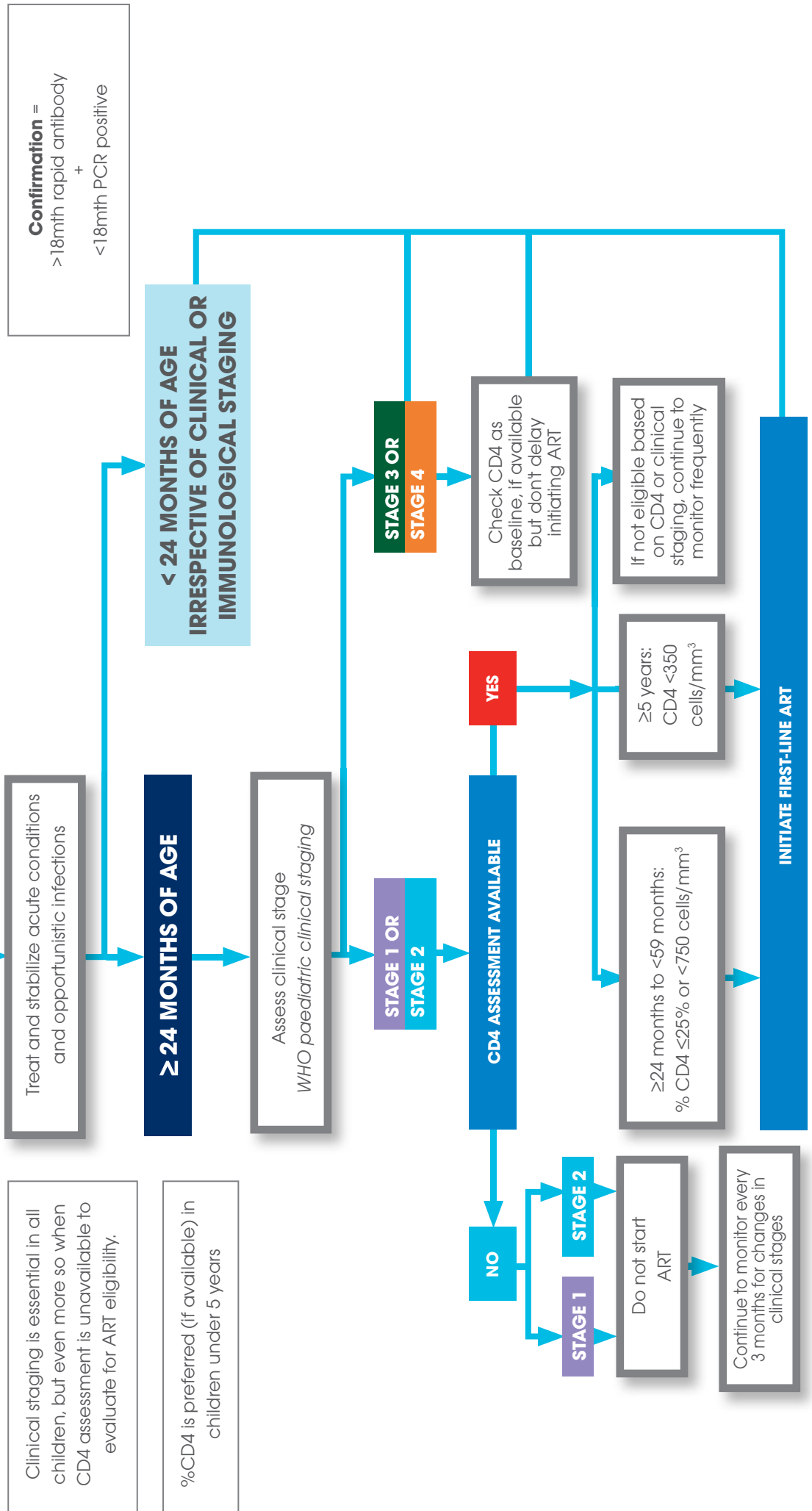
ncbi.nlm.nih.gov (2010)

## SUMMARY OF DRUG CLASSES

<b>NRTIs</b>	Stavudine	d4t	Zerit ®	<b>PIs</b>	Lopinavir/ ritonavir	LPV/r	Kaletra ® Aluvia ®	
	Lamivudine	3TC	3TC ®		Ritonavir	RTV	Norvir ®	
	Abacavir	ABC	Ziagen ®		Atazanavir	ATV	Reyataz ®	
	Zidovudine	ZDV	Retrovir ®		Saquinavir	SQV	Invi-Rase ®	
	Didanosine	ddl	Videx ®		Indinavir	IDV	Crixivan ®	
<b>NNRTIs</b>	Nevirapine	NVP	Viramune ®		Nelfinavir	NFV	Vira-Cept ®	
	Efavirenz	EFV	Stocrin ®		Darunavir	DRV	Prezista ®	
	Etravirine	ETV	Intelence®		<b>IIs</b>	Raltegravir	RAL	Isentress ®
<b>NRTIs</b>	Tenofovir	TDF	Viread ®		<b>Entry Inhibitors</b>	Maraviroc Enfuvirtide	- ENF	Celsentri ® Fuzeon ®

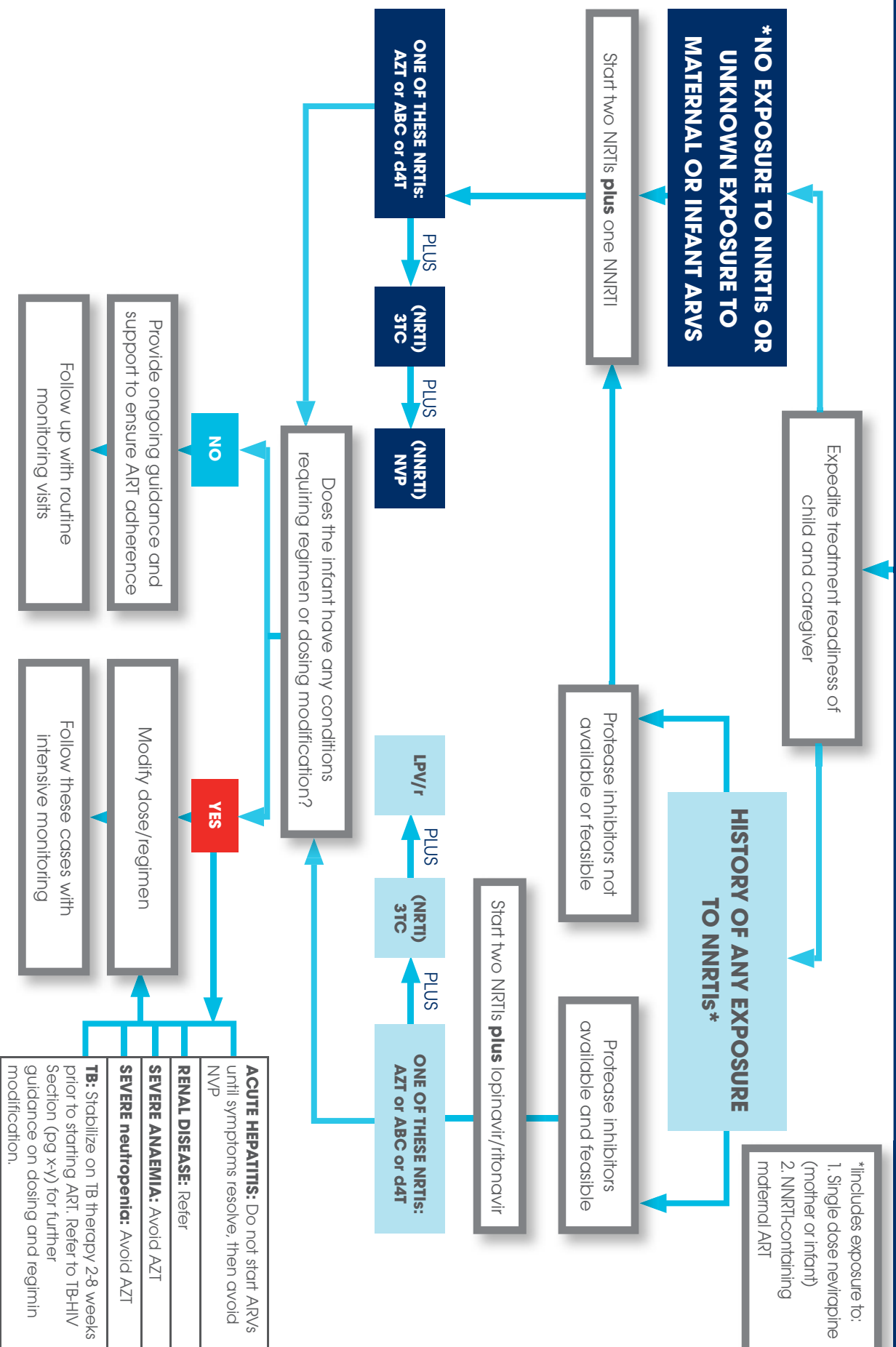
# INITIATING ART FOR INFANTS AND CHILDREN

## INFANT/CHILD WITH CONFIRMED HIV INFECTION



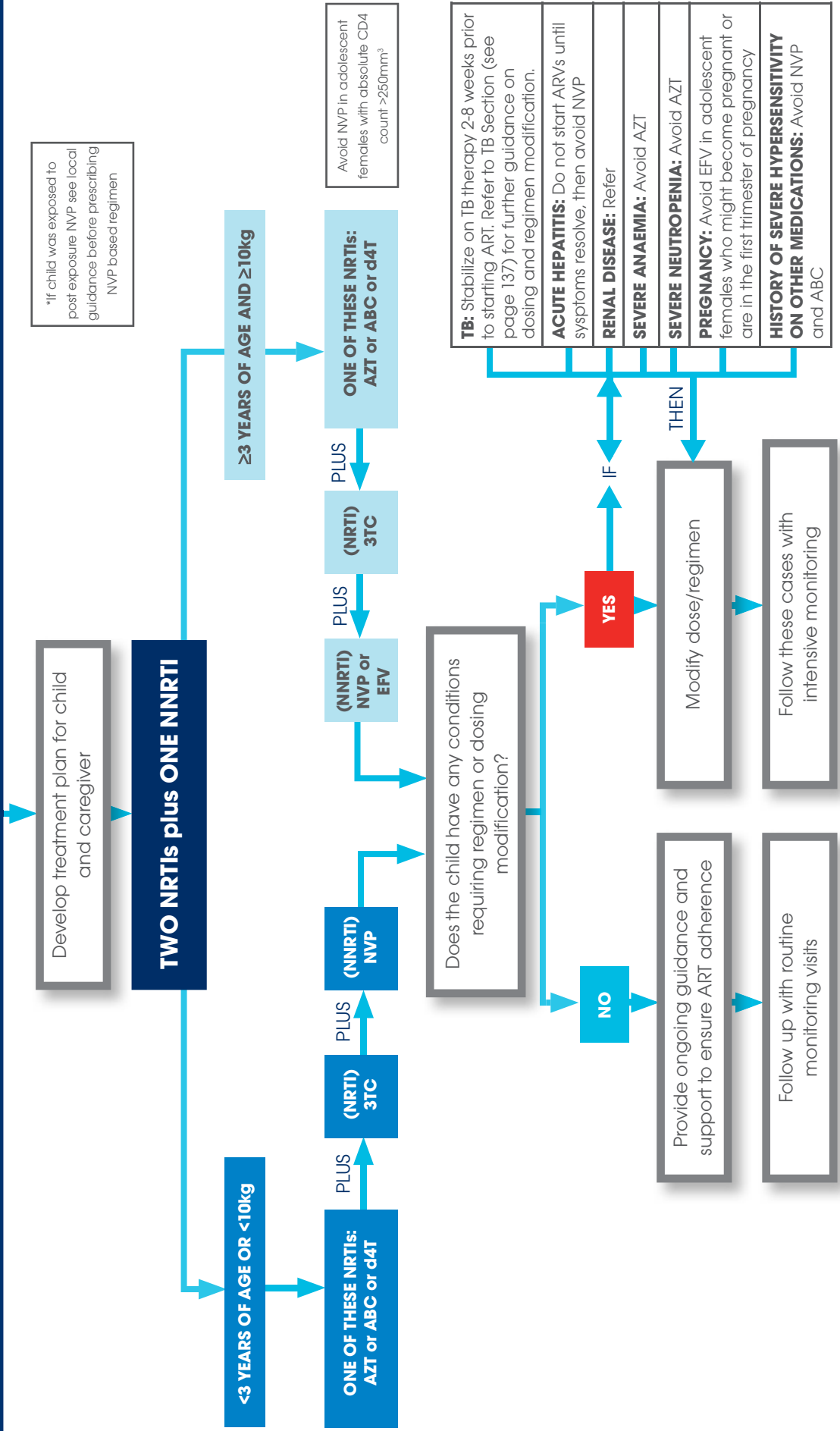
# FIRST-LINE ART FOR INFANTS AND CHILDREN <24 MONTHS

## INFANT OR CHILD <24 MONTHS



# FIRST-LINE ART REGIMENS FOR CHILDREN >24 MONTHS

## CHILD (>24 MONTHS) ELIGIBLE FOR ART \*



## Harmonized dosing schedules

### Simplified table giving number of tablets of child-friendly solid formulations for morning and evening dosing

Drug	Strength of paediatric tab (mg)	Children 6 weeks of age and above										Strength of adult tab (mg)	Number of adult tablets by weight-band	
		Number of paediatric tablets by weight-band morning and evening												
		3 – 5.9kg		6 – 9.9kg		10 – 13.9kg		14 – 19.9kg		20 – 24.9kg			25 – 34.9kg	
am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	
<b>SINGLE DRUGS</b>														
AZT	60	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	300	1	1
ABC	60	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	300	1	1
NVP	50	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	200	1	1
ddl	25	2 <sup>a</sup>	2 <sup>a</sup>	3	2	3	3	4	3	4	4	25	5	5
<b>COMBINATIONS</b>														
AZT/3TC	60/30	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	300/150	1	1
AZT/3TC/NVP	60/30/50	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	300/150/200	1	1
ABC/AZT/3TC	60/60/30	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	300/300/150	1	1
ABC/3TC	60/30	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	<sup>b</sup>		
d4T/3TC	6/30	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	30/150	1	1
d4T/3TC/NVP	6/30/50	1	1	1.5	1.5	2	2	2.5	2.5	3	3	30/150/200	1	1
LPV/r <sup>c</sup>	100/25	NR	NR	2	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	100/25	3	3

<sup>a</sup> This dose of ddl is only appropriate for children 3 months of age or older and weighing between 5 kg and 5.9 kg.

<sup>b</sup> See ABC/3TC FDC dosing table in 2010 WHO Guidelines (Antiretroviral Therapy for HIV Infection in Infants and Children: Towards Universal Access.)

<sup>c</sup> Higher doses of LPV/r may be required when co-administered with enzyme-inducing drugs such as NVP, EFV, FPV, rifampicin.

### Simplified table giving ml of liquid formulation and number of tablets or capsules of adult solid formulation for morning and evening dosing

Drug	Strength of paediatric liquid (mg/ml) and adult tab/cap (mg)	Children 6 weeks of age and above									
		Number of tablets/capsules or ml by weight-band morning and evening									
		3 – 5.9kg		6 – 9.9kg		10 – 13.9kg		14 – 19.9kg		20 – 24.9kg	
am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	am	pm	am	pm
AZT	10 mg/ml; 300 mg	6 ml	6 ml	9 ml	9 ml	12 ml	12 ml	0.5	0.5	1	0.5
ABC	20 mg/ml; 300 mg	3 ml	3 ml	4 ml	4 ml	6 ml	6 ml	0.5	0.5	1	0.5
3TC	10 mg/ml; 150 mg	3 ml	3 ml	4 ml	4 ml	6 ml	6 ml	0.5	0.5	1	0.5
d4T	1 mg/ml; 15 mg or 20 mg	6 ml	6 ml	9 ml	9 ml	1 (15 mg)	1 (15 mg)	1 (20 mg)	1 (20 mg)	1 (20 mg)	1 (20 mg)
NVP	10 mg/ml; 200 mg	5 ml	5 ml	8 ml	8 ml	10 ml	10 ml	1	0.5	1	0.5
ddl	10 mg/ml; 25 mg	3 ml <sup>a</sup>	3 ml <sup>a</sup>	5 ml	5 ml	6 ml	6 ml	4	3	4	4
LPV/r	80/20 mg/ml	1 or 1.5 ml <sup>b</sup>	1 or 1.5 ml <sup>b</sup>	1.5 ml	1.5 ml	2 ml	2 ml	2.5 ml	2.5 ml	3 ml	3 ml

<sup>a</sup> This dose of ddl is only appropriate for children 3 months of age or older and weighing between 5 kg and 5.9 kg.

<sup>b</sup> LPV/r liquid: for 3 – 3.9 kg, use 1 ml a.m. and 1 ml p.m.; for 4 – 5.9 kg use 1.5 ml a.m. and 1.5 ml p.m. In addition, higher doses of LPV/r may be required when co-administered with enzyme-inducing drugs such as NVP, EFV, FPV or rifampicin.



**Simplified table giving number of tablets of child-friendly solid formulations for once-daily dosing**

Drug	Strength of tab/cap (mg)	Number of tablets or capsules by weight-band once daily					Strength of tab/cap (mg)	Number of tablets or capsules by weight-band once daily
		3 – 5.9kg	6 – 9.9kg	10 – 13.9kg	14 – 19.9kg	20 – 24.9kg		
		Once daily	Once daily	Once daily	Once daily	Once daily		
<b>SINGLE DRUGS</b>								
EFV <sup>a</sup>	200 mg	NR	NR	1	1.5	1.5	200	2
ddl <sup>b</sup>	125 mg or 200 mg EC	NR	NR	1 (125 mg)	1 (200 mg)	2 (125 mg)	125 mg EC	2

<sup>a</sup> EFV is not recommended for children below 3 years and weighing less than 10 kg.

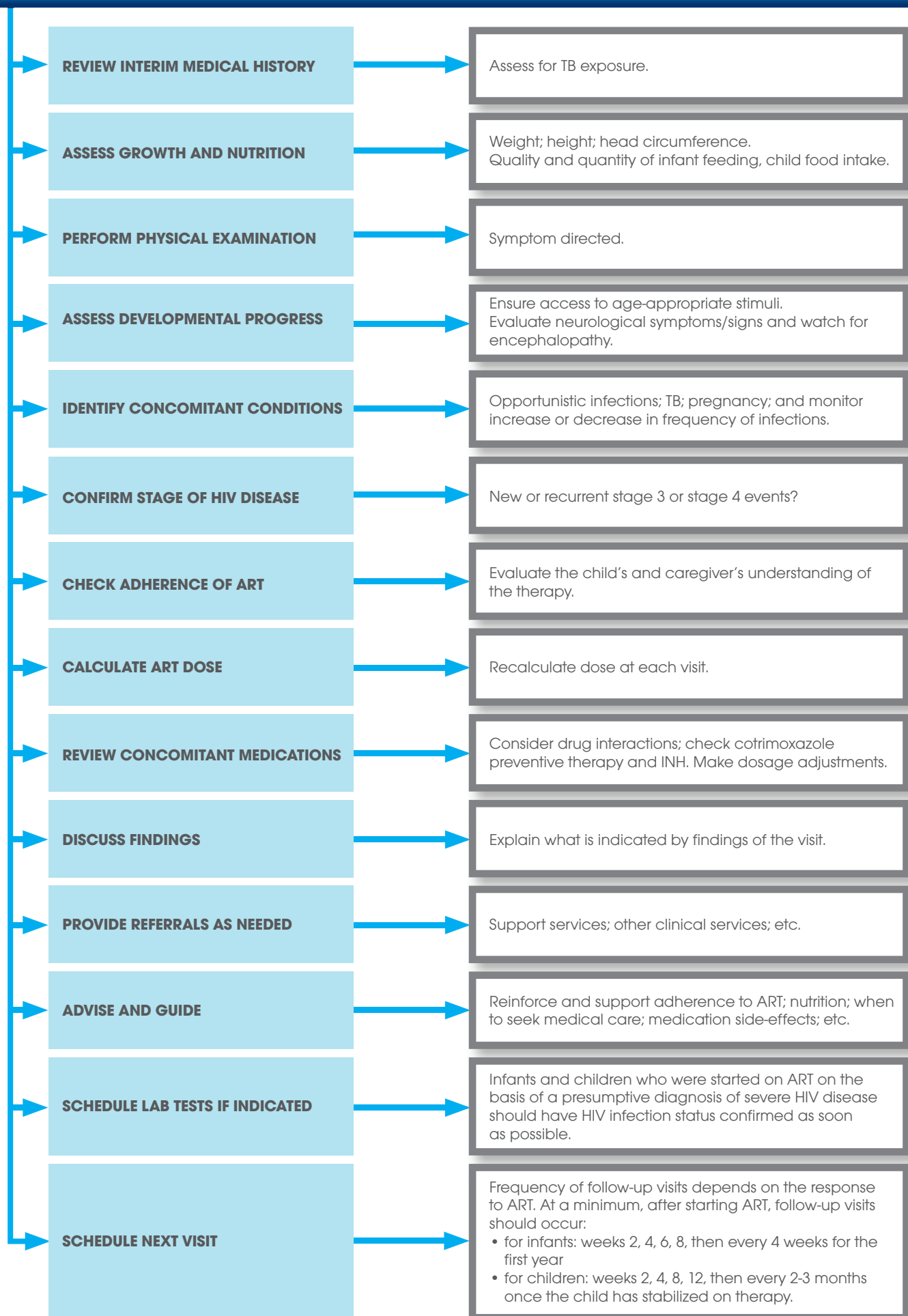
<sup>b</sup> ddl EC is not recommended for children weighing less than 10 kg; this dose is recommended only for those 10 kg and above.

NR = not recommended EC = enteric coated



# ROUTINE FOLLOW-UP VISIT

## INFANT OR CHILD ON ART PRESENTS FOR ROUTINE FOLLOW-UP VISIT



## Laboratory parameters for monitoring infants and children at baseline, before and during ART

Laboratory tests for diagnosis and monitoring	Baseline (at entry into care)	At initiation of first-line or second-line ART regimen	Every six months	As required or symptom-directed
HIV diagnostic testing	✓			
Haemoglobin	✓	✓		✓
WBC and differential count				✓
%CD4+ or absolute CD4 cell count	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pregnancy testing in adolescent girls		✓		✓
Full chemistry (including, but not restricted to, liver enzymes, renal function, glucose, lipids, amylase, lipase and serum electrolytes)				✓
HIV VL measurement				✓
OI screening (where possible)	✓			✓

- Haemoglobin monitoring at week 8 after initiation of ART is recommended if AZT is used.
- HIV-infected children not yet eligible for ART should be monitored with CD4 count every six months. For infants and children who develop new or recurrent WHO stage 2 or 3 events, or whose CD4 count approaches threshold values, the frequency of CD4 measurement can be increased. %CD4+ is preferred in children <5 years of age.
- Pregnancy testing may be needed for adolescent girls prior to initiating a regimen containing EFV.
- For pregnant adolescent girls, provide prophylaxis or combination ART to those who are in need of it for their own health and/or to prevent vertical transmission. See Prophylaxis Section (page 131)
- Routine monitoring (every six months) of full chemistry, particularly lipid levels, liver enzymes and renal function, should be considered for infants and children on second-line drugs.
- At present, VL measurement is not a prerequisite for initiation or regular monitoring of ART in resource-limited settings. VL can be used to diagnose HIV infection, and to confirm clinical or immunological failure prior to switching treatment regimen.
- VL should be assessed in infants on NNRTI-based regimens who are known to have been exposed to NNRTIs intrapartum or through breastfeeding.



*It is not until you  
become a mother  
that your judgment  
slowly turns to  
compassion and  
understanding.*

Erma Bombeck





SIDE-EFFECT	ARV/S RESPONSIBLE	SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	INCIDENCE AND TIME OF ONSET AFTER INITIATING THERAPY	DIAGNOSIS	TREATMENT AND MANAGEMENT TIPS															
<b>HYPERSENSITIVITY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Abacavir</li> <li>Co-trimoxazole</li> </ul>	Fever, rash, fatigue, abdominal or respiratory symptoms, malaise and elevated transaminase	<b>Abacavir:</b> <b>6-8%</b> (predominantly Caucasians) <b>2-3%</b> (African Americans) <b>0.2%</b> (In African population—ARROW Study) <b>Median Onset:</b> 11 days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A rash alone, without systemic symptoms, is not sufficient to make the diagnosis.</li> <li>Hypersensitivity is a multi organ event and symptoms include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fever, rash, constitutional, respiratory and/ or GIT symptoms</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<b>Abacavir:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop immediately, introduce supportive treatment and do not rechallenge Abacavir treatment</li> <li>Once symptoms resolve, restart ART by substituting an alternative ARV for Abacavir</li> </ul> <b>Co-trimoxazole:</b> Substitute with dapsone (be aware that dapsone could cause a similar reaction)															
<b>RASH</b>		<b>Mild-to-moderate rash</b> Erythematous, maculopapular, confluent, most often on the body and arms, with no systemic symptoms <b>Severe rash</b> Extensive rash with moist desquamation, angioedema, or serum sickness-like reaction; or a rash with constitutional findings such as fever, oral lesions, blistering, facial oedema, conjunctivitis <b>Life-threatening Stevens–Johnson Syndrome</b> Toxic epidermal necrolysis	<b>Nevirapine:</b> 20 – 35% <b>Onset:</b> 4 – 6 weeks <b>Efavirenz:</b> Children experienced a higher incidence of rash (46% of children compared to 26% of adults) The incidence of grade 3 or 4 (moderate to severe) rash is 5% of children and 0.9% of adults <b>Onset:</b> Within 2 weeks—median onset is 8 days for children	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observation of clinical signs and symptoms</li> <li>Do ALT to exclude hepatic involvement</li> </ul>	<b>Mild-to-moderate rash</b> ART can be continued without interruption but under close observation <b>Severe or life-threatening rash</b> Discontinue all ARVs until symptoms resolve Once symptoms resolve, restart ART by substituting an alternative ARV for NVP															
<b>PERIPHERAL NEUROPATHY</b>	<b>Order of risk:</b> <b>NRTIs</b> ddI > d4t > AZT > ABC > 3TC > FTC	Numbness, tremor, gait imbalance, tingling, pain, crawling and pins and needles	15% - 30% of patients receiving Stavudine or Didanosine but less common in children <b>DOSE DEPENDANT</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Screen motor functions against milestones - Difficult to diagnose in children</li> </ul>	Withdraw causative drug and replace it with a NRTI less toxic and treat symptomatically with drugs such as carbamazepine or amitriptyline															
<b>LACTIC ACIDOSIS</b>	<b>Order of risk:</b> <b>NRTIs</b> ddI > d4t > AZT > ABC > 3TC > FTC	Dyspnoea, nausea, vomiting and abdominal pain. Later on loss of energy. <b>Other symptoms include:</b> Weakness, hepatic dysfunction, hyperlactataemia and tachypnea	0.2%-2.5% (Uncommon in children) <b>Asymptomatic hyperlactataemia:</b> 29% - 32% <b>Median Onset:</b> 4 months (up to 20 months)	<b>Confirm clinical suspicion with:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Serum lactate</li> <li>Serum bicarbonate</li> <li>Metabolic Acidosis</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All ARVs should be discontinued</li> <li>Hospitalise the patient or refer to a specialised site</li> <li>Initiate supportive treatment</li> </ul>															
<b>HEPATOTOXICITY</b>	<b>Order of risk:</b> <b>*NVP &gt; EFV</b> Full dose RTV >> other Pls ddI > d4t > AZT > ABC > 3TC > FTC > TDF	Elevated liver enzymes, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, anorexia, diarrhoea, fatigue, jaundice <b>* Increased risk if initiating therapy with a CD4 count &gt;250 in females or &gt;400 in males (adult data)</b>	ARV-related elevations in transaminase appear to be common in children but rarely result in discontinuation of treatment <b>Onset:</b> < 6 months after initiation BUT 4-6 weeks for ABC and NVP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Investigate for other causes e.g. viral hepatitis, TB or TB drugs</li> <li>Clinical features of hepatitis</li> <li>Transaminitis (≥5x ULN)</li> <li>Signs of hypersensitivity</li> </ul>	<b>Manage according to the grade of the event (See SA Paeds Guidelines, 2010)</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>GRADE 1</th> <th>GRADE 2</th> <th>GRADE 3</th> <th>GRADE 4</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ALT (SGPT)</td> <td>1.25 – 2.5 x ULN*</td> <td>2.6 – 5.0 x ULN*</td> <td>5.1 – 10.0 x ULN*</td> <td>&gt; 10.0 x ULN*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AST (SGOT)</td> <td>1.25 – 2.5 x ULN*</td> <td>2.6 – 5.0 x ULN*</td> <td>5.1 – 10.0 x ULN*</td> <td>&gt; 10.0 x ULN*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		GRADE 1	GRADE 2	GRADE 3	GRADE 4	ALT (SGPT)	1.25 – 2.5 x ULN*	2.6 – 5.0 x ULN*	5.1 – 10.0 x ULN*	> 10.0 x ULN*	AST (SGOT)	1.25 – 2.5 x ULN*	2.6 – 5.0 x ULN*	5.1 – 10.0 x ULN*	> 10.0 x ULN*
	GRADE 1	GRADE 2	GRADE 3	GRADE 4																
ALT (SGPT)	1.25 – 2.5 x ULN*	2.6 – 5.0 x ULN*	5.1 – 10.0 x ULN*	> 10.0 x ULN*																
AST (SGOT)	1.25 – 2.5 x ULN*	2.6 – 5.0 x ULN*	5.1 – 10.0 x ULN*	> 10.0 x ULN*																
<b>PANCREATITIS</b>	<b>NRTIs</b> Increased risk with didanosine, stavudine and tenofovir	Vary from asymptomatic to shock or coma <b>Possible symptoms:</b> Acute and constant upper abdominal pain that may radiate to the back, nausea, vomiting, fever, tachycardia, abdominal tenderness and muscular guarding, distension, jaundice Increased lipase or amylase (>3x ULN)	*10% of patients receiving normal dosages of ddI develop acute pancreatitis (*Not well known in children) <b>Onset:</b> 6-9 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observation of clinical signs and symptoms</li> <li>Increased lipase or amylase (&gt;3x ULN)</li> </ul>	<b>Initial therapy</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refer to a specialised institution or hospital</li> <li>Stop causative drug</li> <li>Give IV fluids (Avoid hemoconcentration)</li> <li>Control pain (Often requires narcotics)</li> </ul> <b>Initiate Nutritional Support</b>															
<b>HEPATIC STEATOSIS</b>	<b>NRTIs</b> Increased risk with stavudine and didanosine and zidovudine	Can present together with lactic acidosis <b>Symptoms include:</b> Nausea, anorexia, dyspnoea, hepatomegaly and weight loss	<b>Onset:</b> > 6 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observation of clinical signs and symptoms</li> <li>Ultrasound</li> <li>Increase cannular enzymes ALP and GGT</li> </ul>	Refer to a specialised institution or hospital Consider switching ARV therapy <b>Advise to patients:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Limit the amount of fat intake</li> <li>Avoid junk food, cold drinks, traditional medicine, street drugs and alcohol</li> </ul>															
<b>LIPODYSTROPHY</b>	<b>NRTIs</b> Increased risk with stavudine and didanosine <b>Pls</b> e.g. Lopinavir/ ritonavir	<b>Morphologic changes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Peripheral fat wasting (lipoatrophy)</li> <li>wasting of subcutaneous fat in face (cheeks have sunken appearance and soft tissue loss in temples), limbs (legs often noticed first), upper trunk and buttocks</li> <li>Fat accumulation               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>base of neck ("buffalo hump"), central fat disposition (truncal lipo hypertrophy), breast hypertrophy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Prominent peripheral veins</li> </ul> <b>Metabolic abnormalities e.g dyslipidaemia</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prevalence among HIV infected children range from 1 – 43% (adults: 2–84%).</li> <li>These wide ranges reflect the lack of standardized definition of features of this syndrome.</li> <li>Duration on treatment, increase risk</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observation of morphologic changes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switching ARV therapy—usually to abacavir in children or tenofovir in adults</li> <li>Provide dietary advice</li> <li>Encourage exercise</li> <li>Address emotional symptoms</li> <li>Hormonal therapy</li> <li>Plastic surgery</li> </ul>															
<b>HYPERCHOLESTEROLAEMIA/ HYPERTRIGLYCERIDAEMIA</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protease Inhibitors (PIs) (excl ATZ and DRV)</li> </ul>	The presence of raised or abnormal levels of lipids and/or lipoproteins in the blood	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>20%-50% children receiving HAART experience elevation of Total Cholesterol (TC) and LDL</li> <li><b>Onset of lipid abnormalities:</b> within 3 months of initiation of ARV's</li> </ul>	<b>Biochemistry results:</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>CATEGORY</th> <th>FASTING TOTAL CHOLESTEROL</th> <th>FASTING LDL CHOLESTEROL</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Grade 3 toxicity</td> <td>&gt;7.7mmol/l</td> <td>&gt;4.91mmol/l</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Grade 2 toxicity</td> <td>6.20-7.77mmol/l</td> <td>3.35-4.9mmol/l</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Acceptable</td> <td>&lt; 4.4mmol/l</td> <td>&lt; 2.8mmol/l</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> Triglyceride levels <5.6mmol/l are considered acceptable	CATEGORY	FASTING TOTAL CHOLESTEROL	FASTING LDL CHOLESTEROL	Grade 3 toxicity	>7.7mmol/l	>4.91mmol/l	Grade 2 toxicity	6.20-7.77mmol/l	3.35-4.9mmol/l	Acceptable	< 4.4mmol/l	< 2.8mmol/l	<b>Lifestyle Changes:</b> Dietary changes and exercise <b>Consider drug therapy if:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt;10 years old</li> <li>High risk lipid abnormalities</li> <li>Falling 6-12 months dietary management (LDL &gt; 4.9mmol/l OR LDL &gt; 4.13mmol/l with family history CVD or 2 risk factors)</li> </ul>			
CATEGORY	FASTING TOTAL CHOLESTEROL	FASTING LDL CHOLESTEROL																		
Grade 3 toxicity	>7.7mmol/l	>4.91mmol/l																		
Grade 2 toxicity	6.20-7.77mmol/l	3.35-4.9mmol/l																		
Acceptable	< 4.4mmol/l	< 2.8mmol/l																		
<b>GLUCOSE ABNORMALITIES</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protease Inhibitors (PIs)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Diabetes and glucose intolerance</li> <li>- Increased glucose levels</li> <li>Metabolic syndrome</li> <li>- Central obesity, hypertriglyceridaemia, hypertension, low HDL and insulin resistance</li> </ul>	<b>Insulin resistance</b> (FFA + lipodystrophy) – 33% in patients treated with Pls or d4t <b>New onset clinical type 1 diabetes mellitus:</b> rarely if treated with Pls <b>Onset:</b> Approximately 60 days after initiating PI therapy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Symptoms of insulin resistance or diabetes</li> <li>Random blood glucose (RBG)</li> <li>Fasting blood glucose (FBG)</li> </ul>	<b>Consider:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lifestyle changes</li> <li>Drug therapy</li> <li>Switching ARVs</li> </ul>															
<b>ANAEMIA</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Zidovudine</li> </ul>	Paleness of skin, fatigue, fainting, hypotension, angina, tachycardia, splenomegaly, change in stool colour, dyspnoea and haemoglobin deficiency	Up to 45% in patients treated with ZDV <b>Onset:</b> 2 to 6 weeks after initiation <b>DOSE-DEPENDENT</b>	<b>Children:</b> Hb 1-2 gram/dl lower than the average normal female count (>12g/dl)	<b>Manage according to the grade of the event (See SA Paeds Guidelines, 2010)</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>GRADE 1</th> <th>GRADE 2</th> <th>GRADE 3</th> <th>GRADE 4</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hemoglobin &gt; 57 days old (HIV +ve only)</td> <td>8.5 – 10.0 g/dL</td> <td>7.5 – 8.4 g/dL</td> <td>6.50 – 7.4 g/dL</td> <td>&lt; 6.5 g/dL</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		GRADE 1	GRADE 2	GRADE 3	GRADE 4	Hemoglobin > 57 days old (HIV +ve only)	8.5 – 10.0 g/dL	7.5 – 8.4 g/dL	6.50 – 7.4 g/dL	< 6.5 g/dL					
	GRADE 1	GRADE 2	GRADE 3	GRADE 4																
Hemoglobin > 57 days old (HIV +ve only)	8.5 – 10.0 g/dL	7.5 – 8.4 g/dL	6.50 – 7.4 g/dL	< 6.5 g/dL																
<b>CNS RELATED SIDE-EFFECTS</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Efavirenz</li> </ul>	Nightmares, vivid dreams, hallucinations, confusion, dizziness, impaired concentration, amnesia, euphoria, psychosis	Very common (~ 50%) after starting Efavirenz <b>Onset:</b> within the first week of treatment but usually resolves within 4 weeks of treatment. Incidence increase when taken with a fatty meal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observation of signs and symptoms</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take efavirenz on an empty stomach at bedtime</li> <li>Avoid fatty meals</li> <li>Exclude underlying CNS pathologies or psychiatric disorders</li> <li>Avoid concomitant use with psychotropic drugs</li> </ul>															
<b>GIT</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protease Inhibitors</li> </ul>	Nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort and diarrhoea		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observation of signs and symptoms</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Treat symptomatically if not persistent (for longer than 14 days)</li> </ul>															



# SIDE-EFFECTS OF ANTIRETROVIRAL DRUGS

# SIDE-EFFECTS OF ANTIRETROVIRAL DRUGS

# DRUG INTERACTIONS

## WITH NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS

DRUG	INTERACTING DRUG	EFFECT OF THE INTERACTION	MANAGEMENT OF THE INTERACTION
<b>Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors</b>			
<b>Abacavir (ABC)</b>	<b>Low potential for interaction</b>		
<b>Lamivudine (3TC)</b>	<b>Low potential for interaction</b>		
<b>Stavudine (d4t)</b>	Didanosine, Ethambutol, Ethionamide, Isoniazid and Dapsone	Concomitant use increase the risk of neuropathy and other mitochondrial toxicities	Avoid concomitant use if possible
<b>Didanosine (ddl)</b>	Tenofovir (not indicated for paediatric patients)	Didanosine plasma level increases	Didanosine dose adjustment required: >60kg 250mg once daily <60kg 200mg once daily
	Allopurinol		Monitor didanosine side-effects
	Tetracyclines	Decreased absorption due to buffer agent	Administer Didanosine 2 hours after or 6 hours before Tetracycline
	Ciprofloxacin		Administer 2 hours after Didanosine
	Lopinavir/ritonavir, Itraconazole, Ketoconazole, Dapsone	Decreased absorption due to buffer mediated increase in pH	Administer 2 hours after Didanosine
<b>Zidovudine (AZT)</b>	Stavudine	Antagonistic	Avoid concomitant use
	Valproic Acid	Increased Zidovudine level	Decrease Zidovudine dose in case of severe anaemia
	Myelosuppressive agents	Increase in haematological adverse events	Avoid combination if possible or adjust dosage accordingly
	Clarithromycin	Decreased Zidovudine level	Administer at least 2 hours apart
<b>Nucleotide Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitor</b>			
<b>Tenofovir (TDF)</b>	Didanosine	Didanosine plasma levels increases	See didanosine above
	Streptomycin	Increased toxicity	Use only if necessary and monitor renal function weekly

# DRUG INTERACTIONS

## WITH NON-NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS\*

DRUG	INTERACTING DRUG	EFFECT OF THE INTERACTION	MANAGEMENT OF THE INTERACTION
<b>Non-Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitor</b>			
<b>Efavirenz (EFV)</b>	Phenobarbital	Reduced drug level of EFV	Periodic monitoring of plasma levels should be conducted
	St. John's Wort		Do not co-administer
	Ergotamine, Pimozide	Increased drug level of interacting drug	Avoid concomitant use
	Warfarin		Monitor INR or PT
	Halofantrine, Lumefantrine		Monitor QT prolongation
	Midasolam & Triazolam		Avoid concomitant use
	Lopinavir/ritonavir	Reduced drug level of interacting drug	Increase Lopinavir/ritonavir dose
	Itraconazole & Ketoconazole		Consider alternative antifungal or a dose adjustment
	Voriconazole		Dose adjustments of both drugs
	Methadone, Ethosuximide, Felodipine, Nifedipine, Verapamil		Monitor and adjust dose
	Atorvastatin, Pravastatin, Simvastatin		Monitor cholesterol levels closely
	Oral contraceptives		Also use barrier contraceptives
	Phenytoin, Carbamazepine	Both drug levels are reduced	An alternative anticonvulsant treatment should be considered
<b>Nevirapine (NVP)</b>	Rifampicin	Reduced drug level of Nevirapine	Avoid concomitant use
	Phenytoin & Phenobarbital		Monitor drug level
	Itraconazole, Voriconazole		Consider alternative antifungal or a dose adjustment
	Carbamazepine, Clonazepam	NVP and interacting drug levels are reduced	Monitor drug level and consider dose adjustment
	Methadone, Amiodarone, Lignocaine, Ethosuximide, Nifedipine, Verapamil	Reduced drug level of interacting drug	Monitor and adjust dose
	Oral contraceptives		Also use barrier contraceptives
	St. John's Wort		Avoid concomitant use
	Warfarin		Monitor INR or PT
	Ketoconazole		Avoid concomitant use
	Fluconazole		Increased level of NVP
	Halofantrine, Lumefantrine	Increased drug level of interacting drug	

\* Numerous clinically significant drug interactions may occur with the use of PI's and NNRTI's in combination with other medications therefore the tables are only a guide to managing some of the more significant interactions.

# DRUG INTERACTIONS

## WITH PROTEASE INHIBITORS\*

DRUG	INTERACTING DRUG	EFFECT OF THE INTERACTION	MANAGEMENT OF THE INTERACTION	
<b>Protease Inhibitors</b>				
<b>Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r) AND Ritonavir (RTV)</b>	Rifampicin	Reduce drug level of LPV/r and RTV	Boost with Ritonavir	
	Phenobarbital, Carbamazepine		Monitor closely or consider an alternative	
	St. John's Wort		Avoid concurrent use	
	Alprazolam, Triazolam, Midazolam, Diazepam and Zolpidem	Increased drug level of the interacting drug	Consider Lorazepam, Oxazepam or Temazepam	
	Simvastatin and Lovastatin		<b>Avoid:</b> Use Pravastatin, Fluvastatin or low dose Atorvastatin	
	Digoxin		Monitor closely	
	Fluticasone, Budesonide		Dose reduction of steroid may be necessary – monitor systemic corticosteroid effects	
	Ergotamine		<b>Avoid:</b> Substitute with a 5-HT agonist	
	Nifedipine, Felodipine, Verapamil		Monitor and adjust dose accordingly	
	Amitriptyline		Monitor and adjust Amitriptyline dose accordingly	
	Ketaconazole and Itraconazole		Potential interaction – may require reduction in dosage or lower doses of antifungal	
	Voriconazole		Avoid concomitant use	
	Clarithromycin Erythromycin, Moxifloxacin		<b>Caution:</b> patients with impaired renal function Shown to prolong the QT interval.	
	Warfarin		Reduced drug level of interacting drug	Monitor INR or PTI
	Theophylline, Lamotrigine, Phenyton, Methadone			Monitor and adjust doses accordingly
	Metronidazole		Disulfiram reaction with alcohol in oral solution	Avoid concomitant use with LPV/r or RTV oral solution
	Amiodarone, Clozapine, Dextropropoxyphene, Pethidine, Pimozide, Quinidine, Halofantrine		Potential for life threatening adverse event	Avoid concomitant use

\* Numerous clinically significant drug interactions may occur with the use of PI's and NNRTI's in combination with other medications therefore the tables are only a guide to managing some of the more significant interactions.

# ARV & FOOD

## INTERACTIONS AND REQUIREMENTS

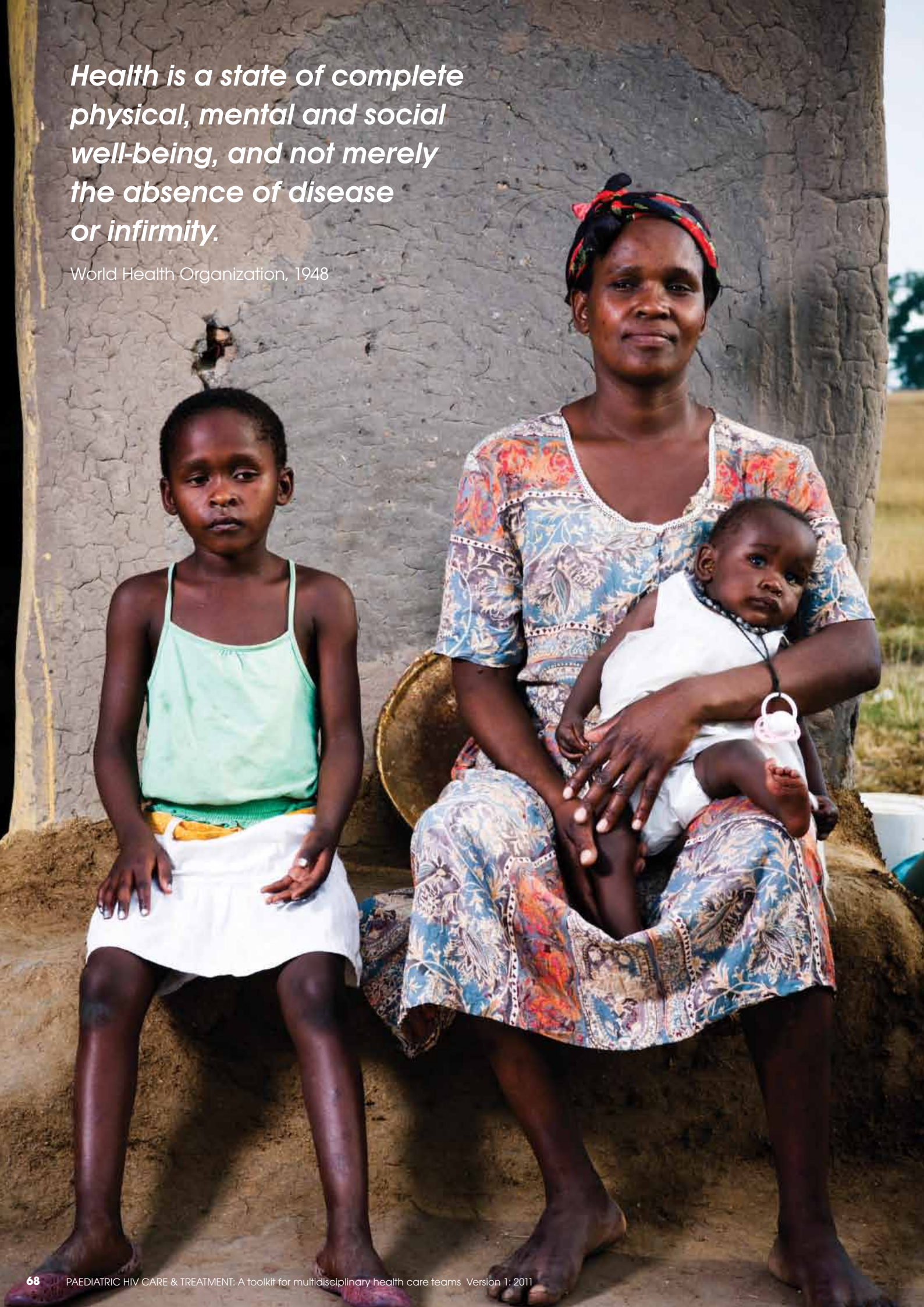
DRUG	FOOD REQUIREMENTS & INTERACTIONS	OTHER INFORMATION	TO AVOID
<b>NRTI's</b>			
<b>Lamivudine (3TC)</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> Take with or without food	Fewer gastrointestinal (GI) side effects when taken with some food	
<b>Abacavir (ABC)</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> Take with or without food	Fewer GI side effects when taken with some food	Alcohol
<b>Zidovudine (AZT)</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> Take with or without food	Very high fat meals may reduce drug concentration in blood	Limit Alcohol
<b>Didanosine (ddl)</b>	<b>Food impairs absorption: Take on empty stomach,</b> 1 hour before or 2 hrs after food. Poor solubility at low pH results in significant degradation, which is slightly overcome by buffered formulations.	Food alters absolute bioavailability by 50%, most likely due to increased medication breakdown and delayed gastric emptying	Alcohol
<b>Emtricitabine (FTC)</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> Take with or without food		
<b>NNRTI's</b>			
<b>Efavirenz (EFV)</b>	<b>Take with or without food.</b> Fat increases absorption. <b>Avoid very high fat meals</b> if experiencing side effects (82g fat bioavailability with 50%) <b>Best taken on an empty stomach at bedtime</b>	Associated with increased levels of side effects when taken with a high fat meal	Alcohol / psychotropic agents
<b>Nevirapine (NVP)</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> take with or without food		St John's Wort
<b>Etravirine</b>	<b>Take with food</b>		
<b>PI's</b>			
<b>Lopinavir /ritonavir (LPV/r)</b>	<b>Take with a large meal -</b> food significantly increases absorption ( <b>Kaletra Solution + Capsules</b> ) <b>With or without food (Aluvia Tablets)</b>	Best drug concentrations achieved with meal containing at least 500Kcal with 25% fat content	St John's Wort
<b>Ritonavir (RTV)</b>	Food increases absorption of the capsule. Food decreases the absorption of the liquid <b>BOTH NOT SIGNIFICANT</b>	Provide tips on how to improve taste of oral solution	St John's Wort



DRUG	FOOD REQUIREMENTS & INTERACTIONS	OTHER INFORMATION	TO AVOID
<b>PI's</b>			
<b>Nelfinavir (NFV)</b>	<b>Food increases absorption:</b> must be taken with a meal or light snack	Must be taken with 300 Kcal or more	St John's Wort
<b>Atazanavir (ATZ)</b>	<b>Food significantly increases absorption:</b> take with a large meal	Best concentrations achieved with at least 500Kcal or 25% fat	
<b>Indinavir (IDV)</b>	<b>Take on an empty stomach</b> - 1 hr before or 2 hrs after meal or light low fat snack (max 2g fat, 300Kcal)	<b>Plenty of fluids</b> (4 large glasses for adults) to reduce risk of developing kidney stones	St John's Wort, grape fruit juice
<b>Darunavir</b>	<b>Food increases absorption:</b> take with a meal or snack	Drug concentration increases as meal size increases	
<b>Fosamprenavir</b>	<b>Food significantly increases absorption:</b> take with meal or snack	Must be taken with 300 Kcal or more	
<b>Saquinavir (SQV) (hard gel capsule )</b>	<b>Food significantly increases absorption:</b> take with meal or snack.	Fasted state reduces concentration by 70% and grapefruit juice drug concentration 2 fold	St John's Wort, garlic
<b>Saquinavir SQV (soft gel capsule)</b>	<b>Food increases absorption:</b> take with meal or snack		St John's Wort, garlic
<b>NIRTI</b>			
<b>Tenofovir</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> take with or without food	Bioavailability increase when taken with a high fat meal	Nephrotoxic agents
<b>Fusion Inhibitor</b>			
<b>Enfuvirtide</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> take with or without food		
<b>CCR5 Antagonist</b>			
<b>Maraviroc</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> take with or without food		
<b>Integrase Inhibitor</b>			
<b>Raltegravir</b>	<b>No interactions:</b> take with or without food		

*Health is a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being, and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity.*

World Health Organization, 1948





# MONITOR FOR ADVERSE EVENTS

## RELATED TO ART

### EVALUATION

#### Key Notes:

- Most drugs have side effects, especially at the beginning of the therapy, although in the majority of cases these are mild and self limiting.
- If children and their caregivers know about possible side effects it is easier to deal with them.
- All side effects of ARVs must be graded on a scale of 1 (mild toxicity) through to 4 (life-threatening toxicity). Clinical management of the ARV regimen depends upon this grading system.
- Some signs and symptoms, such as laboratory values, are easily quantified and graded
- Grading other signs and symptoms (e.g. lipodystrophy and skin rashes) depends on clinical judgement following a careful history and physical assessment.

#### Grading the Severity of Paediatric Adverse Reactions

(Based on DAIDS grading of Adverse Events)

FEATURE	GRADE 1	GRADE 2	GRADE 3	GRADE 4
<b>Haematology</b>				
<b>Haemoglobin Infant 1- 21 days</b>	12.0 - 13.0 g/dL	10.0 - 11.1 g/dL	9.0 - 9.9 g/dL	< 9.0 g/dL
<b>Haemoglobin Infant 22 - 35 days</b>	9.5 - 10.5 g/dL	8.0 - 9.4 g/dL	7.0 - 7.9 g/dL	< 7.0 g/dL
<b>Haemoglobin Infant 36 - 56 days</b>	8.5 - 9.4g/dL	7.0 - 8.4 g/dL	6.0 - 6.9 g/dL	< 6.0 g/dL
<b>Hb greater than 57 days (HIV-positive only)</b>	8.5 - 10.0 g/dL	7.5 - 8.4 g/dL	6.5 - 7.4 g/dL	< 6.5 g/dL
<b>Absolute neutrophil count Infant 1 day</b>	4.0 - 5.0 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	3.0 - 3.9 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	1.5 - 2.9 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	< 1.5 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l
<b>Absolute neutrophil count Infant 2 - 7 days</b>	1.25 - 1.5 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	1.0 - 1.24 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	0.75 - 0.99 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	< 0.75 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l
<b>Absolute neutrophil count Children older than 7 days</b>	1.0 - 1.3 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	0.75 - 0.9 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	0.5 - 0.7 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l	< 0.5 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /l
<b>Platelets (cells/mm<sup>3</sup>)</b>	100 000 - 124 999	50 000 - 99 999	25 000 - 49 999	< 25 000 or bleeding

FEATURE	GRADE 1	GRADE 2	GRADE 3	GRADE 4
<b>Gastro-intestinal (N=Normal)</b>				
<b>Bilirubin</b>	1.1 - 1.5 x N	2.0 - 2.9 x N	3.0 - 7.5 x N	> 7.5 x N
<b>AST</b>	1.25 - 2.5 x N	2.6 - 5.0 x N	5.1 - 10.0 x N	> 10.0 x N
<b>ALT</b>	1.25 - 2.5 x N	2.6 - 5.0 x N	5.1 - 10.0 x N	> 10.0 x N
<b>γGT</b>	1.1 - 4.9 x N	5.0 - 9.9 x N	10.0 - 15.0 x N	> 15.0 x N
<b>Pancreatic Amylase</b>	1.1 - 1.5 x N	1.6 - 2.0 x N	2.1 - 5.0 x N	> 5.0 x N
<b>Diarrhoea adult and paediatric age 1 year or older</b>	Transient or intermittent episodes of unformed stools OR increase of 3 stools or less over baseline per 24 hour period	Persistent episodes of unformed to watery stools OR increase of 4 - 6 stools over baseline per 24 hour period	Bloody diarrhoea OR increase of 7 stools or more per 24 hour period OR IV fluid replacement indicated	Life-threatening consequences (e.g. Hypotensive shock)
<b>Diarrhoea paediatric less than 1 year of age</b>	Liquid stools (more unformed than usual) but usual number of stools	Liquid stools with increased number of stools OR mild dehydration	Liquid stools with moderate dehydration	Liquid stools resulting in severe dehydration with aggressive rehydration indicated OR hypotensive shock
<b>Constipation</b>	NA	Persistent constipation requiring regular use of dietary modifications, laxatives or enemas	Obstipation with manual evacuation indicated	Life-threatening consequences (e.g. obstruction)
<b>Nausea</b>	Transient (less than 24 hours) or intermittent nausea with no or minimal interference with oral intake	Persistent nausea resulting in decreased oral intake for 24 - 48 hours	Persistent nausea resulting in minimal oral intake for more than 48 hours OR aggressive rehydration indicated (e.g. IV fluids)	Life-threatening consequences (e.g. hypotensive shock)
<b>Vomiting</b>	Transient or intermittent vomiting with no or minimal interference with oral intake	Frequent episodes of vomiting with no or mild dehydration	Persistent vomiting resulting in orthostatic hypotension OR aggressive rehydration indicated (e.g. IV fluids)	Life-threatening consequences (e.g. hypotensive shock)
<b>Allergic/Dermatological</b>				
<b>Acute systemic allergic reaction</b>	Localized urticaria (wheals) with no medical intervention indicated	Localized urticaria with medical intervention indicated OR mild angioedema with no medical intervention indicated	Generalized urticaria OR angioedema with medical intervention indicated OR symptomatic mild bronchospasm	Acute anaphylaxis OR life-threatening bronchospasm OR laryngeal oedema
<b>Cutaneous reaction skin rash</b>	Localized macular rash	Diffuse maculopapular rash OR morbilliform rash OR target lesions	Diffuse macular, maculopapular or morbilliform rash with vesicles or limited number of bullae OR superficial ulcerations of mucous membrane limited to one site	Extensive or generalized bullous lesions OR Stevens-Johnson syndrome OR ulceration of mucous membrane involving two or more distinct mucosal sites OR toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN)

FEATURE	GRADE 1	GRADE 2	GRADE 3	GRADE 4
<b>Nervous system</b>				
<b>Developmental delay - Paediatric younger than 16 years</b>	Mild developmental delay, either motor or cognitive, as determined by comparison with a developmental screening tool appropriate for the setting	Mild developmental delay, either motor or cognitive, as determined by comparison with a developmental screening tool appropriate for the setting	Severe developmental delay, either motor or cognitive, as determined by comparison with a developmental screening tool appropriate for the setting	Developmental regression, either motor or cognitive, as determined by comparison with a developmental screening tool appropriate for the setting
<b>Neuromuscular weakness (including myopathy &amp; neuropathy)</b>	Asymptomatic with decreases strength on exam OR minimal muscle weakness causing no or minimal interference with usual social & functional activities	Muscle weakness causing greater than minimal interference with usual social and functional activities	Muscle weakness causing inability to perform usual social and functional activities	Disabling muscle weakness causing inability to perform basic self-care functions OR respiratory muscle weakness impairing ventilation
<b>Neurosensory alteration (including paresthesia and painful neuropathy)</b>	Asymptomatic with sensory alteration on exam or minimal paresthesia causing no or minimal interference with usual social & functional activities	Sensory alteration or paresthesia causing greater than minimal interference with usual social & functional activities	Sensory alteration or paresthesia causing inability to perform usual social and functional activities	Disabling sensory alteration or paresthesia causing inability to perform basic self-care functions
<b>Other</b>				
<b>Clinical symptoms not otherwise specified above</b>	No therapy, monitor condition	May require minimal intervention and monitoring	Requires medical care or possible hospitalisation	Requires active medical intervention, hospitalisation or hospice care

## MANAGEMENT

### Mild toxicity (Grade 1)

- Continue ARV therapy. Stress maintenance of adherence despite mild toxicity
- Symptomatic treatment e.g. antihistamines for mild rash
- Assess how adherence may be affected and provide support and reassurance to family

### Moderate toxicity (Grade 2)

- Continue ARV therapy as long as feasible.
- Repeat lab tests and reassess clinically in 2 weeks.
- If the patient does not improve on symptomatic therapy within 2 weeks, consider single-drug substitutions.
- For a few moderate toxicities (e.g. peripheral neuropathy or lipodystrophy) single drug substitution needs to be considered as soon as they appear.



### **Severe toxicity (Grade 3)**

- Lab tests should be repeated in 1 week and if still grade 3, stop ALL ARV drugs and seek expert medical advice
- May require single ARV drug switch and not discontinuation of all ARV drugs
- ABC must be stopped immediately and permanently if a hypersensitivity reaction occurs.

### **Severe life-threatening toxicity (Grade 4)**

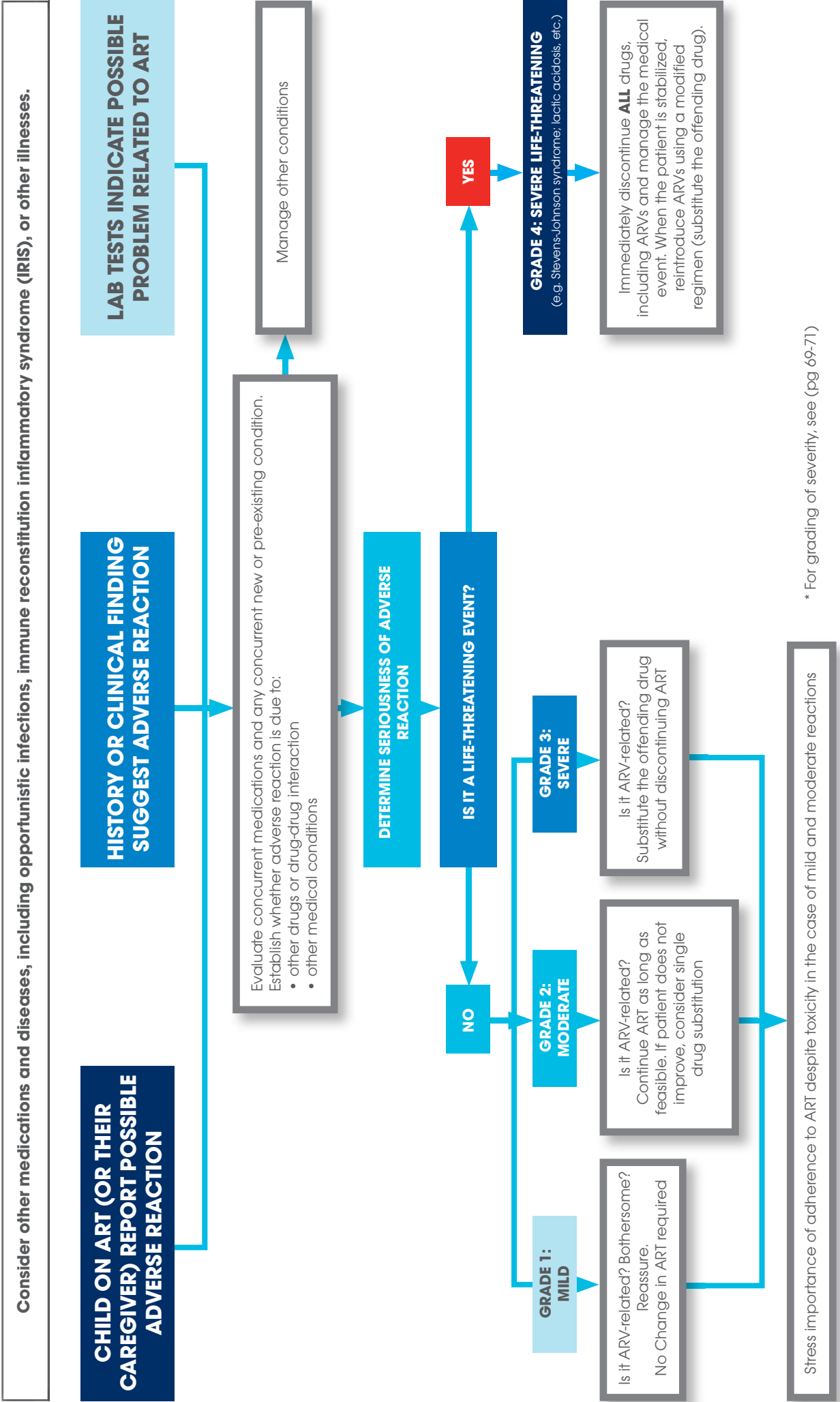
- Discontinuation of all ARV drugs immediately
- Appropriate supportive therapy
- Substitution of likely implicated drug once patient is stabilised and toxicity resolved
- Decisions should be made on an individual basis and discussed with experts as required.

### **General:**

- Complete Adverse Drug Reaction (ADR) form
- Submit form to local pharmacy service



# MANAGING ARV TOXICITY



\* For grading of severity, see (pg 69-71)

# LIPODYSTROPHY



## SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Body changes:

- Peripheral fat wasting (lipoatrophy)
- Wasting of subcutaneous fat in face (cheeks have sunken appearance and soft tissue loss in temples), limbs (legs often noticed first), upper trunk and buttocks
- Fat accumulation
- Base of neck ('buffalo hump'), central fat disposition (truncal lipohypertrophy), breast hypertrophy
- Prominent peripheral veins
- Metabolic abnormalities (e.g. dyslipidemia and insulin resistance)

## TREATMENT

- Switching ARV therapy if able, stavudine and lopinavir/ritonavir typically causative
- Hormonal therapy
- Address emotional symptoms
- Encourage exercise

## DIAGNOSIS

Observation of body shape changes

# ABACAVIR HYPERSENSITIVITY REACTION



## SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

At least two of the following:

- Fever
- Rash – mild, often unnoticed by patients
- GIT – nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain
- Constitutional – fatigue, myalgia, general malaise
- Respiratory – dyspnoea, cough, pharyngitis

## TREATMENT

- Counsel caregivers of risk at initiation of therapy and what to do if suspected. Should not stop treatment without consulting an experienced health care professional.
- If fits criteria for Abacavir Hypersensitivity Reaction, stop Abacavir immediately.
- Never re-start Abacavir if stopped for suspected hypersensitivity reaction – can precipitate fatal cardio-respiratory collapse

## DIAGNOSIS

- Clinical signs and symptoms; exclusion of other causes of symptoms
- History of accentuation and worsening of symptoms with each dose
- Multi-organ process – **not only rash**
- HLA genotyping (not widely available)

# NNRTI DRUG RASH



## SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

### Mild-to-moderate rash

- Erythematous, maculopapular, confluent, most often on the body and arms, with no systemic symptoms

### Severe rash

- Extensive rash with moist desquamation, angioedema, or serum sickness-like reaction; or a rash with constitutional findings such as fever, oral lesions, blistering, facial oedema, conjunctivitis

### Life-threatening Stevens–Johnson syndrome

- Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN), extensive skin peeling

## TREATMENT

### Mild-to-moderate rash

- ART can be continued without interruption but under close observation

### Severe or life-threatening rash

- Discontinue all ARVs and non-ARV drugs until symptoms resolve
- Once symptoms resolve, restart ART by substituting an alternative ARV for suspected offender

## DIAGNOSIS

- Observation of clinical signs and symptoms
- Do ALT to exclude hepatic involvement



# MONITOR EFFICIENCY OF ART TREATMENT

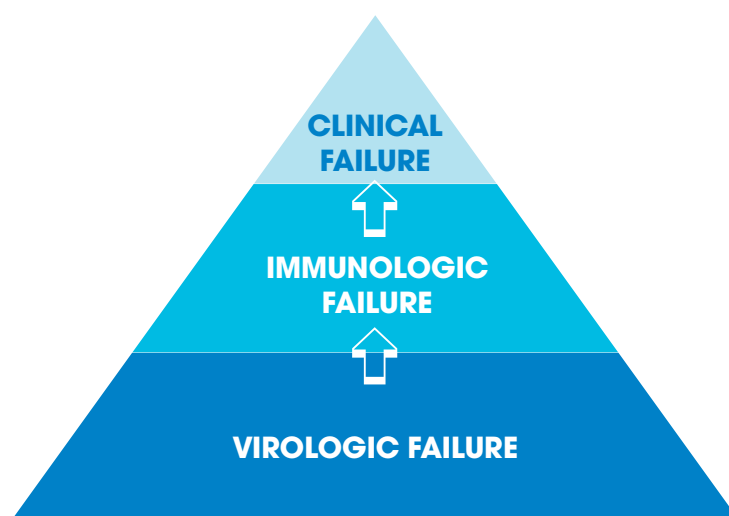
## TREATMENT SUCCESS

Defined as such if the following are achieved within 6 months of treatment initiation:

- Improved clinical status, including
  - Improved or normal growth
  - Improved or normal neurological development
  - No new opportunistic infections
  - Fewer intercurrent illnesses
- Improved or stabilised immune status (CD4)
- An undetectable viral load

## TREATMENT FAILURE

Defined as deterioration in the clinical, immunological or virologic status of the child after at least 24 weeks of continuous triple drug ART with good adherence.

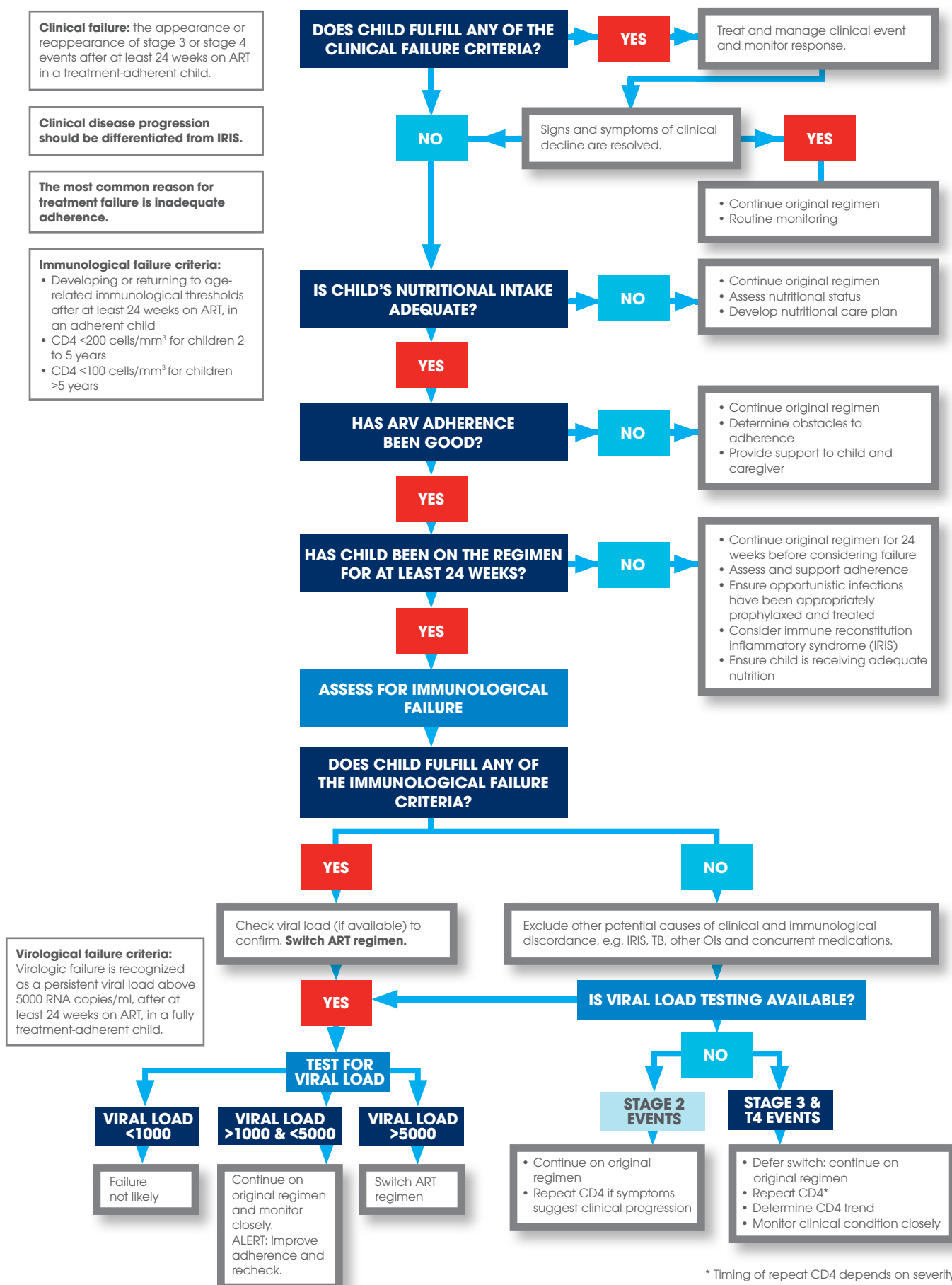


## KEY NOTES:

- CD4 and viral load measurements should not be performed during intercurrent infections but preferably 4 - 6 weeks after they have resolved
- At least 2 measurements of CD4 count should be performed and adequate adherence should be ensured before considering a change in therapy
- If treatment failure is due to non-adherence, do not switch to second line until adherence to first line therapy is well-established and treatment failure is still evident.
- Check that dosing is adequate. Growth should be monitored at every visit and medication doses adjusted as needed.
- Ask caregiver about use of other medications, including treatments from traditional healers and/or "natural" therapies.
- Consider immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS) as a cause of paradoxical clinical deterioration during first 3 - 6 months after starting ART.

# MANAGING TREATMENT FAILURE WHEN CD4 TESTING IS AVAILABLE

**INFANT OR CHILD ON ART PRESENTS FOR FOLLOW-UP VISIT WITH SIGNS OR SYMPTOMS SUGGESTING CLINICAL OR IMMUNOLOGICAL DECLINE**



\* Timing of repeat CD4 depends on severity

# MANAGING TREATMENT FAILURE WHEN CD4 TESTING IS **NOT** AVAILABLE

**INFANT OR CHILD ON ART PRESENTS FOR FOLLOW-UP VISIT WITH SIGNS OR SYMPTOMS SUGGESTING CLINICAL OR IMMUNOLOGICAL DECLINE**

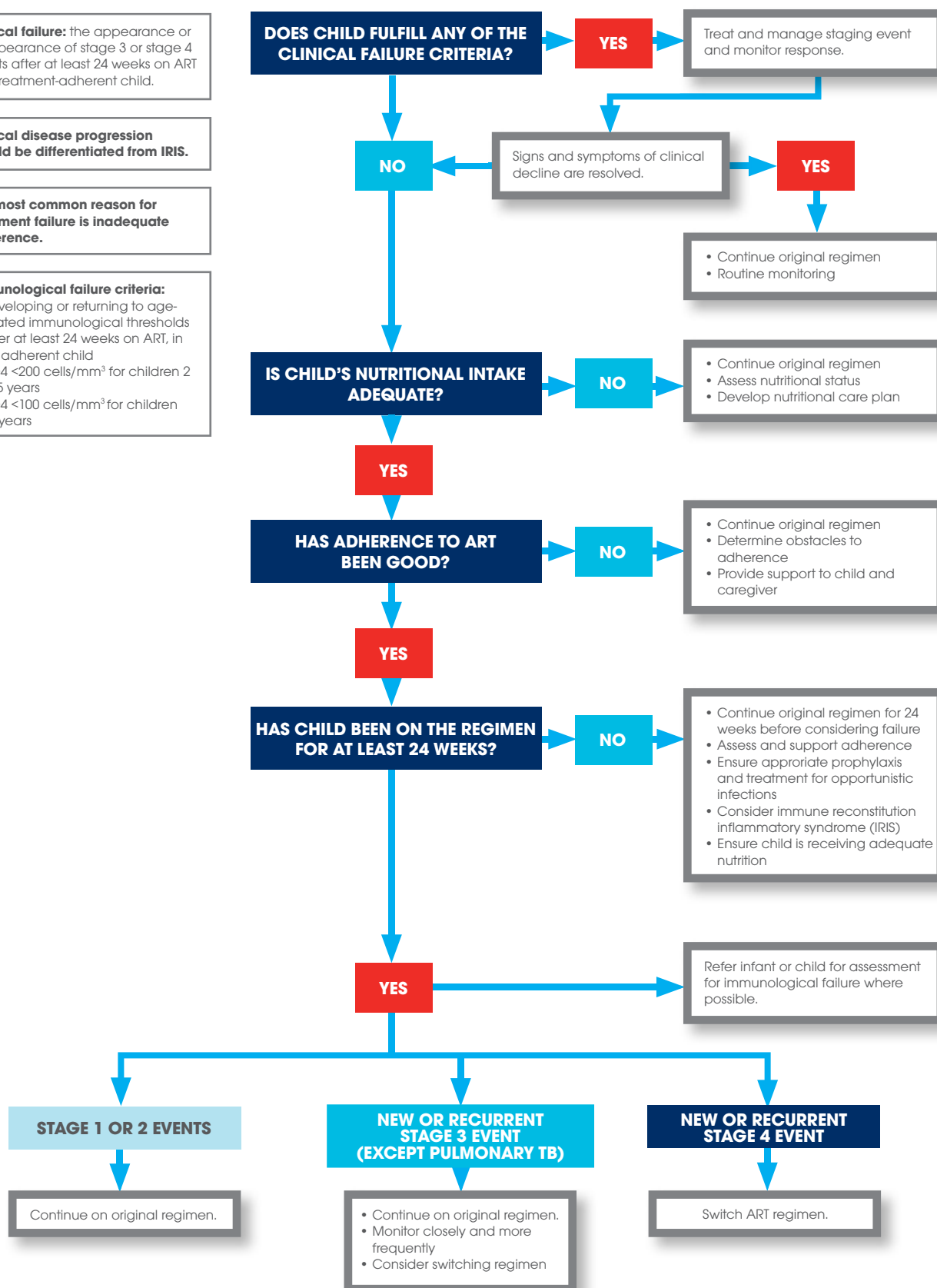
**Clinical failure:** the appearance or reappearance of stage 3 or stage 4 events after at least 24 weeks on ART in a treatment-adherent child.

**Clinical disease progression should be differentiated from IRIS.**

**The most common reason for treatment failure is inadequate adherence.**

**Immunological failure criteria:**

- Developing or returning to age-related immunological thresholds after at least 24 weeks on ART, in an adherent child
- CD4 <200 cells/mm<sup>3</sup> for children 2 to 5 years
- CD4 <100 cells/mm<sup>3</sup> for children >5 years



**Recommended second-line regimens in infants and children in the event of treatment failure of first-line regimens**

**RECOMMENDED SECOND-LINE REGIMEN: BOOSTED PI COMPONENT + TWO NRTI COMPONENTS**

<b>PREFERRED SECOND-LINE REGIMEN</b>			
<b>FIRST-LINE REGIMEN AT FAILURE</b>	<b>RTI COMPONENTS (NRTI/NNRTI) <sup>a</sup></b>		<b>PI COMPONENT</b>
<b>2 NRTIs + 1 NNRTI:</b> AZT- or d4T-containing	ABC + 3TC or ABC + ddI	<b>PLUS</b>	<b>LPV/r<sup>c</sup></b>
or ABC-containing	AZT + 3TC or AZT + ddI		<b>LPV/r<sup>c</sup></b>
Triple NRTI	ddI <sup>l</sup> + EFV <sup>b</sup> or NVP		<b>LPV/r<sup>c</sup></b>

<sup>a</sup> Continuation of 3TC in second-line regimens may be considered.

<sup>b</sup> EFV is currently not recommended for children <3 years of age, and should be avoided in postpubertal adolescent girls who are either in the first trimester of pregnancy or are sexually active and not using adequate contraception.

<sup>c</sup> LPV/r is available as solid and liquid co-formulations.

# IMMUNE RECONSTITUTION INFLAMMATORY SYNDROME

(IRIS)

---

This appears as a paradoxical clinical deterioration after starting ARV therapy. It is caused by the improving immune system interacting with organisms that have colonized the body.

## PRESENTATION

- Usually presents during the first 6 weeks to 3 months after starting ARV therapy
- More common with severe immune suppression at initiation of treatment and subsequent rapid drop in viral load and increase in CD4 after initiation of treatment
- Clinical presentations vary depending on the causative organism and the organ-system that is involved
- Causative organisms may be:
  - Mycobacteria –Tuberculosis, MAC, BCG (M. Bovis)
  - Fungi – Pneumocystis pneumonia, Cryptococcus neoformans
  - Viruses – CMV, Varicella Zoster, HSV, Molluscum contagiosum, PML (rare in children), Hepatitis B/C

## DIAGNOSIS

- Identify specific organism

### Major criteria

- Atypical presentation of opportunistic infections or tumours in patients on ART
  - Exaggerated inflammatory response (fever, painful lesions)
  - Atypical inflammatory response in affected tissues (granulomas, suppuration, necrosis)
  - Progression of organ dysfunction or enlargement of pre existing lesions after definite clinical improvement with specific opportunistic infection therapy and exclusion of toxicity prior to starting ART (Tuberculomas, Kaposi's, new onset CMV retinitis or CMV uveitis)
- Reduction in Plasma HIV RNA by > 1 log 10 copies/ml

### Minor criteria

- Increase in CD4 T-lymphocyte count
- Increase in specific immune responses to the pathogen
- Spontaneous resolution of the disease without specific therapy with continued antiretroviral therapy



## MANAGEMENT

- Most resolves within a few weeks
- Manage with anti-microbial treatment specific to the causative organism
- Continue ART unless symptoms are life-threatening
- In severe cases, steroids and/or temporary discontinuation of ART may help.  
If in doubt, refer the child to the next level of care for evaluation





### Frequently Asked Questions:

#### What side-effects can we expect?

- The side effects differ from one ARV drug to another
- Most children **will not get side-effects**
- The most **common** side-effects when starting treatment, includes: **diarrhoea, nausea and vomiting** (it will clear up with time)
- Sometimes children can get more **serious side effects** such as:

- **Stomach pain**
- **Fast or difficulty breathing**
- **Pain in feet**
- **Thinning of face and arms**
- **Rash in the mouth and if widespread on the body**
- **Severe vomiting and diarrhoea**

**NB!** All other *serious side-effects will be monitored by the doctor or the nurse*

**If a child is experiencing any of the above, take them to the clinic as soon as possible!**

#### Short term side-effects:

- Dizziness, nightmares, drowsiness and confusion caused by Efavirenz, Stocrin®
- Vomiting and Diarrhoea—if it lasts more than 2 days bring the child to the clinic



**Always bring your child to the clinic if he/she has a FEVER!**



## GIVING MEDICINE TO CHILDREN



## What The Caregiver Should Know

**For more information:**  
**ECHO**  
(Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)

4<sup>th</sup> Floor, TMI Building  
Joubert Extension Street  
Braamfontein

[www.witsecho.org.za](http://www.witsecho.org.za)  
Tel: 011 547 5000

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-620-45040-9





## Medication

In most cases, a child will take at least 5 types of medications:

- **Multivitamin in the morning**
- **Co-trimoxazole (Bactrim®) daily**
- **A combination of 3 ARV medicines**

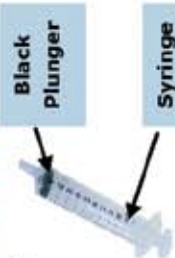
**It is important to know:**

1. The **name** of each medicine
2. **When** and how **often** to give each
3. How **much** of each to give (this may **change** at almost every visit)

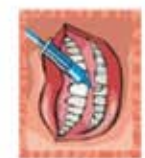
## Administering Medicines

- The amount of medicine to give appears on the label
- If the label states for example to give 4ml, you will do as follows:

1. Place the tip of the syringe in the liquid medicine
2. Draw liquid until the plunger is in line with the correct number on the syringe e.g. 4
3. Flick the syringe to move any bubbles in the liquid towards the tip—then push the plunger to remove the bubbles
4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 if necessary
5. Give this amount to the child in their mouth e.g. 4ml



Syringe



**Never mix medicines in a syringe**

## Frequently Asked Questions:

**What do I do if the child vomits after taking the medicine?**

- If the child vomits **within 30 minutes** of giving the medication - **give it again**
- If it happens **after 30 minutes** - **do not give it again until the next dose**



**What must I do if I forgot to give the medicine?**

**For 12 hourly doses:**

- If you remember **within 6 hours** - **give it**
  - If it is **more than 6 hours** – **skip the dose**
- For once daily doses:**
- If you remember **within 12 hours** - **give it**
  - If it is **more than 12 hours** – **skip the dose**

**NEVER GIVE A DOUBLE DOSE!**

**When is the best time to give the medication?**

- The time that **suits** you and the child's routine
- For twice daily doses— give the doses **12 hours apart** or as close to 12 hours as possible

### Helpful Reminders

- Give meds the same time as:
- Daily activities
- Favorite TV programs



- Set alarm clock / cell phone alarm
- Use a diary card / pillbox

## Frequently Asked Questions:

**Can I give the medication with food?**

**Not all medication is the same; therefore the following should be followed:**

**Medicine with no food restrictions** (meaning you can give it with or without food):

- Lamivudine (3TC)
- Stavudine (d4t)
- Abacavir (ABC)
- Tenofovir (TDF)
- Zidovudine (AZT)
- Nevirapine (NVP)
- Aluvia®

**Taken with food:**

- Kaletra® solution

**Avoid fatty foods**

- Efavirenz (Stocrin®) – **best given at bedtime**

**Taken on an empty stomach** (1 hour before food or two hours after food)

- Didanosine (ddt)

**Can I give the medication with other medication?**

Always ask a **pharmacist** before taking any other medication!



**Even natural or traditional medication might not go well with the medicine!**

**Where must I keep the medicine?**

Always keep medicine in a **cool, dry and dark** place.



- Avoid keeping medicine in the kitchen or in the bathroom

**Some medicines need to be kept in the fridge:**

- Stavudine liquid
- Kaletra® Solution (can be outside for 42 days)

## HOW TO MANAGE IT?

1. Make sure your adherence is excellent
2. The doctor/nurse will look for other diseases that can cause the viral load to go up and the CD4 % (count) to drop
3. The doctor may have bloods taken to check if the treatment is working
4. The treatment may be changed

### REMEMBER

There are not a lot of options available and you should try and prevent treatment failure to ensure a long and healthy future!



## TREATMENT FAILURE

What the caregiver should know



### FOR MORE INFORMATION

ECHO (enhancing children's HIV Outcomes)

4th Floor, CMI building  
Joubert extension street  
Braamfontein

[www.witsecho.org.za](http://www.witsecho.org.za)

Tel: 011 547 5000

## WHAT IS IT?

### TREATMENT FAILURE MEANS THAT THE TREATMENT IS NOT WORKING ANYMORE

It may be detected by:

1. Falling CD4 % (or count)
2. Return of CD4% (or count) to what it was before the child started ARVs
3. A rising viral load
4. Return of symptoms or illness as it was before starting ARVs
5. Worsening health e.g. Loss of weight despite eating enough food, tiredness, oral thrush, diarrhoea that does not get better.

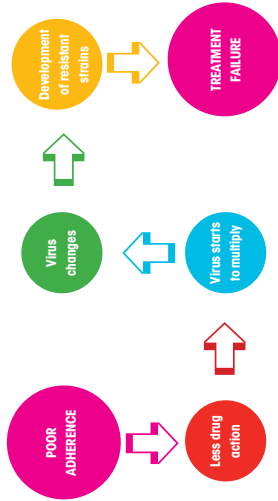
## WHAT CAUSES IT?

### THE MOST COMMON CAUSE IS:

#### POOR ADHERENCE

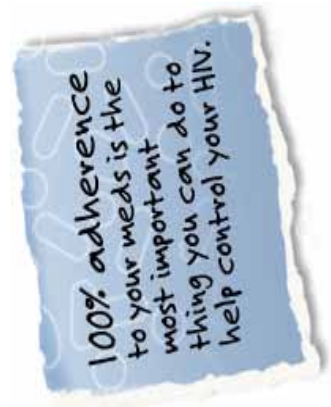
This means not giving the child medicine correctly or every day at the right time, as agreed

How does this happen?



Other causes may include:

- Incorrect doses
- Interaction with other medicines
- Infection with a resistant virus



## HOW TO PREVENT IT?



Give the medicines



Every Day



Twice a day (if necessary)



On time



# This **COOL**

## Diary Card

Belongs to:



Name:

Surname:

Date of Birth:

Hospital Number:

Caregiver Name:

Cell Number:

For more information or to change  
appointment dates contact:



### IMPORTANT DATES

2 Remember!



#### Clinic Visit



#### Pharmacy

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_



#### Soldier Cell (CD4)

Previous Result \_\_\_\_ (dd/mm/yy)

Next Test (dd/mm/yy)



#### Viral Load

Previous Result \_\_\_\_ (dd/mm/yy)

Next Test (dd/mm/yy)



#### Don't FORGET! Counselling



ISBN 978-0-620-44944-0

MONTH \_\_\_\_\_

YEAR \_\_\_\_\_

3TC	Kal	NVP	Bactrim
d4t	AZT	ABC	Multivite
EFV	ddI	RTV	TB Meds

Date			Date		
1			17		
2			18		
3			19		
4			20		
5			21		
6			22		
7			23		
8			24		
9			25		
10			26		
11			27		
12			28		
13			29		
14			30		
15			31		
16					



Taken:

Late Dose: **L**

Missed Dose: **X**





MONTH \_\_\_\_\_  
YEAR \_\_\_\_\_

3TC	Kal	NVP	Bactrim
d4t	AZT	ABC	Multivite
EFV	ddI	RTV	TB Meds

Date			Date		
1			17		
2			18		
3			19		
4			20		
5			21		
6			22		
7			23		
8			24		
9			25		
10			26		
11			27		
12			28		
13			29		
14			30		
15			31		
16					

Taken:  
 Late but still taken:  
 Missed Dose:

MONTH \_\_\_\_\_  
YEAR \_\_\_\_\_

3TC	Kal	NVP	Bactrim
d4t	AZT	ABC	Multivite
EFV	ddI	RTV	TB Meds

Date			Date		
1			17		
2			18		
3			19		
4			20		
5			21		
6			22		
7			23		
8			24		
9			25		
10			26		
11			27		
12			28		
13			29		
14			30		
15			31		
16					

Taken:  
 Late but still taken:  
 Missed Dose:

MONTH \_\_\_\_\_  
YEAR \_\_\_\_\_

3TC	Kal	NVP	Bactrim
d4t	AZT	ABC	Multivite
EFV	ddI	RTV	TB Meds

Date			Date		
1			17		
2			18		
3			19		
4			20		
5			21		
6			22		
7			23		
8			24		
9			25		
10			26		
11			27		
12			28		
13			29		
14			30		
15			31		
16					

Taken:  
 Late but still taken:  
 Missed Dose:

# COUNSELLING CHECKLIST

## FOR DISPENSING ARVS

<b>MEDICATION</b>	
Names	
Colour coding	
Frequency of doses	
Dose (ml/mg)	

<b>TOOLS</b>	
Syringe	
Marked	
<b>Demonstrate</b>	
How to read	
How to clean	
Practical	
<b>Diary</b>	
Explain the use	
How it works	

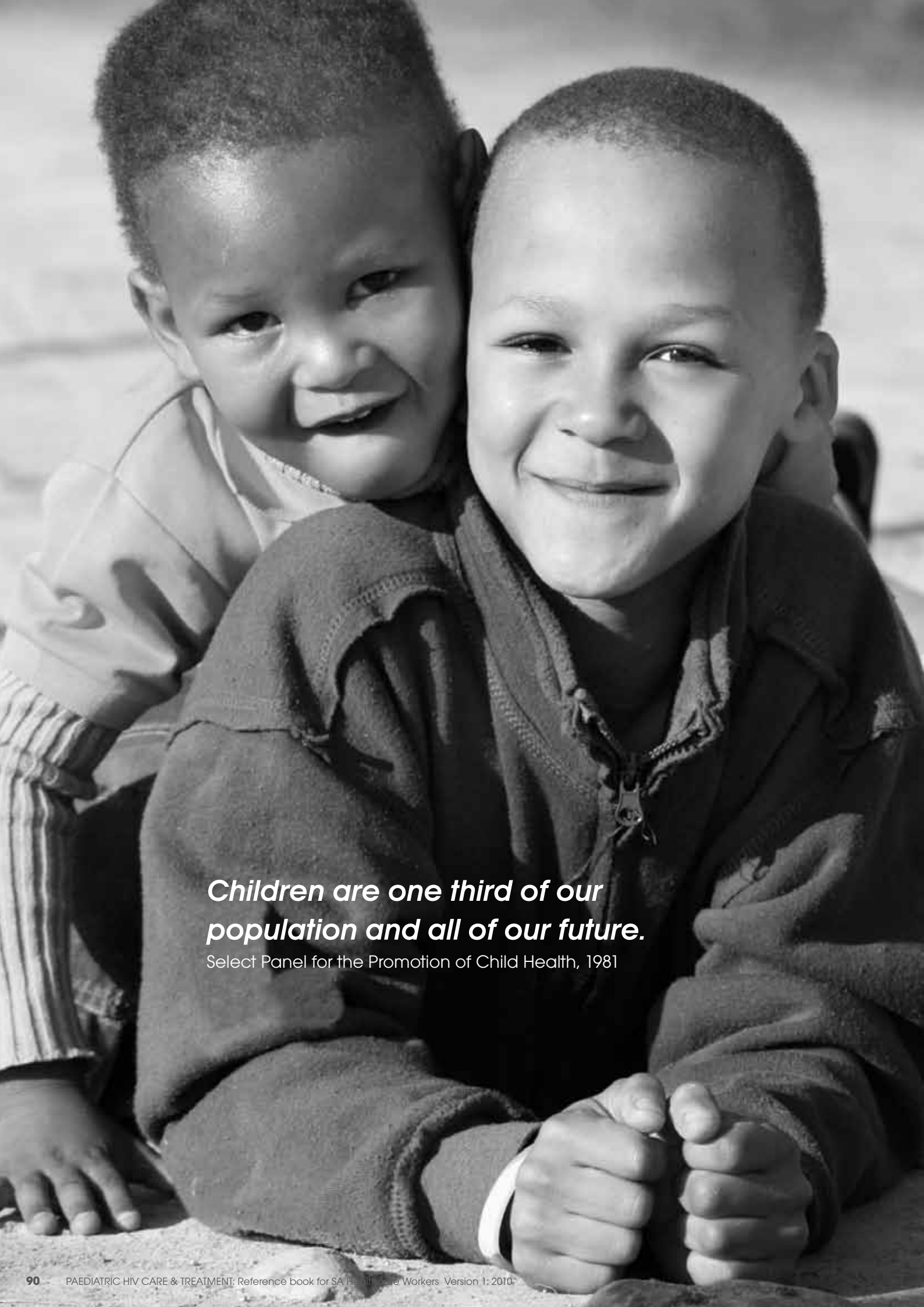
<b>ADHERENCE</b>	
Routine / Time	
Importance	
Pill/bottle count	

<b>SIDE-EFFECTS</b>	
Probability	
Possible side-effects	
Dangerous side-effect	
Vomiting	

<b>DRUG INTERACTION</b>	
Traditional medication	
OTC medication	

<b>PROBLEMS</b>	
Late / missed doses	
Number in case of emergency	
Questions	

<b>ADMIN</b>	
Bring all meds back	
To come back date	



***Children are one third of our  
population and all of our future.***

Select Panel for the Promotion of Child Health, 1981



# PICTIONARY OF WHO STAGING CONDITIONS

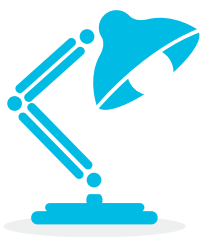




# PICTIONARY OF PAEDIATRIC WHO STAGING

Physical diagnosis is an essential skill for the evaluation and ongoing monitoring of HIV-infected children. This pictiography serves as a job aide to assist the visual recognition of paediatric WHO staging conditions. It also includes additional information on the clinical findings, diagnostic investigations and possible referral steps needed. Even though diagnosis of some conditions may be complex and outside one's scope of practice, all healthcare workers providing care to HIV-infected children should be aware of the clinical warning signs with which these conditions may present and consult when necessary.

WHO Staging is an important aspect of determining ART eligibility and of monitoring a patient's clinical status over time. Stages range in severity from Stage 1 representing none or mild symptoms, to Stage 4 representing AIDS-defining conditions.



## **KEY MESSAGE:**

***All children should be assigned a baseline WHO Stage at the time of HIV diagnosis.***



## **KEY MESSAGE:**

***Monitoring for any new WHO staging conditions is an important aspect of chronic care for both children on ART and those not yet eligible.***

### WHO STAGE 1

- Asymptomatic
- Persistent generalized lymphadenopathy

### WHO STAGE 2

- Unexplained persistent hepatosplenomegaly
- Papular pruritic eruptions
- Extensive wart virus infection
- Extensive molluscum contagiosum
- Fungal nail infections
- Recurrent oral ulcerations
- Unexplained persistent parotid enlargement
- Linear gingival erythema
- Herpes zoster
- Recurrent or chronic upper respiratory tract infections (otitis, sinusitis or tonsillitis)

### WHO STAGE 3

- Unexplained moderate malnutrition not responding to standard therapy
- Unexplained persistent diarrhoea
- Unexplained persistent fever
- Persistent oral thrush (outside neonatal period)
- Oral hairy leukoplakia
- Acute necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis or periodontitis
- Lymph node tuberculosis
- Pulmonary tuberculosis
- Severe recurrent bacterial pneumonia
- Symptomatic lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis
- Chronic HIV-associated lung disease including bronchiectasis
- Unexplained anaemia, neutropaenia and/or thrombocytopaenia

## WHO STAGE 4

- Unexplained severe malnutrition not responding to standard therapy
- Pneumocystis pneumonia
- Recurrent severe bacterial infections
- Chronic herpes simplex infection
- Extrapulmonary tuberculosis
- Kaposi's Sarcoma
- Oesophageal candidiasis
- Central nervous system toxoplasmosis
- HIV encephalopathy
- Cytomegalovirus infection with onset at age older than one month
- Cryptococcal meningitis
- Chronic cryptosporidiosis
- Chronic isosporiasis
- Cerebral or B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
- Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
- Symptomatic HIV-associated nephropathy or HIV-associated cardiomyopathy
- HIV-associated rectovaginal fistula

**\*NOTE: Disseminated endemic mycosis and disseminated non-tuberculous mycobacterial infections are additional Stage 4 conditions that are not included in this Pictionary.**



# PERSISTENT GENERALISED LYMPHADENOPATHY

## WHO STAGE 1



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Multiple, enlarged lymph nodes (glands)
- Present for more than a month
- At 2 or more node sites (neck, axilla, groin, etc.)
- Usually painless and firm

### TREATMENT

- No treatment if related to HIV Stage 1
- Exclude other causes and treat accordingly

### DIAGNOSIS

Persistent enlarged lymph nodes >1cm at two or more sites without known cause

# PAPULAR PRURITIC ERUPTIONS

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Papular (bumpy) lesions
- May be at different stages of hyperpigmentation
- Very itchy
- Usually appear on arms, chest, face, scalp, axillae and thighs

### TREATMENT

- Chlorpheniramine orally 0.1 mg/kg/dose 6 - 8 hrly (not for children < 12 mo of age), or
- Cetirizine at night:
  - $\geq 14$ -25kg-5mg/dose
  - $\geq 25$ -55kg-10mg/dose
- Hydrocortisone acetate 1% cream apply twice daily
- Emollients

### DIAGNOSIS

Papular pruritic vesicular lesions as described above



# RECURRENT OR CHRONIC UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS - OTITIS MEDIA DESCRIBED HERE

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Pain in the ear
- Loss of hearing
- Fever
- Inflamed or perforated ear drum
- Pus discharge from the ear

### TREATMENT

- Analgesics for pain
- Antibiotics: If acute, treat with Amoxyl 25-30 mg/kg/dose three times daily for 7 days
- If the discharge is offensive, add metronidazole 7.5mg/kg/dose 8 hrly for 7days
- For chronic draining otitis, ear wicking is essential
- If persistent, refer for hearing evaluation
- Refer urgently if swelling and redness behind ear

### DIAGNOSIS

Symptoms as above with either persistent ear discharge or two or more acute episodes in the past 6 months qualifies as WHO Stage 2

# EXTENSIVE WART VIRUS INFECTION

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Cutaneous benign skin growths caused by the human papillomavirus.
- Raised warts appear as excessively thickened skin with black dots. Vary in size from solitary lesions to grouped, cauliflower-like lesions
- Flat warts may be lighter or darker than the surrounding skin, often found forming lines.
- It is widespread and persistent in patients who are immunocompromised

### TREATMENT

- It is based on the age, the size, number and location of warts.
- Most warts in children resolve spontaneously within two years
- Some persist and become large and painful
- The extremely cold and painful liquid nitrogen is not well tolerated by children and it causes scarring
- Imiquimod cream, podophyllin to apply on the lesions
- They can be scraped, burned by laser or excised
- If severe, ART may improve the condition

### DIAGNOSIS

Lesions as described above that cover 5% or more of the body surface area, or are disfiguring

# FUNGAL NAIL INFECTION

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Begins at distal end spreading towards the nail bed
- Nails become hardened and crumble
- Colour may change to opaque, white, black or of normal shine

### TREATMENT

- Often improves once on ART
- Antifungal treatment requires systemic administration, often with side effects that outweigh cosmetic concerns
- If severe, consider referral.

### DIAGNOSIS

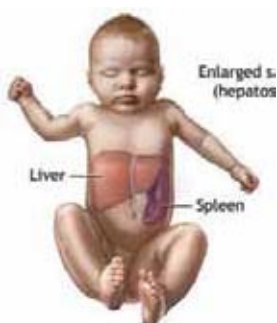
Clinical signs and symptoms

# UNEXPLAINED PERSISTENT HEPATOSPLENOMEGALY

## WHO STAGE 2



Photo courtesy of the  
Baylor International Paediatric  
AIDS Initiative



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Enlarged liver and spleen
- May have distended abdomen
- May have jaundice

### TREATMENT

- Depends on the cause

### DIAGNOSIS

Enlarged liver and spleen without obvious cause

# RECURRENT ORAL ULCERATIONS

## WHO STAGE 2



Photo courtesy of the Baylor International Pediatric AIDS Initiative

### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Recurrent episodes usually begin with itching, tingling, or burning at the site of infection
- A red bump or cluster of bumps form on the skin
- They rapidly progress to fluid- or pus-filled blisters.
- A few days later scabs form and the lesions heal usually within 8 days
- The blisters may spread extensively
- Lesions are painful and may be associated with fever

### TREATMENT

- Oral antiviral medications like acyclovir may be given to treat recurrent episodes within 72 hrs of appearance:
  - 2yrs & older: 400mg every 8 hours x 5 days
  - Under 2yrs: 200mg every 8 hours x 5 days (refer young infants)
- Paracetamol syrup for pain as directed
- Keep the area around a sore clean either with soap and water or antiseptic solution
- Refer if disseminated infection suspected or dehydration

### DIAGNOSIS

Lesions as described above with two or more episodes in the past 6 months

**If persists for longer than 1 month or disseminated herpes, classify as a stage 4 condition.**

# HERPES ZOSTER

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Low grade fever
- General malaise
- Mild to severe pain, burning, redness and discomfort in the area of the affected nerve distribution (dermatome) on one side of the body
- Followed by appearance of groups of small papules which rapidly change to vesicles filled with a cloudy fluid on the affected site a few days later
- The lesions form a scab and heal in about a week
- In those severely immunocompromised more than one dermatome can be affected

### TREATMENT

#### For new vesicles:

- Oral acyclovir 20mg/kg (maximum 800mg/dose) 4 x daily x 5 days within 24 hrs of appearance of the rash
- Analgesics for pain and post-herpetic neuralgia
- Calamine lotion to apply on the lesions to soothe the area
- Give antibiotic if becomes super-infected
- Refer if any facial involvement or signs of dissemination

### DIAGNOSIS

From history and examination



# LINEAR GINGIVAL ERYTHEMA

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Intense inflammation and swelling of gum margin occurring in a band-like distribution
- There may be pus formation
- Often there is gum recession

### TREATMENT

- Encourage good oral hygiene (brushing, flossing, mouth rinses)
- Chlorhexidine gluconate mouth wash
- Antifungals, such as nystatin, may be helpful
- For painful and severe acute lesions, refer to a dental provider for thorough examination and possible antibiotic therapy.

### DIAGNOSIS

Clinical signs and symptoms

# EXTENSIVE MOLLUSCUM CONTAGIOSUM

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Small lumps which are pearly-white or slightly pink.
- Looks like a small wart and is round, firm and umbilicated on the top of each lesion
- Sometimes they develop over various parts of the skin and occur in clusters
- Any part of the body can be affected but it is rare on the palms and soles.
- Giant or widespread lesions especially involving the face could be a marker of an underlying immune deficiency
- Most occur in children aged 1 - 4 years.

### TREATMENT

- Many of the treatments can be painful or cause scarring.
- Allow to heal spontaneously if few in number or consider tincture of iodine BP applied to the core of individual lesions, otherwise consider referral for liquid nitrogen or curettage.

### DIAGNOSIS

Lesions as described above that cover 5% or more of the body surface area, or are disfiguring

# BILATERAL PAINLESS PAROTID SWELLING

## WHO STAGE 2



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Swelling on both sides of face
- Palpable lumps in front of ears
- There is loss of the angle of the jaw
- Present for more than a month
- Firm on palpation
- Painless
- Mostly appear when there is HIV infection
- May be associated with lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis (LIP), see LIP – Stage 3

### TREATMENT

- ART may improve the condition
- Reassure

### DIAGNOSIS

Physical findings in association with confirmed HIV infection.

# ORAL THRUSH - PERSISTANT OR RECURRENT

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Creamy white patch on the tongue and/or mucous membrane of the mouth that can be scratched off, often with red base
- Can be painful

### TREATMENT

- Nystatin suspension orally 1ml after each feed x 7 days minimum, continue for 2 days after resolves.
- Older children 2ml swish and swallow 4 times a day x 7 days minimum.
- Or, gentian violet 0.5% aqueous solution applied in the mouth 3 x a day, extend for 2 days after cure
- Treat refractory oral candidiasis and suspected oesophageal candidiasis with fluconazole 3mg/kg/day for up to 21 days
- ART eligible
- Analgesia – Paracetamol 15mg/kg/dose 4-6 hourly

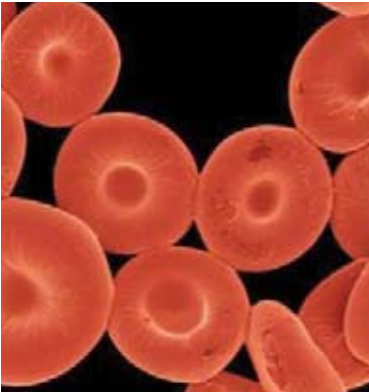
### DIAGNOSIS

Characteristic oral lesion described above that is persisting or has recurred in a child 2 months of age or older qualifies as WHO Stage 3

**Consider Oesophagal Candidiasis in infant or child with oral thrush and food refusal, drooling, difficulty swallowing – this is a stage 4 condition.**

# ANAEMIA, NEUTROPAENIA & THROMBOCYTOPAENIA

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Anaemia:
  - Lethargy
  - Pallor
  - Exertional dyspnoea
  - Tachycardia
  - Palpitations
- Neutropaenia: Increased risk for sepsis and serious infection.
- Thrombocytopaenia: Active bleeding and/or petechiae

### TREATMENT

- Depends on the cause
- Anaemia: If Hb < 6 g/dL, refer urgently for possible transfusion. If Hb 6 g/dL or higher, give iron, counsel iron-rich foods, treat for worms and repeat Hb in 14 days.
- Neutropaenia and Thrombocytopaenia: Physician review recommended
- ART eligible

### DIAGNOSIS

**Blood tests show the following:**

- Low haemoglobin (< 8 g/dL)
- Low neutrophil count (<  $0.5 \times 10^9$  per litre)
- Low platelet count (<  $50 \times 10^9$  per litre)
- Only assign WHO Stage 3 if of unexplained cause



# PERSISTENT OR RECURRENT DIARRHOEA

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Passing loose /watery stools >3 times a day
- There may be abdominal pain
- Nausea
- Loss of appetite
- Low grade fever
- Signs of dehydration, the primary cause of morbidity and mortality in children e.g.
  - lethargy
  - sunken fontanelle
  - sunken eyes
  - loss of skin turgor
  - dry mouth and lips, no tears when crying, anuria, tachycardia and unconsciousness

### TREATMENT

- Prevention: Vitamin A supplementation every 6 months in all HIV-infected infants and children aged 6 months to 5 years (6-12 months of age - 100 000 IU; > 12 months of age 200 000 IU)
- Re-hydrate: orally or intravenously if necessary
- Refer to hospital if the child is severely dehydrated
- Elemental zinc supplementation:
  - up to 10kg – 10mg daily for 14 days
  - > 10 kg – 20 mg daily for 14 days
- Multivitamin supplementation for 14 days
- If bloody diarrhoea – Ciprofloxacin 15mg/kg daily for 3 days
- ART indicated if confirmed HIV-infected

### DIAGNOSIS

3 or more loose, watery, non-bloody stools daily for 14 days or longer.

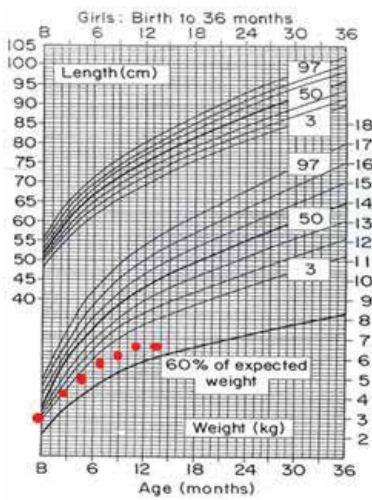
#### Consider the following investigations:

- Stool for MC&S
- FBC

Some infectious causes of persistent diarrhoea among HIV+ patients may represent a Stage 4 condition, such as cryptosporidium & isospora.

# UNEXPLAINED MODERATE MALNUTRITION

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Weight loss with flattening or decline of weight curve
- There may be visible wasting
- Palmer pallor
- Hair colour and texture abnormalities

### TREATMENT

- Nutritional supplementation & counselling
- Multivitamin syrup daily
- Vitamin A and deworming
- Treat any active infections
- ART if no response to standard therapy
- Refer if poor appetite or clinical danger signs

### DIAGNOSIS

#### Plot weight & height on growth chart

- Weight for height Z score -2 to -3
- Concerning if flattening of the growth curve, weight for age < 3%ile
- Other causes such as food insecurity and TB have been ruled out.

# LYMPHOID INTERSTITIAL PNEUMONITIS (LIP) - SYMPTOMATIC **WHO STAGE 3**



## **SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

- Chronic cough
- Slow progressive shortness of breath
- Lethargy
- Enlarged parotids
- Clubbing
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Generalised lymphadenopathy
- May progress to bronchiectasis and right heart failure

## **TREATMENT**

- ART
- Exclude TB
- Trial of salbutamol for symptom relief
- If very symptomatic, Prednisone 1mg/kg/day x 2 weeks, tapering the dose for a further 4 - 6 weeks
- Refer if signs of right heart failure

## **DIAGNOSIS**

Persistent cough and clinical findings, tends to occur in school-age HIV-infected child.

### **Chest X-ray :**

- Reticular, reticular-nodular or nodular infiltrates
- Lymphadenopathy

# CHRONIC HIV-ASSOCIATED LUNG DISEASE

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Chronic lung disease is an endpoint of several different causes in HIV-infected children, perhaps prior TB, recurrent pneumonias or LIP.

- Chronic cough not improving with standard treatments
- Susceptible to recurrent pneumonia, i.e. acute worsening against background chronic cough

### TREATMENT

- Assess symptom severity and look for hypoxia
- Hospital referral for severe symptoms, oxygen
- Consider specialist consultation for chronic care plan
- Start ART
- Treat acute pneumonia early and aggressively
- Consider trial of salbutamol for symptom relief
- Steroids may be used in severe cases and when no TB

### DIAGNOSIS

- **Clinical:** History of chronic cough, perhaps productive, with or without clubbing, crepitations and/or wheezing on auscultation.
- **X-ray:** Honeycomb appearance as seen in bronchiectasis and /or persistent areas of opacification, fibrosis and decreased lung volumes.

# UNEXPLAINED PERSISTENT FEVER

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Temperature of  $>37.5^{\circ}$  taken axillary,  $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$  orally
- Skin hot to touch

### TREATMENT

- Undress to bare minimum of clothing
- Give paracetamol syrup as directed
- Investigate cause and treat accordingly
- ART eligible

### DIAGNOSIS

- Thermometer registering from  $>37.5^{\circ}\text{C}$
- Intermittent or daily for 1 month or longer
- Other infectious causes have been ruled out



# NECROTIZING ULCERATIVE GINGIVITIS OR PERIODONTITIS - ACUTE **WHO STAGE 3**



## **SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

- May partly or totally affect gums and single teeth
- Swollen gums
- Later become inflamed and ulcerate
- Grey-white membrane on affected area
- Halitosis
- May have cervical lymphadenopathy

## **TREATMENT**

- Encourage good oral hygiene
- Metronidazole 7.5mg/kg/dose, 8 hrly x 5 days
- Chlorhexidine gluconate mouth wash
- Refer to dentist
- ART eligible

## **DIAGNOSIS**

Clinical signs and symptoms

# ORAL HAIRY LEUKOPLAKIA

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Benign white vertical ridges on the sides of the tongue
- Unilaterally or bilaterally
- Hard and painless
- Cannot be scrapped off

### TREATMENT

- Acyclovir 250mg/m<sup>2</sup>/dose 3 - 5 x per day x 10 days if there is discomfort
- ART may clear the lesions

### DIAGNOSIS

Presence of Epstein-Barr virus in tissues

# RECURRENT SEVERE BACTERIAL PNEUMONIA

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Ill child with a high fever
- Tachypnoea (Rapid breathing)
- Tachycardia
- Grunting
- Productive cough on history or during examination
- Intercostal and subcostal recession
- Flaring nostrils
- There may be scattered crepitations and wheezes in one or more lobes
- Difficulty with feeding
- Vomits when coughing

### TREATMENT

- Oxygen and hydration as indicated
- Paracetamol syrup orally 15mg/kg/dose 4 - 6 hourly
- First- line antibiotics: Ampicillin (or penicillin ) plus gentamicin ivi  
**OR** Ceftriaxone 50-80mg/kg imi  
**PLUS** Cotrimoxazole 10mg/kg ivi before transfer to hospital (in HIV-infected or exposed infants 2-12 months old)
- Consider TB & PCP
- ART eligible

### DIAGNOSIS

- Two or more episodes over the past 6 months
- Clinical findings with chest x-ray to confirm when available.

# PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS AND TB LYMPHADENITIS

## WHO STAGE 3



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

#### NB - SCREEN AT EACH VISIT

- Persistent cough > 2 weeks
- Loss of weight or failure to thrive in last 3 months
- Fatigue or reduced playfulness
- Persistent fever >2 weeks
- Lymphadenopathy – painless mass > 2 x 2cm without local cause; usually in neck

### TREATMENT

- Infection control in clinic
- NOTIFY
- Start TB treatment immediately - doses and duration of treatment as for HIV-uninfected children. See TB/Malaria chapter for guidance
- Start ART 2 weeks after starting TB treatment. See TB/Malaria chapter for guidance on drug regimens and dose adjustments

### DIAGNOSIS

- History of TB contact and symptoms
- Physical examination
- Mantoux  $\geq 5$  mm in HIV+ patients
- CXR
- Microscopy and culture – sputum or gastric aspirates

# OESOPHAGEAL CANDIDIASIS

## WHO STAGE 4



Severe oral thrush

### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Suspect in a child with severe oral thrush and oesophageal symptoms:
  - Refuses feeds
  - Has difficulty in swallowing
  - Drools
  - Hoarse voice or stridor

### TREATMENT

- Intravenous fluconazole 3mg/kg/day x 21 days
- Give orally when child is able to tolerate feeds
- ART

### DIAGNOSIS

- Often clinical diagnosis based on findings of oral thrush in combination with oesophageal symptoms.
- Definitive diagnosis requires endoscopy.



# KAPOSI'S SARCOMA

## WHO STAGE 4



*Photo courtesy of the Baylor International Pediatric AIDS Initiative*

### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Can occur at any CD4 count, more aggressive at low counts
- Multifocal, firm and purple-to-brown vascular plaques or nodules in the skin or internal organs.
- Can occur in any location but frequently on the face, oral mucous membranes and lower extremities.
- Usually painless
- Can invade lymph nodes and cause limb swelling

### TREATMENT

- ART
- Systemic chemotherapy, refer to cancer treatment centre

### DIAGNOSIS

From clinical signs and symptoms with confirmation by biopsy pathology and staining for human herpesvirus – 8 (HHV-8).

# CRYPTOCOCCAL MENINGITIS

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Onset over days to weeks, can be very subtle early in the disease
- Headache, nausea, fever, vomiting
- Confusion, seizures
- Focal neurological signs, especially cranial nerve palsy (note facial droop in photo)
- Usually older child with severe immunocompromise
- May occur as a result of IRIS

### TREATMENT

- All patients should be admitted
- Amphotericin B IV for 14 days followed by Fluconazole 12-15mg/kg/day for 8 weeks, then Fluconazole 6-10mg/kg/day secondary prophylaxis
- Therapeutic lumbar punctures may be needed to relieve symptoms of increased intracranial pressure
- ART

### DIAGNOSIS

- Culture – of CSF a definite diagnosis
- Cryptococcal antigen test in serum - >95% sensitivity in AIDS. Good marker for HIV associated cryptococcal meningitis

# UNEXPLAINED SEVERE MALNUTRITION

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Hair discoloration, visible bones, rashes and ulcerations
- Distended abdomen in kwashiorkor.
- Danger signs include:
  - Dehydration
  - Lethargy
  - Hypothermia
  - Jaundice
  - Shock
  - Hypoglycaemia

### TREATMENT

- Stabilise before URGENT referral for admission, follow IMCI stabilization.
  - Keep warm
  - Check glucose
  - Treat infection
  - Rehydrate but be cautious not to over hydrate
  - Start ART once stabilised

### DIAGNOSIS

- **Marasmus:** Severe wasting with wt/ht Z score  $\leq -3$  or lower or MUAC  $< 11.5$ . Weight for age is often  $< 60\%$  expected.
- **Kwashiorkor:** Malnutrition with bilateral oedema

# RECTO-VAGINAL FISTULA

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Flatulence and faeces through the vagina
- There is faecal incontinence

### TREATMENT

- Drainage of any abscesses
- Topical antibiotic therapy to treat acute rectovaginal fistulas
- Dietary modification and supplemental fibre can greatly reduce symptoms
- ART if confirmed infected
- Surgical repair once on ART with immunologic improvement

### DIAGNOSIS

Clinical signs and symptoms

# CYTOMEGALOVIRUS (CMV) INFECTION

## WHO STAGE 4

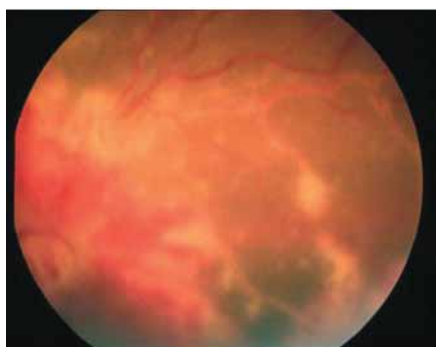


Photo courtesy of the Baylor International Pediatric AIDS Initiative

### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Depends upon the affected organ. Occurs in setting of severe immunocompromise. May present as:

**Retinitis:** Blurry vision, perceived flashing lights and progressive vision loss leading to blindness.

**Pneumonitis:** Severe pneumonia, may co-infect with PCP.

**GI Disease:** Hepatitis or colonic ulcers with bloody diarrhoea.

### TREATMENT

- Only antiviral effective against CMV is gancyclovir.
- Consultation by specialist team at a tertiary hospital
- Referral for dilated eye exam in patients with suspected retinitis.
- ART

### DIAGNOSIS

Can be challenging, often clinical findings with supportive laboratory CMV viral tests. CMV testing can confirm infection, but not necessarily that the illness is due to that infection. Consult when needed. CMV disease is Stage 4 if onset occurs in a child older than one month.



# HIV ENCEPHALOPATHY

## WHO STAGE 4



Photo courtesy of the Baylor International Pediatric AIDS Initiative

### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Symptoms vary from mild to severe, often begin during infancy if perinatally infected. Developmental monitoring and head circumference measurements for children <2yrs are important to help make the diagnosis.

Motor deficits on exam will be symmetrical, often with increased tone in the legs and progressing to involve the arms in severe cases. Pathological reflexes, ataxia and gait disturbances may be present.

### TREATMENT

- Start ART
- Occupational and physical therapist consultation
- Ongoing developmental monitoring
- Social service support for caregivers
- Educational support services for the school-age child

### DIAGNOSIS

At least one of the following, progressing over at least two months in the absence of other illness:

- Failure to attain, or loss of, developmental milestones
- Acquired microcephaly, flattening of head circumference curve
- Acquired symmetrical motor deficit

# PNEUMOCYSTIS (PCP) PNEUMONIA

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Severe pneumonia symptoms:

- Respiratory distress with indrawings
- Rapid breathing
- Fever, may or may not be present
- Poor feeding
- Cyanosis (blue oral mucosa)

Chest may sound clear despite severe respiratory symptoms.

### TREATMENT

- Oxygen while awaiting transfer to hospital
- Cotrimoxazole – load immediately with 10mg/kg ivi; continue with 5mg/kg/dose 6 hourly ivi for 5 days. Can change to oral preparation once improved to complete 21 days
- Remember to treat for acute bacterial pneumonia also (Ampicillin and Gentamicin OR Ceftriaxone (Corticosteroids – NO LONGER RECOMMENDED due to possible exacerbation of CMV Pneumonitis co-infection))
- ART

### DIAGNOSIS

Requires bronchoalveolar lavage or lung biopsy, often not practical. Suspect in any HIV-infected or exposed child, especially infants, with severe pneumonia symptoms.

**CXR:** May appear normal, but often shows bilateral perihilar infiltrates. Pneumothorax or pneumo-mediastinum may develop.

# CEREBRAL OR B-CELL NON-HODGKIN'S LYMPHOMA

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Depends upon the cancer location.

**Cerebral:** Mass lesion causing headache, confusion, focal neurologic deficits. May be similar to toxoplasmosis.

**Burkitt's:** Rapidly enlarging lymph node mass, often occurring around the jaw (see picture)

**Other lymphoma:** Variable. More gradual lymph node enlargement, often with non-specific symptoms of fever, weight loss, fatigue

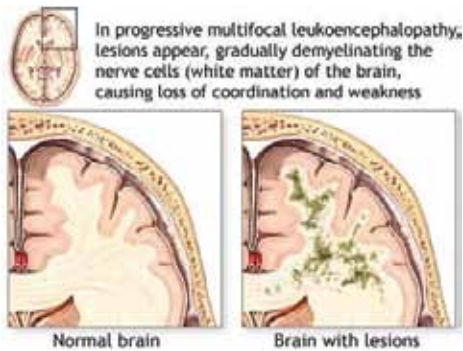
### TREATMENT

- Oncology specialist consultation
- Specialist ART management

### DIAGNOSIS

- Central nervous system imaging or biopsy of a relevant specimen.
- Other causes of symptoms (eg. TB) should be considered and ruled out.

# PROGRESSIVE MULTIFOCAL LEUKOENCEPHALOPATHY (PML) WHO STAGE 4



Source: [www.hivandhepatitis.com](http://www.hivandhepatitis.com)

## SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Slow in onset
- Speech and vision impairment
- Mental retardation
- Advanced stages – limb paralysis, cortical blindness

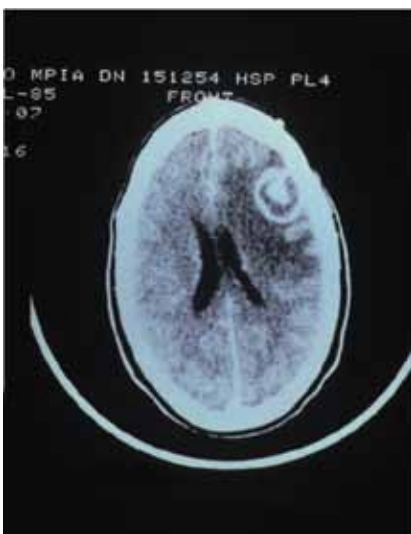
## TREATMENT

- ART is the only effective therapy

## DIAGNOSIS

- Clinical features
- CSF – to exclude infective causes of presentation e.g. TBM or Cryptococcal Meningitis
- MRI – to make definitive diagnosis

# CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM TOXOPLASMOSIS WHO STAGE 4



## SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Headache
- Confusion and behaviour change
- Focal motor deficits
- Rare in children

## TREATMENT

- Specific treatments limited, neurology and infectious diseases specialist consultation recommended
- ART
- Refer to rehabilitation therapists

## DIAGNOSIS

- Neuroimaging shows ring enhancing lesion(s)
- CSF PCR for toxoplasmosis
- Blood and CSF serologies

# HIV-ASSOCIATED CARDIOMYOPATHY

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Failure to thrive
- Tiring on feeds, lethargy
- Signs of cardiac failure:
  - Infants – tachypnoea, tachycardia, low peripheral pulse volume, displaced apex beat, hepatomegaly
  - Older children – as for infants plus pedal oedema, raised JVP

### TREATMENT

- ART
- Anti-failure therapy including diuretics and low-dose ACE inhibitors; rarely digoxin (only on cardiologists advice)

### DIAGNOSIS

- Clinical signs and symptoms
- CXR – cardiomegaly
- Echocardiography
- Exclusion of all other causes of cardiomyopathy



# HIV-ASSOCIATED NEPHROPATHY

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Often asymptomatic
- Once reach nephrotic range (proteinuria  $>3\text{g/L/day}$ ) pedal and periorbital oedema, ascites

### TREATMENT

- ART
- ACE Inhibitors if  $>1\text{g/L/day}$  of proteinuria
- Corticosteroids and cyclosporine used only with Nephrologists advice

### DIAGNOSIS

Presence of nephropathy is supported by:

- Screening urine dipstix: If  $> 1+$  protein or blood – exclude UTI (sterile urine-microscopy and culture)
- If UTI excluded – send random urine sample for protein/creatinine ratio (pr/cr)
- If abnormal pr/cr ( $<2\text{yrs} - >0.5$ ;  $>2\text{yrs} - >0.2$ ) refer to tertiary centre
- If normal – repeat pr/cr in 3 - 6 months
- HIV as a potential cause is often a diagnosis of exclusion

# RECURRENT SEVERE BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

## WHO STAGE 4



Photo courtesy of the Baylor International Pediatric AIDS Initiative

### INCLUDES:

- Empyema (pus around lungs)
- Bone and joint infections
- Pyomyositis (muscle infection)
- Meningitis

**Does NOT include pneumonia**

### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Fever
- Signs and symptoms specific to site of infection
  - Empyema: respiratory distress
  - Bone, joint, muscle: swelling, tenderness, pseudoparalysis, abnormal posture
  - Meningitis: vomiting, neck stiffness, altered level of consciousness

### TREATMENT

- Choice of antibiotic and duration will depend on site of infection
- Analgesia and antipyretics
- ART

### DIAGNOSIS:

- 2 episodes in 6 months
- Culture specimen from specific site

# CHRONIC ISOSPORIASIS

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Chronic diarrhoea
- Associated fever, abdominal pain
- Wasting

### TREATMENT

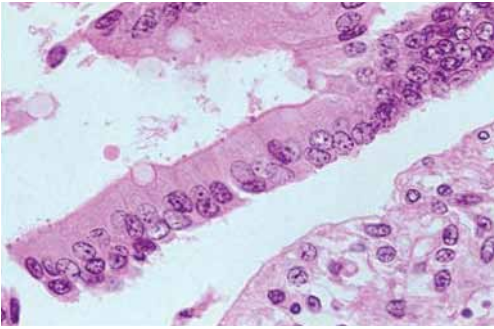
- Prevention: hygiene
- Support hydration and nutrition
- Cotrimoxazole – 5mg/kg (TMP) 4 x per day for 10 days followed by lifelong prophylaxis
- Ciprofloxacin – an alternative if allergic to cotrimoxazole
- ART

### DIAGNOSIS:

- Clinical course
- Stool microscopy
  - organism seen
  - specifically request
  - send 3 stool samples

# CHRONIC CRYPTOSPORIDIOSIS

## WHO STAGE 4



### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

- Severe in those with low CD4 counts
- Diarrhoea > 28 days; secretory; often fulminant
- Accompanying fever, malaise, nausea
- Associated malabsorption common
- Complications:
  - Cholecystitis (jaundiced)
  - Pneumonia

### TREATMENT

- Prevention: hygiene
- Maintain hydration and nutrition
- Azithromycin 12mg/kg/day for at least 2 weeks (will need tertiary referral for treatment)
- ART

### DIAGNOSIS

- Clinical course
- Stool microscopy
  - organism seen
  - specifically request
  - send 3 stool samples

# EXTRA-PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS

## WHO STAGE 4



Photo courtesy of the Baylor International Pediatric AIDS Initiative

### SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

#### REQUIRES HOSPITAL REFERRAL

- Headache, change in activity level, irritability, drowsiness, neck stiffness, convulsions (TB Meningitis)
- Hepatosplenomegaly (Disseminated TB)
- Breathlessness and peripheral oedema (Pericardial effusion or severe respiratory disease and malnutrition)
- Distended abdomen + Ascites (TB Abdomen)
- Angulation of spine (Gibbus/TB Spine) - see picture

### TREATMENT

#### ALWAYS 7 DAYS A WEEK AS DOTS

- All forms of EPTB except TB meningitis and osteoarticular TB – HRZE x 2 months; HR x 4 months
- TB Meningitis and Osteoarticular TB – HRZE x 2 months; HR x 10 months
- Steroids – TB meningitis, TB pericarditis, severe airway obstruction
- ART – to start 2 weeks after initiating TB treatment (see TB/Malaria chapter for guidance)

### DIAGNOSIS

- TB Pleural Effusion
- Miliary TB
- TB Meningitis
- Osteo-articular TB
- TB Pericarditis/Pericardial Effusion
- Abdominal TB
- Disseminated TB

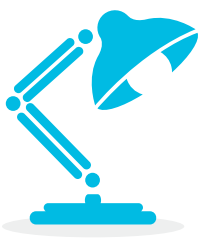


# PROPHYLAXIS



# PROPHYLAXIS

- Paediatric HIV is a preventable disease.
- More than 95% of all children are infected with HIV through mother to child transmission (MTCT).
- Significant progress is being made in the global scale-up of prevention of mother-to-child transmission of HIV (PMTCT). For the first time, the elimination of mother-to-child transmission of HIV (MTCT) is now considered a realistic public health goal and an important part of the campaign to achieve the millennium development goals.
- To maximize prevention of HIV transmission and maternal and infant survival, it is critical that care of both the mother and the infant is optimized. The mother's health is the determining factor in the child's health and survival. Children born to HIV infected mothers have a 3-5 times higher risk of death regardless of their status.
- A key issue in deciding what ARV regimen to choose for an HIV-infected pregnant woman is whether the ARVs are being provided for treatment of the woman's HIV disease or solely for prophylaxis of MTCT.
- In the former case, treatment means that ARVs are started during pregnancy and continued throughout life, whereas ARVs given solely for prophylaxis are stopped when the risk of MTCT is no longer present.
- In both cases, effective linkages between PMTCT services and HIV care and treatment programmes are needed.

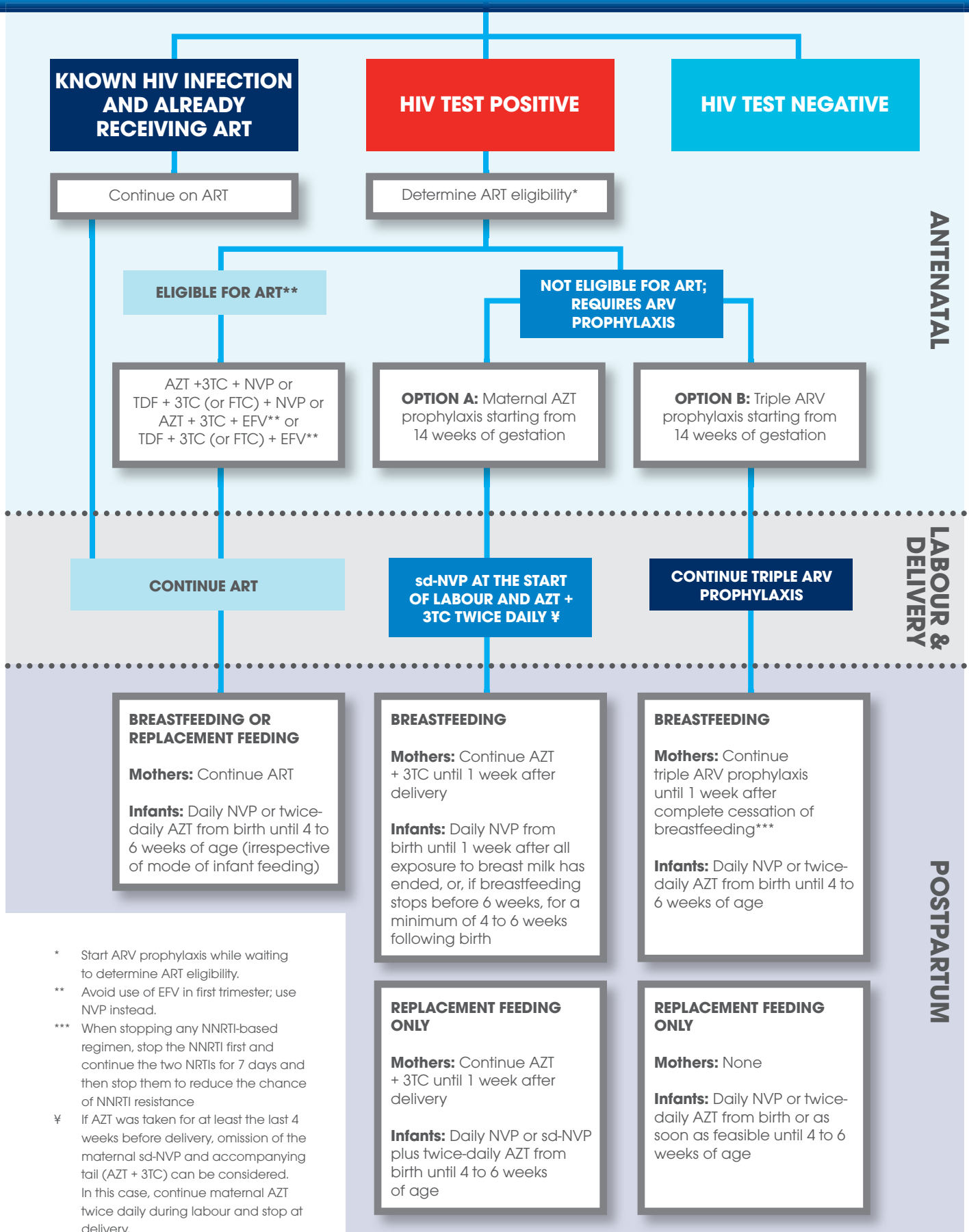


## KEY MESSAGE:

*It's never too late to start PMTCT interventions; late in the pregnancy for mother or after birth for the baby.*

# 2010 PMTCT WHO RECOMMENDATIONS

## ESTABLISH HIV STATUS OF PREGNANT WOMEN



\* Start ARV prophylaxis while waiting to determine ART eligibility.  
 \*\* Avoid use of EFV in first trimester; use NVP instead.  
 \*\*\* When stopping any NNRTI-based regimen, stop the NNRTI first and continue the two NRTIs for 7 days and then stop them to reduce the chance of NNRTI resistance  
 † If AZT was taken for at least the last 4 weeks before delivery, omission of the maternal sd-NVP and accompanying tail (AZT + 3TC) can be considered. In this case, continue maternal AZT twice daily during labour and stop at delivery.

## MATERNAL AND INFANT ARV PROPHYLAXIS TO PREVENT MTCT FOR HIV-INFECTED PREGNANT WOMEN WHO DO NOT NEED TREATMENT FOR THEIR OWN HEALTH\*

\* Mothers need treatment for their own health if clinical stage 3 or 4 or CD4 <350

### Eligibility for ARV prophylaxis

HIV-infected pregnant women who are not in need of ART for their own health require effective ARV prophylaxis to prevent HIV infection in their infants. ARV prophylaxis should be started from as early as 14 weeks of gestation (second trimester) or as soon as feasible during pregnancy, labour and delivery or thereafter.

### What ARV prophylaxis regimen to give women and their infants

Two options are recommended for HIV-infected pregnant women who are not eligible for ART: option A is maternal AZT + infant ARV prophylaxis; option B is maternal triple ARV prophylaxis.

#### Option A: maternal AZT + infant ARV prophylaxis

For HIV-infected pregnant women who are not in need of ART for their own health, ARV prophylaxis option A consists of antepartum twice-daily AZT, plus sd-NVP at the onset of labour <sup>1</sup>, plus twice-daily AZT + 3TC during labour and delivery and continued for 7 days postpartum.

In breastfeeding infants, daily administration of NVP to the infant from birth until 1 week after all exposure to breast milk has ended, or for 4 to 6 weeks if breastfeeding stops before 6 weeks (but at least 1 week after the early cessation of breastfeeding), is recommended.

In infants receiving only replacement feeding, daily administration of NVP from birth or sd-NVP at birth plus twice-daily AZT from birth until 4 to 6 weeks of age is recommended.

#### Option B: maternal triple ARV prophylaxis + infant ARV prophylaxis

For HIV-infected pregnant women who are not eligible for ART for their own health, ARV prophylaxis option B consists of antepartum daily triple ARV prophylaxis until delivery, or, if breastfeeding, until 1 week after all exposure to breast milk has ended. Recommended regimens include AZT + 3TC + LPV/r, AZT + 3TC + ABC, AZT + 3TC + EFV, or TDF + 3TC (or FTC) + EFV.

In infants, regardless of infant feeding practices (breastfeeding or replacement feeding), the maternal triple ARV prophylaxis should be combined with the daily administration of NVP or twice-daily AZT to the infant from birth until 4 to 6 weeks of age.

<sup>1</sup> sd-NVP and the AZT + 3TC intrapartum and postpartum tail can be omitted if the mother received more than 4 weeks of AZT during pregnancy; in this case continue maternal AZT twice daily during labour and stop at delivery.

## Extended simplified infant NVP dosing recommendations

INFANT AGE	NVP DAILY DOSING
<b>Birth** to 6 weeks</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Birth weight 2000–2499 g</li><li>• Birth weight <math>\geq</math>2500 g</li></ul>	10 mg once daily 15 mg once daily
<b>&gt;6 weeks to 6 months</b>	20 mg once daily
<b>&gt;6 months to 9 months</b>	30 mg once daily
<b>&gt;9 months to end of BF</b>	40 mg once daily

\*\* Low birth weight infants should receive mg/kg dosing, suggested starting dose is 2 mg/kg once daily. Therapeutic drug monitoring is recommended

Adapted from: Mirochnick M. et. al. (66).

## Simplified infant AZT dosing recommendations\*

INFANT AGE	AZT DAILY DOSING
<b>Birth** to 6 weeks</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Birth weight 2000–2499 g</li><li>• Birth weight <math>\geq</math>2500 g</li></ul>	10 mg twice daily 15 mg twice daily

\* Low birth weight infants should receive mg/kg dosing based on gestational age.

# COTRIMOXAZOLE

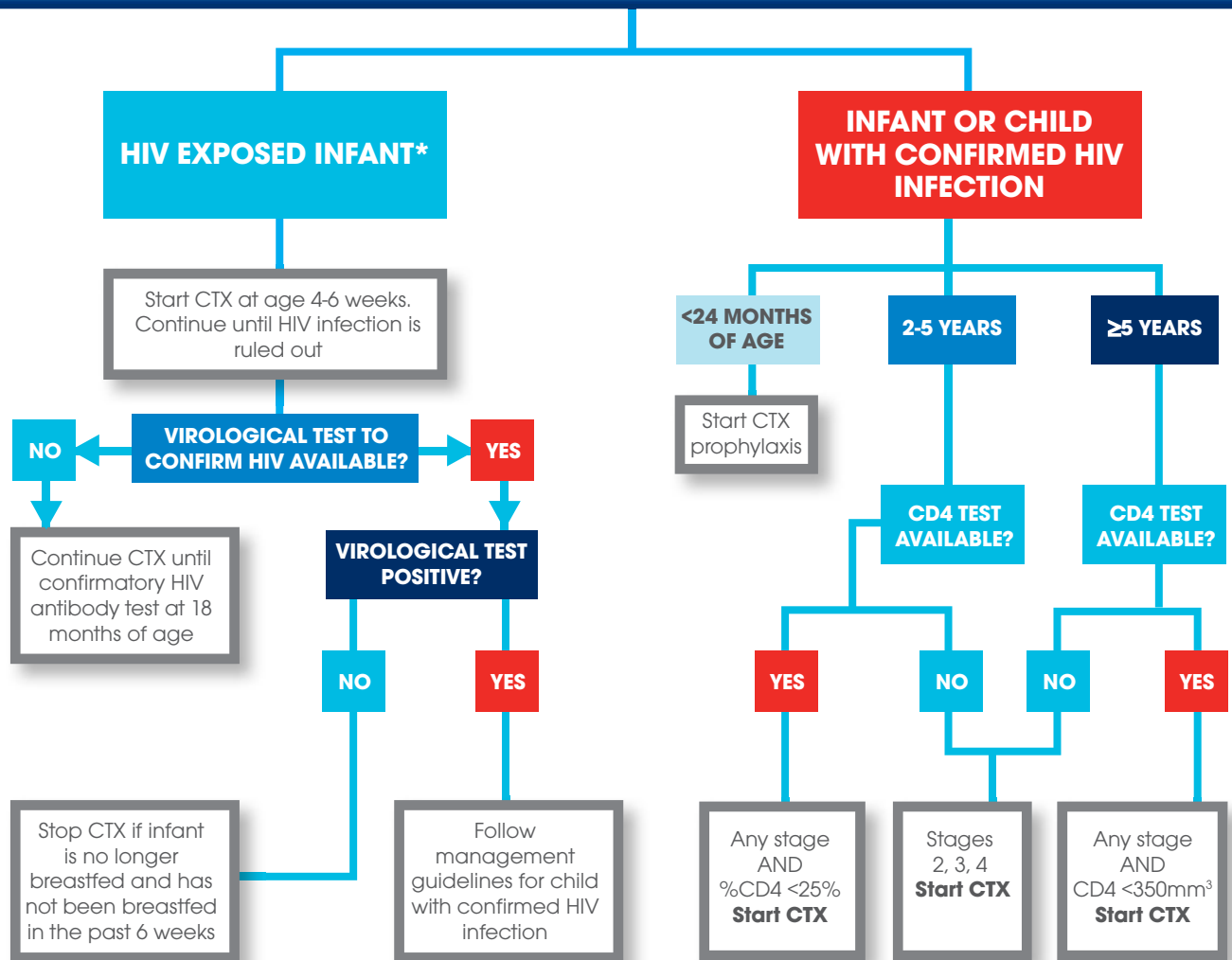
## PROPHYLAXIS

- To reduce the risk of pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP), all HIV-infected and HIV-exposed infants must receive cotrimoxazole prophylaxis from six weeks of age.
- Cotrimoxazole must be continued, unless the child is proven to be HIV negative.
- Cotrimoxazole may be stopped in children on ART who are over one year of age and where there is evidence that the immune system is functioning well.
- In order to stop cotrimoxazole, the child must have two CD4 counts greater than 15% or 500 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>, taken at least three months apart.
- HIV infected child with previous PCP pneumonia should only stop cotrimoxazole prophylaxis if age 5 years or older and if two CD4 counts greater than 15% or 500 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>, taken at least three months apart
- See dosing table page 136



# INITIATING COTRIMOXAZOLE PROPHYLAXIS

## INDICATIONS FOR COTRIMOXAZOLE (CTX) PROPHYLAXIS



\* An infant born to a mother infected with HIV and exposed to HIV during pregnancy, children or breastfeeding.

### Contraindications to cotrimoxazole include:

- Sulpha allergy
- Severe liver disease
- Severe renal insufficiency

### Discontinue CTX prophylaxis if:

- Stevens-Johnson syndrome
- Severe liver disease
- Severe anaemia
- Severe pancytopenia
- Negative HIV status

Universal option for CTX prophylaxis may be considered in settings such as in TB programmes with high prevalence of HIV and limited health infrastructure.

# COTRIMOXAZOLE DOSE

## FOR PROPHYLAXIS

AGE OR WEIGHT OF CHILD	DOSE	SUSPENSION 5ML 200MG SMX 40MG TMP	SINGLE STRENGTH TABLET 400MG SMX 80MG TMP	DOUBLE STRENGTH TABLET 800MG SMX 160MG TMP
<b>&lt; 6 months or &lt; 5 kg</b>	100mg SMX/ 20mg TMP	2.5ml	¼ tablet	–
<b>6 months - 5 years or 5 – 15 kg</b>	200mg SMX/ 40mg TMP	5ml	½ tablet	–
<b>6 – 14 years or 15 - 30kg</b>	400mg SMX/ 80mg TMP	10ml	1 tablet	½ tablet
<b>&gt;14 years or &gt; 30kg</b>	800mg SMX/ 160mg TMP	–	2 tablets	1 tablet

# TB/MALARIA



# TB/MALARIA

Children living with HIV are at high risk for developing tuberculosis (TB). In many parts of Africa, the TB and HIV epidemics go hand-in-hand. Therefore, it is essential that a child's HIV status be investigated at the time of TB diagnosis and conversely, TB screening be performed routinely as a part of chronic HIV care.

TB is also the most common cause of the Immune Reconstitution Inflammatory Syndrome (IRIS) among children recently started on ART in TB-endemic areas. This can be avoided by starting TB treatment prior to ART initiation among those screened and diagnosed with TB.



## **KEY MESSAGE:**

***Children become infected with TB from adults, therefore a paediatric case must prompt investigation and treatment of adult contacts.***

In screening for TB, healthcare workers must keep in mind that TB can infect many different organs or produce a sepsis-like illness as in miliary TB. Therefore, the prominent symptoms may vary depending upon TB disease location, such as pulmonary, lymph node or meningitis. Children may not present with the classic symptoms associated with adult TB, such as night sweats and bloody sputum. It is for this reason that TB symptom score cards have not been well validated in children as compared to adults.



## **KEY MESSAGE:**

***At every contact with an HIV-infected child enquire about new TB contacts and new TB symptoms.***

National TB programme guidelines and the WHO and IUATLD "Guidance for national tuberculosis and HIV programmes on the management of tuberculosis in HIV-infected children: Recommendations for a public health approach" provide more detailed guidance.

### **TB Definitions:**

- **TB exposure:** A child comes into close contact with an infectious TB patient. The child may have a positive tuberculin skin test (TST), but a positive TST is not necessary to prove exposure.
- **TB infection:** The child inhales the aerosol droplet containing the TB organism. TB infection is usually indicated by a positive TST; however, there are limitations to the test. Children with M. tuberculosis infection, but without active disease, are not ill and do not have symptoms suspicious of TB.
- **TB disease:** A small percentage of children who inhale the TB organism develop TB disease and become ill; certain groups are at far greater risk than others, including very young children and those with immune system abnormalities (e.g. from HIV or severe malnutrition).

## **TB SCREENING**

### **History and physical examination**

- Has the child had close contact with someone diagnosed with tuberculosis?
- Has the child had any household contact with TB symptoms (e.g. cough for more than 2 weeks, weight loss, fever, night sweats)?
- Does the child have any symptoms?
- Indications requiring hospitalization/referral:
  - Severe forms of PTB and EPTB for further investigation and initial management
  - Severe malnutrition for nutritional rehabilitation
  - Signs of severe pneumonia (i.e. chest in-drawing) or respiratory distress
  - Other co-morbidities eg. severe anaemia
- Referral should also be considered if:
  - Diagnostic uncertainty requiring further investigation at referral level
  - Necessary for HIV-related care e.g. to commence ART
- There are no specific features on clinical examination that can confirm TB.
  - Weight faltering, especially after implementing nutritional interventions, is a good indicator of chronic disease in children, of which TB may be the cause.
  - A painless, enlarged mass of matted lymph nodes in the neck, without a visible local cause on the scalp, and which does not respond to a course of antibiotics, is highly suggestive of TB cervical adenitis.
- Some signs, although uncommon, are highly suggestive of extrapulmonary TB (TB outside the lungs). Many other abnormalities can indicate extrapulmonary TB, including those consistent with meningitis, pleural effusion, ascites and a non-painful enlarged joint.

### **Tuberculin Skin Test (TST)**

- The TST may be used as a screening test in order to evaluate whether a patient has had prior infection with M. tuberculosis.
- A negative result never rules out M. tuberculosis infection completely, especially in HIV infected patients.
- The Mantoux test is the preferred TST. It measures the delayed hypersensitivity response to purified protein derivative (PPD), also known as tuberculin.



## STRICT SYMPTOM CRITERIA FOR TB SCREENING IN CHILDREN

- Persistent, non-remitting cough or wheeze for more than 2 weeks not responding to standard therapy
- Documented loss of weight or failure to thrive during the past 3 months especially if not responding to food and/or micronutrient supplementation, OR severe malnutrition
- Fatigue/reduced playfulness
- Persistent fever > 10 days

***Two or more of these symptoms are highly suggestive of TB disease***

## TB DIAGNOSIS

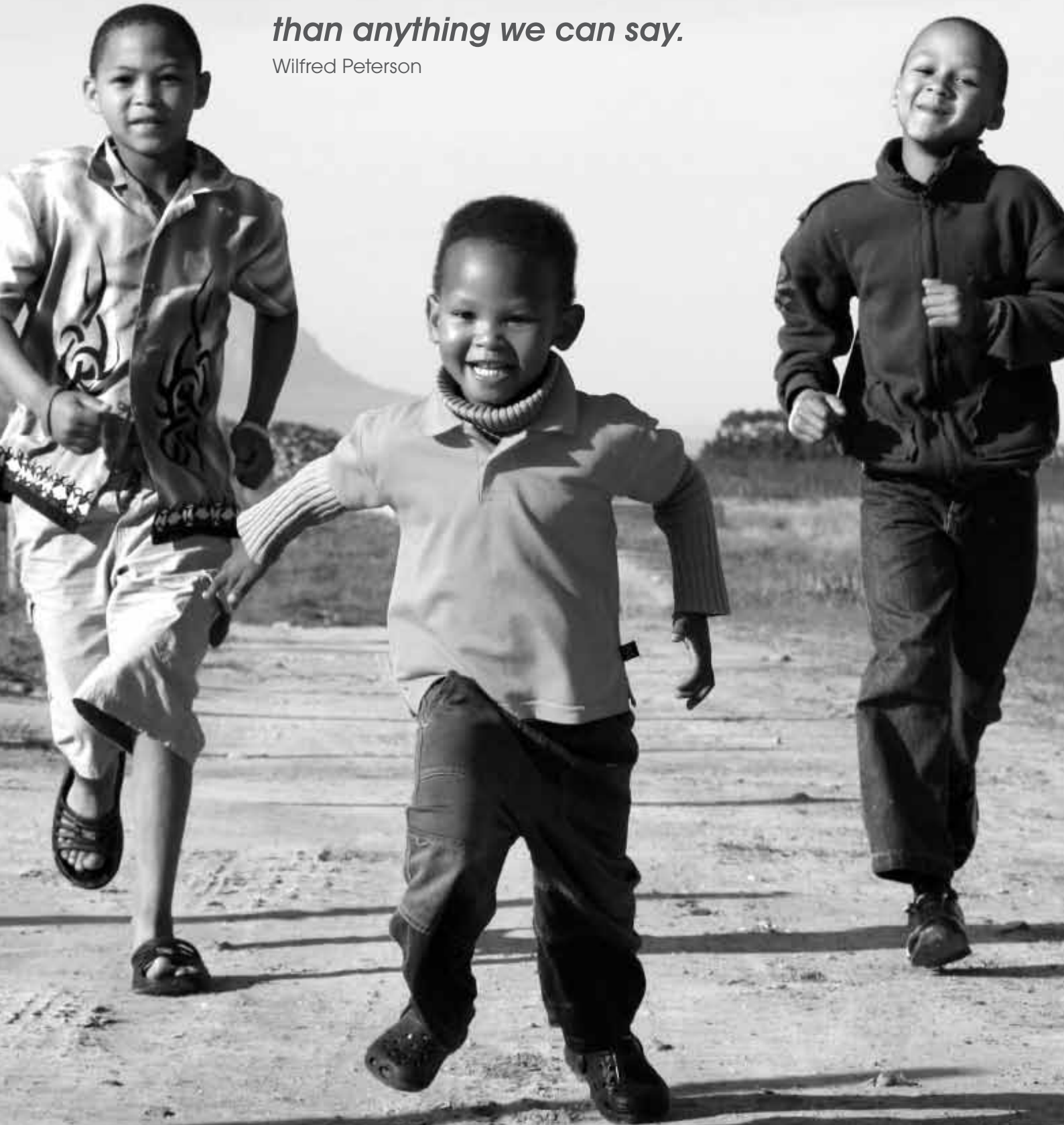
When TB screening suggests possible infection, further diagnostic investigations are often indicated in children. These may include:

- Gastric aspirates for younger children
- Expecterated or induced sputum for microscopy and culture. Typically at around age 8 years a child may be able to produce a quality expecterated sputum sample
- Microscopy and culture of other body fluids or biopsy specimen as indicated
- X-ray or ultrasound
- Drug sensitivities on cultures when an MDR or XDR contact is suspected



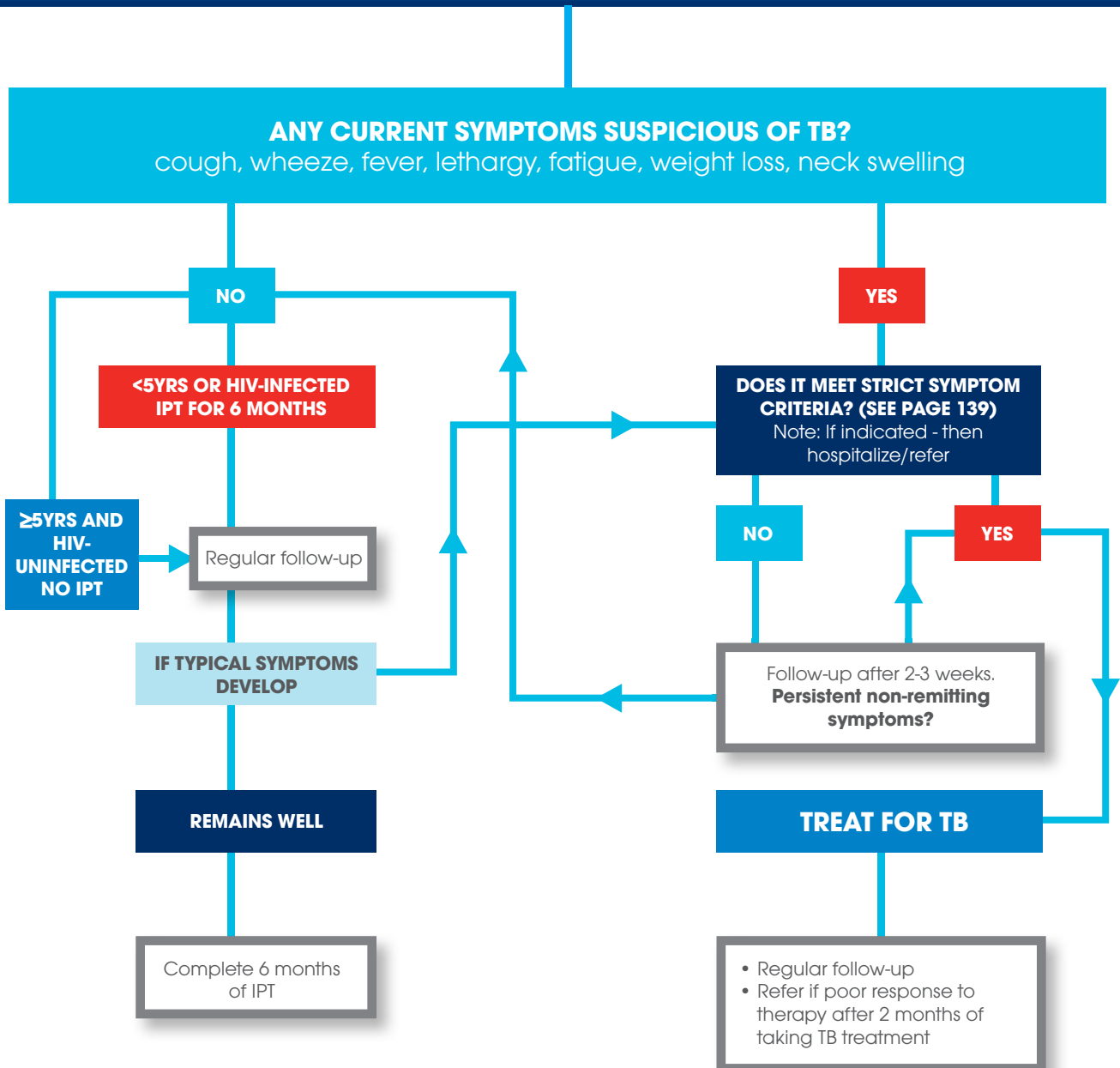
*Our children are watching us live  
and what we are shouts louder  
than anything we can say.*

Wilfred Peterson



# GUIDANCE FOR THE SCREENING OF CHILDREN IN CLOSE CONTACT\*\* WITH AN ADOLESCENT OR ADULT WITH NEWLY DIAGNOSED PULMONARY TB

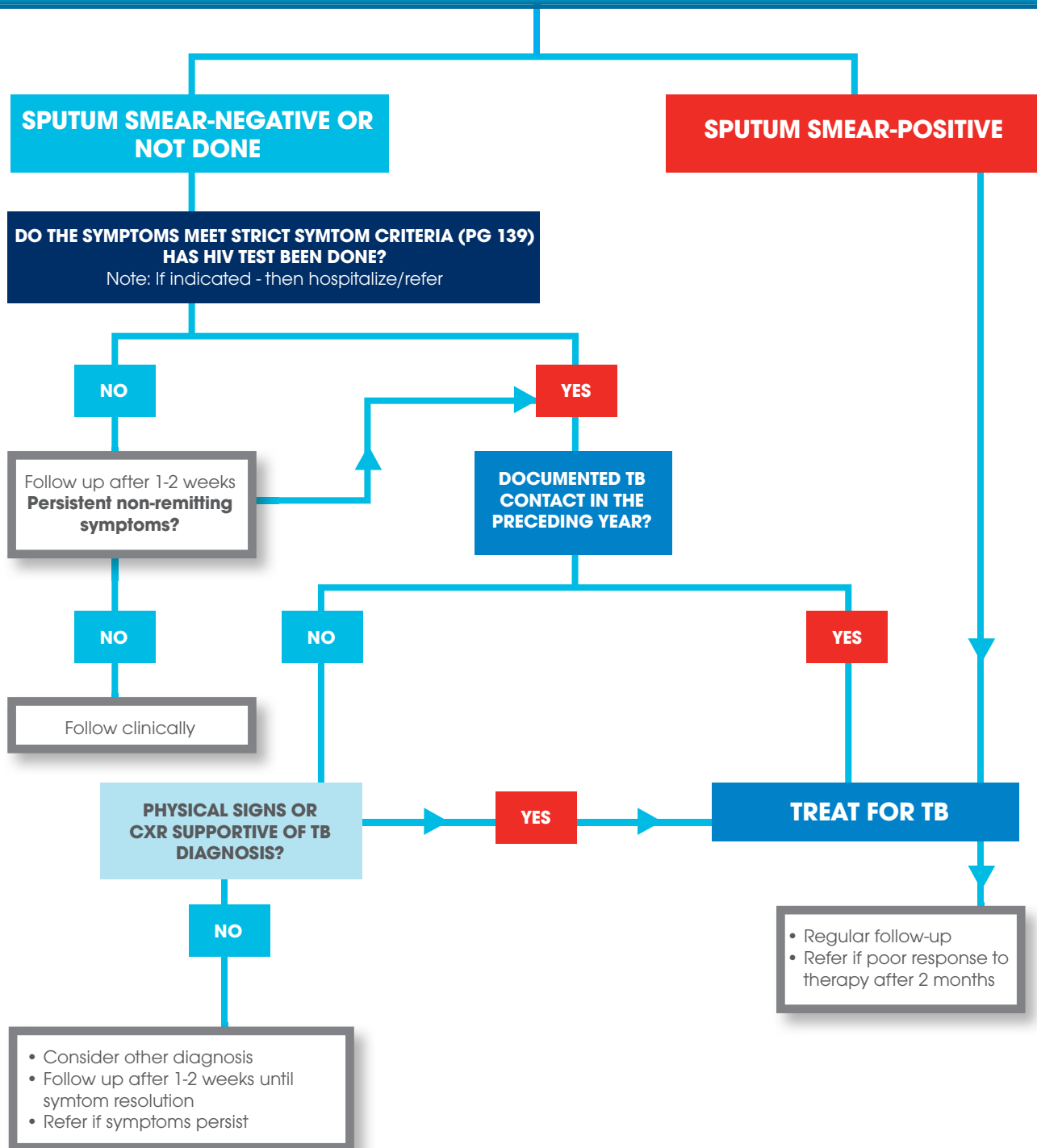
## DOCUMENTED TB EXPOSURE, AGE AND HIV STATUS OF CHILD



\*\* **Close contact** is defined as living in the same household as, or in frequent contact with (e.g. child minder, school staff), a source case with PTB.

# GUIDANCE FOR THE DIAGNOSIS OF CHILDREN WHO PRESENT WITH SYMPTOMS SUGGESTIVE OF TB

## PRESENT WITH SYMPTOMS SUGGESTIVE OF TB?



# STEPS TO PLACING AND READING THE TUBERCULIN SKIN TEST

## 1. ADMINISTRATION

For each patient, conduct a risk assessment that takes into consideration recent exposure, clinical conditions that increase risk for TB disease if infected, and the program's capacity to deliver treatment for latent TB infection to determine if the skin test should be administered.



2 to 4 inches below  
elbow joint

### 1. LOCATE AND CLEAN INJECTION SITE

- Place forearm palm side up on a firm, well-lit surface
- Select an area free of barriers (e.g. scars, sores) to placing and reading
- Clean the area with an alcohol swab



### 2. PREPARE SYRINGE

- Check expiration date on vial and ensure vial contains tuberculin (5 TU per 0.1 ml)
- Use a single-dose tuberculin syringe with a 1/4- to 1/2-inch, 27-gauge needle with a short bevel
- Fill the syringe with 0.1 ml of tuberculin





### 3. INJECT TUBERCULIN

- Insert slowly, bevel up, at a 5 - 15 degree angle
- Needle bevel can be seen just below skin surface
- After injection, a tense, pale wheal should appear over the needle

### 4. CHECK SKIN TEST

- Wheal should be 6 to 10 mm in diameter. If not, repeat test at a site at least 2 inches away from original site

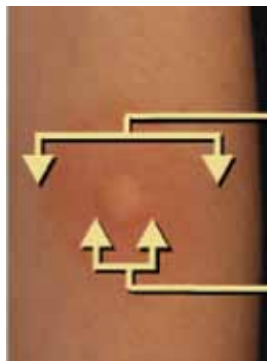


### 5. RECORD INFORMATION

- Record all the information required for documentation by your institution (e.g., date and time of test administration, injection site location, lot number of tuberculin)

## 2. READING

The skin test should be read between 48 and 72 hours after administration. A patient who does not return within 72 hours will probably need to be rescheduled for another skin test.



Erythema (reddening of the skin) - do not measure

Induration (hard, dense, raised formation)

### 1. INSPECT SITE

- Visually inspect site under good light



### 2. PALPATE INDURATION

- Use fingertips to find margins of induration



### 3. MARK INDURATION

- Use fingertip as a guide for marking widest edges of induration across forearm



### 4. MEASURE INDURATION (NOT ERYTHEMA)

- Place "0" ruler line inside left dot edge
- Read ruler line inside right dot edge (use lower measurement if between two gradations on mm scale)

### 5. RECORD MEASUREMENT OF INDURATION IN mm

- If no induration, record as 0 mm
- Do not record as "positive" or "negative"
- Only record measurement in mm

# INTERPRETATION OF PPD/ MANTOUX / TST

---

	PREVIOUS BCG	NO BCG	HIV POSITIVE
Mantoux	≥ 10 mm	≥ 10 mm	≥ 5mm

**Note:**

- A positive TST denotes TB infection not necessarily TB disease but in HIV positive patients it is more likely TB disease.
  - Any measurement equal to or above 5 mm in a HIV positive child denotes TB infection.
  - A negative TST does not exclude TB – false negative causes could include:
    - Acute viral infection eg. Measles
    - Recent immunisation with live attenuated vaccines
    - Overwhelming TB infection
    - Incorrect PPD technique
    - Immunosuppressive therapies
    - HIV infection
    - Malnutrition
-

## TB TREATMENT

Once the decision is made to treat a patient for TB, the entire regimen duration must be completed in order to achieve a cure. Direct observed therapy is the standard approach. Caregivers should receive accurate and detailed information about the course of treatment and possibility of other family members requiring investigations. Healthcare workers should never use a “trial” of TB medication as a means to assist a difficult diagnosis.

### Recommended treatment regimens for the new patient in HIV endemic setting (WHO,2010)

TB DISEASE CATEGORY	RECOMMENDED REGIMEN	
	INTENSIVE PHASE	CONTINUATION PHASE
All forms of PTB and EPTB except TBM and osteoarticular TB	2 HRZE	4 HR
TB meningitis Osteoarticular TB	2 HRZE	10 HR

**H**=isoniazid **R**=rifampicin **Z**=pyrazinamide **E**=ethambutol

Numeral refers to number of months of the regimen e.g. 2 HRZE refers to two months of daily isoniazid, rifampicin, pyrazinamide and ethambutol.

#### NOTE:

- Streptomycin no longer recommended for new patients
- Intermittent regimens not recommended in HIV endemic setting

### Recommended dosages according to weight (WHO,2010)

DRUG	DAILY DOSAGE IN mg/kg RANGE (MAXIMUM)
Isoniazid (H)	10 - 15 (300 mg)
Rifampicin (R)	10 - 20 (600 mg)
Pyrazinamide (Z)	30 - 40 (2000 mg)
Ethambutol (E)	15 - 25 (1200 mg)

## ADDITIONAL TREATMENT CONSIDERATIONS

- Give paracetamol or tilidine to all children with meningitis for relief of headache (See pain management below)
- All HIV-infected children should receive pyridoxine if they are on TB treatment:
  - < 5 years 12.5 mg daily
  - > 5 years 25 mg daily
- HIV infected children may need to be treated for TB for longer than 6 months if they do not respond well to treatment.
  - In these children MDR and XDR TB must also be considered
- All HIV-infected children (on or off ART) on treatment for tuberculosis should receive prophylactic co-trimoxazole (at least until CD4-count is >25%)

## TB PROPHYLAXIS

### WHO Recommendations for Isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT):

- All HIV-infected infants and children exposed to TB through household contacts, but with no evidence of active disease, should begin IPT.
- Children living with HIV (> 12 months of age and including those previously treated for TB), who do not have signs or symptoms of active TB and are not known to be exposed to TB, should receive 6 months of IPT as part of a comprehensive package of HIV care.
- Infants living with HIV, who are unlikely to have active TB and are not known to be exposed, should not receive IPT as part of a comprehensive package of HIV care



### KEY MESSAGE:

*All children with HIV infection, irrespective of age, are at high-risk of developing TB disease following exposure to a contact. They require a 6 month course of IPT after EVERY documented exposure to TB, regardless of how recently they completed a previous course of IPT or TB treatment.*

### Simplified, weight-based dosing for isoniazid 10mg/kg/day

WEIGHT RANGE (kg)	NUMBER OF 100 mg TABLETS OF INH TO BE ADMINISTERED PER DOSE	DOSE GIVEN (mg)
<5	½ tablet	50
5.1 – 9.9	1 tablet	100
10 – 13.9	1 ½ tablet	150
14 – 19.9	2 tablets	200
20 – 24.9	2 ½ tablets	250
>25	3 tablets or one adult tablet	300



## ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY IN TB-HIV CO-INFECTED CHILDREN

All HIV-infected children with any form of TB are eligible for ART if they are not already receiving it.

Successful TB treatment relies on rifampicin being included in a multi-drug regimen. Rifampicin however interferes with the metabolism of many ARVs, and speeds up the break down of especially lopinavir, efavirenz and nevirapine.

Adjustments therefore need to be made to ARV regimens and doses while TB treatment is being given.

### Principles of TB-HIV co-infection treatment:

- TB Treatment takes preference and must be started immediately at diagnosis.
- ART, if not already received, should be commenced 2 weeks after starting TB treatment. Delaying ART in the presence of TB worsens the outcome.
- When using an EFV or NVP containing regimen, the doses do not need to be increased but it is important that the appropriate weight-based dose adjustments are made to maintain therapeutic levels.
- LPV/r is formulated in a 4:1 ratio. When using LPV/r in the presence of TB treatment, additional RTV must be added to the LPV/r to achieve a 1:1 ratio of LPV: RTV. This is achieved by adding 0.75mls of RTV syrup for every 1 ml of LPV/r syrup given.
- Be aware of overlapping side-effects of drugs and the potential of IRIS.
- Review TB-HIV co-infected children at 2 weeks and 4 weeks following commencement of anti-TB treatment and then monthly thereafter.

### Choice of ART Regimen:

The choice of ART regimen to use will be determined by the age of the child, previous NNRTI exposure through vertical transmission prevention efforts and locally available drugs.

	ART REGIMEN	CONDITIONS
<b>Under 3 years of age</b> No NNRTI Exposure	2 NRTI's + NVP	NVP should be commenced at full dose, foregoing dose-escalation. NVP to be kept at upper end of dosing range.
	3 NRTI's	Must include ABC.
<b>Under 3 years of age</b> Previous NNRTI Exposure	2 NRTI's + Super-boosted PI	Equivalent amounts of LPV and RTV (1:1) until 2 weeks after completion of RMP.
3 years and older AND 10 kg's and above	2 NRTI's + EFV	No dose adjustment of EFV required

## BCG DISEASE

In TB-endemic areas the BCG immunization is given at birth to all infants regardless of HIV exposure. However, there should be close follow-up of infants known to be born to HIV-infected mothers who receive BCG at birth in order to provide early identification and treatment of any BCG complication.

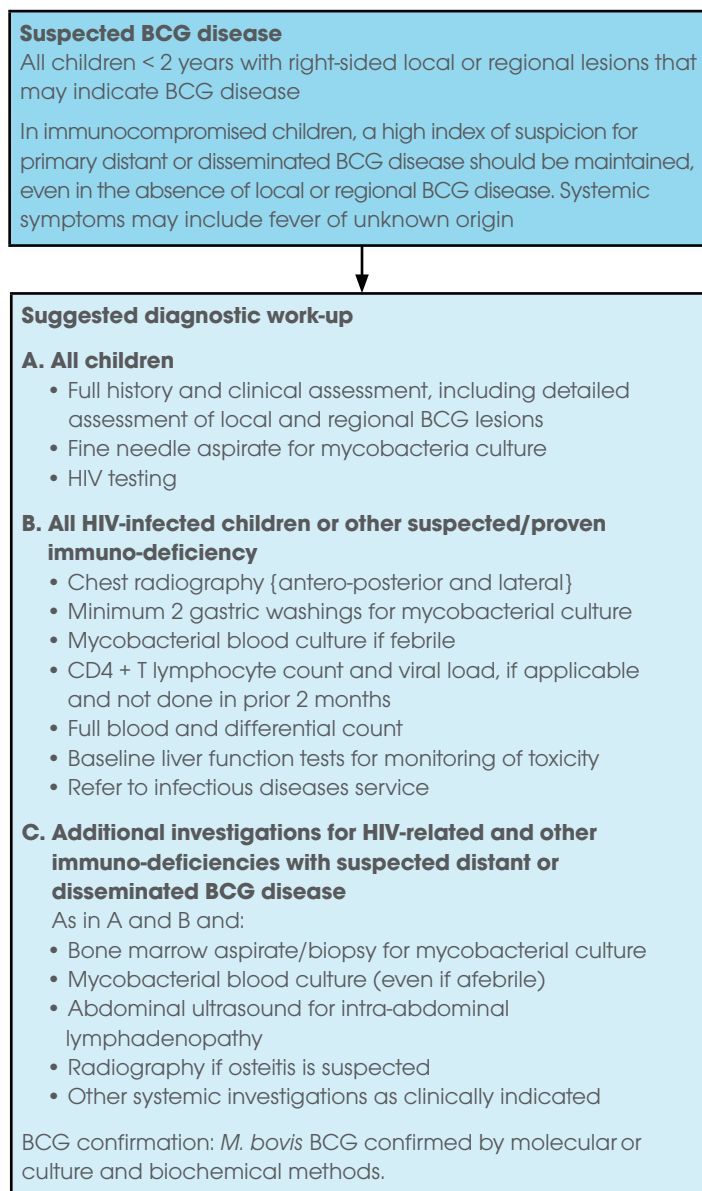
**BCG disease** occurs mostly in severely immunocompromised infants. Early ART can prevent this disease process from occurring. BCG disease requires multi-drug treatment in addition to ART. See figures 1 and 2 for diagnosis and management guidance.

**BCG IRIS** is different from BCG disease and occurs during immune reconstitution in an HIV - infected child within 3 months of initiation of ART and usually does not require additional treatment as for BCG disease.

### Diagnostic Evaluation & Management

The diagnostic work-up and management of BCG disease is not extensively covered in recent international guidelines, therefore consultation with specialists is recommended. Paediatric infectious disease specialists have developed the following to assist providers:

**Figure 1:**  
Diagnostic guidance for  
BCG disease in children





**Photo:**

Child with regional BCG adenitis.

**Figure 2:**  
Guidance on the management of BCG disease in children

**Suspected or confirmed BCG disease**  
**Suspected BCG disease:** All children < 2 years with right-sided local or regional lesions that may indicate BCG disease  
 In immunocompromised children, a high index of suspicion for primary distant or disseminated BCG disease should be maintained, even in the absence of local or regional BCG disease. Systemic symptoms may include fever of unknown origin.  
**Confirmed BCG disease:** BCG confirmation: *M. bovis* BCG confirmed by molecular or culture and biochemical methods.

**HIV-uninfected children**

**A. Local or regional disease**

- Observe
- Consider therapeutic aspiration or excision biopsy in the following: fluctuant node or abscess, persistent, rapidly enlarging node or fistula formation, or in the presence of a large injection site abscess
- Report as vaccine-related adverse event to EPI

**B. Suspected or confirmed distant or disseminated disease**

Treat medically:

- Isoniazid 15 - 20 mg/kg/day
- Rifampicin 20 mg/kg/day
- Pyrazinamide 20 - 25 mg/kg/day (2 months, or until tuberculosis excluded)
- Ethambutol 20 - 25 mg/kg/day
- Ofloxacin 15 mg/kg/day or Ciprofloxacin 30 mg/kg/day

- Refer to infectious diseases and immunology service; screen immune function
- Monitor for drug toxicity
- Report as vaccine-related adverse event to EPI

**HIV-infected children or immunocompromised children**

**A. Local or regional disease**

Treat medically:

- Isoniazid 15 - 20 mg/kg/day
- Rifampicin 20 mg/kg/day
- Pyrazinamide 20 - 25 mg/kg/day (2 months, or until tuberculosis excluded)
- Ethambutol 20 - 25 mg/kg/day
- Ofloxacin 15 mg/kg/day or Ciprofloxacin 30 mg/kg/day

- Consider therapeutic aspiration if node fluctuant
- 2 - 4 weekly follow-up: if no improvement, or deterioration of adenitis after 6 weeks antituberculosis therapy, consider excision biopsy
- If on HAART, ensure HAART is antituberculosis-drug compatible
- Refer to infectious disease service
- Monitor for drug toxicity
- Report as vaccine-related adverse event to EPI

**B. Suspected or confirmed distant or disseminated disease**

- Treat medically as above
- Consider expedited initiation of HAART
- Monitor for drug toxicity
- Report as vaccine-related adverse event to EPI

**C. Local or regional disease not conforming to EPI criteria regional CG IRIS with no suspected dissemination**

- Observe, follow regularly for progression
- Report as vaccine-related adverse event if progression to EPI case definition

**Source:** Hesselting, AC, et al. Bacille Calmette-Guerin Vaccine-Induced Disease in HIV-Infected and HIV-Uninfected Children. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 42, 548-58, 2006.

***Hugs can do great amounts of good,  
especially for children.***

Princess Diana

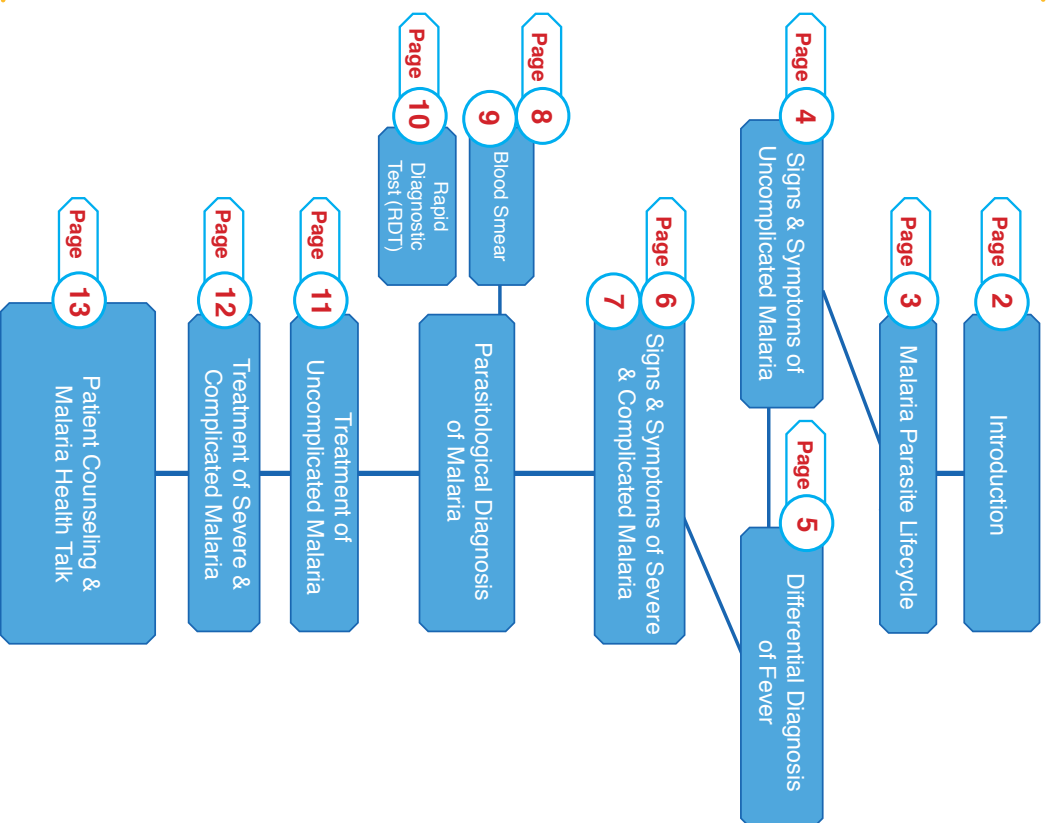




# **Malaria Diagnosis & Treatment Tool for Primary Care**

**August 2011**

# Malaria Flowpath



## Introduction

In areas with high transmission, malaria is a major cause of death in children. Malaria case management remains a vital component of malaria control strategies; with an integrated approach of prevention and treatment at all healthcare levels required to eliminate malaria.

### Role of the National Malaria Control Programme and Ministry of Health

- ◇ Distribution of long-lasting insecticide-treated nets (LLINs) in malarious regions
- ◇ Provision of efficacious insecticides and drugs and quality assurance of malaria diagnostics
- ◇ Disease surveillance, outbreak monitoring, and epidemic preparedness and response
- ◇ Indoor residual spraying (IRS) in malarious regions

### Role of Healthcare Workers

- ◇ **Test before you treat!**
- ◇ Provision of treatment for confirmed malaria cases
- ◇ Education of the communities
- ◇ Accurate and prompt recording and reporting
- ◇ Inventory management and proper storage of malaria diagnostics and drugs

### Role of Those Residing in Malarious Regions

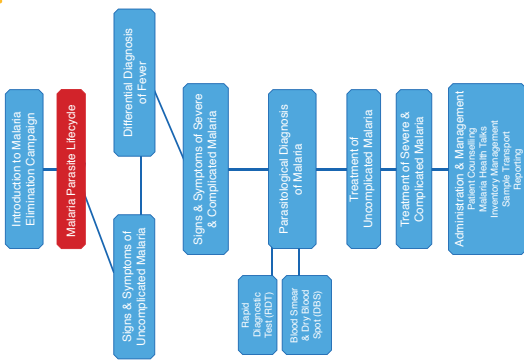
- ◇ Understanding of malaria signs and symptoms
- ◇ Seeking early diagnosis and treatment
- ◇ Acceptance of indoor residual spraying (IRS)
- ◇ Treatment of stagnant water to reduce vector breeding sites
- ◇ Education of family, neighbours, and friends
- ◇ Use of appropriate prophylaxis and preventive measures when going to a malarious regions

### Role of the Malaria Patient

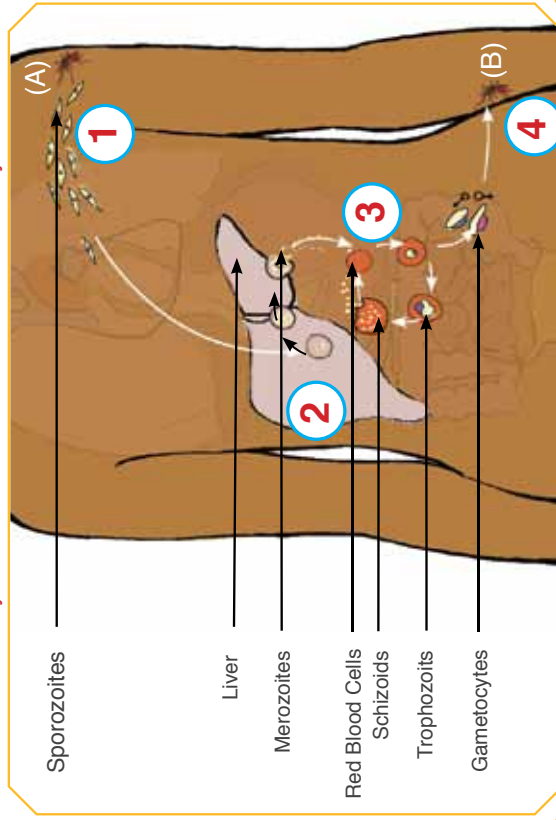
- ◇ Completion of the prescribed course of treatment, taking the correct dose
- ◇ Return to health facility if condition does not improve within 3 days



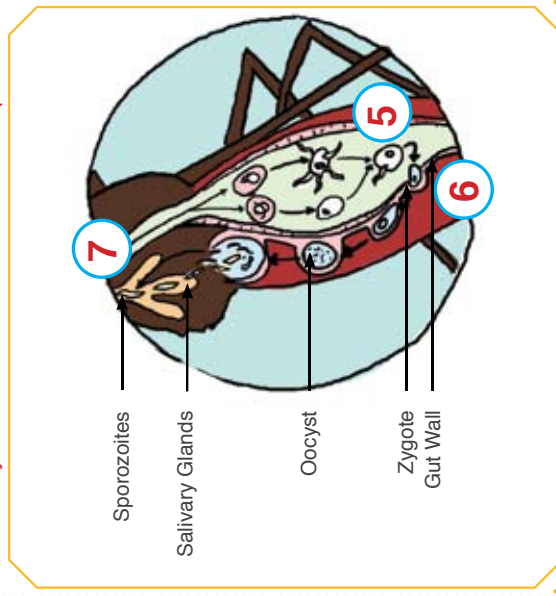
# The Lifecycle of Malaria



Lifecycle of the Parasite Inside the Human Body



Lifecycle of the Parasite Inside the Mosquito



## Timing of Malaria Symptoms

Note that patients are asymptomatic during the liver stage (steps 1 and 2). **Symptoms of malaria appear during the blood stage (step 3) which generally occurs 1-3 weeks after being bitten by an infected mosquito.**

1

*Plasmodium*-infected mosquito (A) bites a person, injecting sporozoites into the bloodstream, which migrate to the liver.

2

In the liver, the sporozoites mature into merozoites and multiply. Thousands of merozoites are released into the bloodstream.

3

Once in the bloodstream, the merozoites penetrate the red blood cells and undergo maturation (first into trophozoites and then into schizonts) and multiplication. This causes the red blood cells to burst, releasing merozoites into the bloodstream, which can then reinfect other red blood cells. Fever is associated with the bursting of the red blood cell.

4

Some merozoites, however, develop into sexual forms called gametocytes. At this stage, mosquito (B) can become infected if it bites this person and sucks up blood containing gametocytes.

5

Inside the gut of the mosquito, the gametocytes go through a sexual cycle resulting in a zygote.

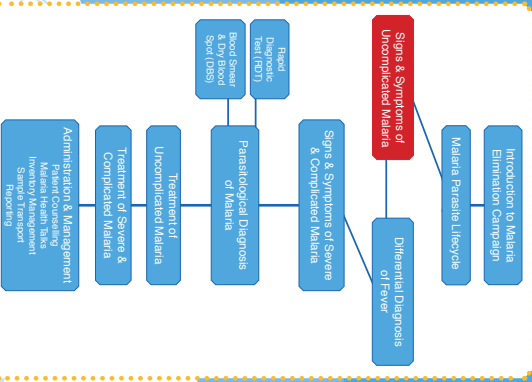
6

The zygote penetrates the gut wall and develops into an oocyst.

7

Within the oocyst, repeated division takes place giving rise to sporozoites. This causes the oocyst to rupture, allowing the sporozoites to migrate to the salivary glands of mosquito (B). Here, sporozoites mature and are transmitted to another person the next time the mosquito bites.

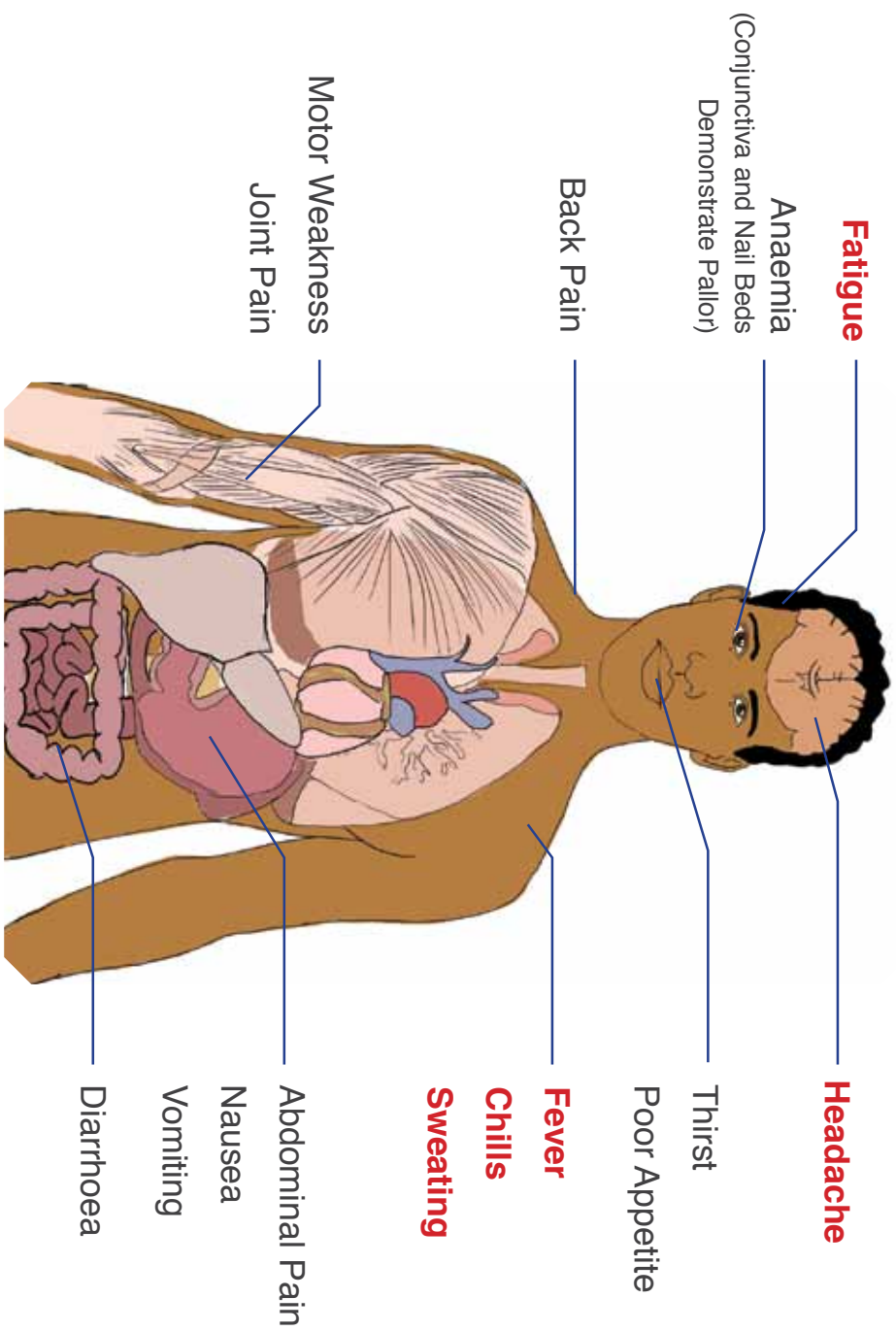
# Signs & Symptoms of Uncomplicated Malaria



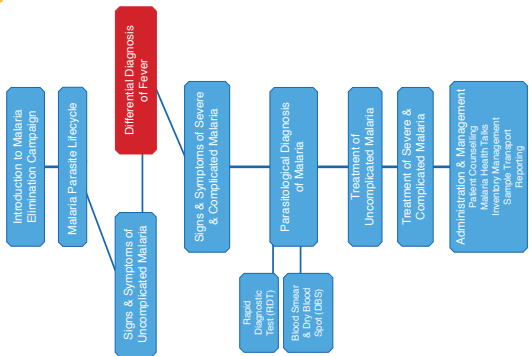
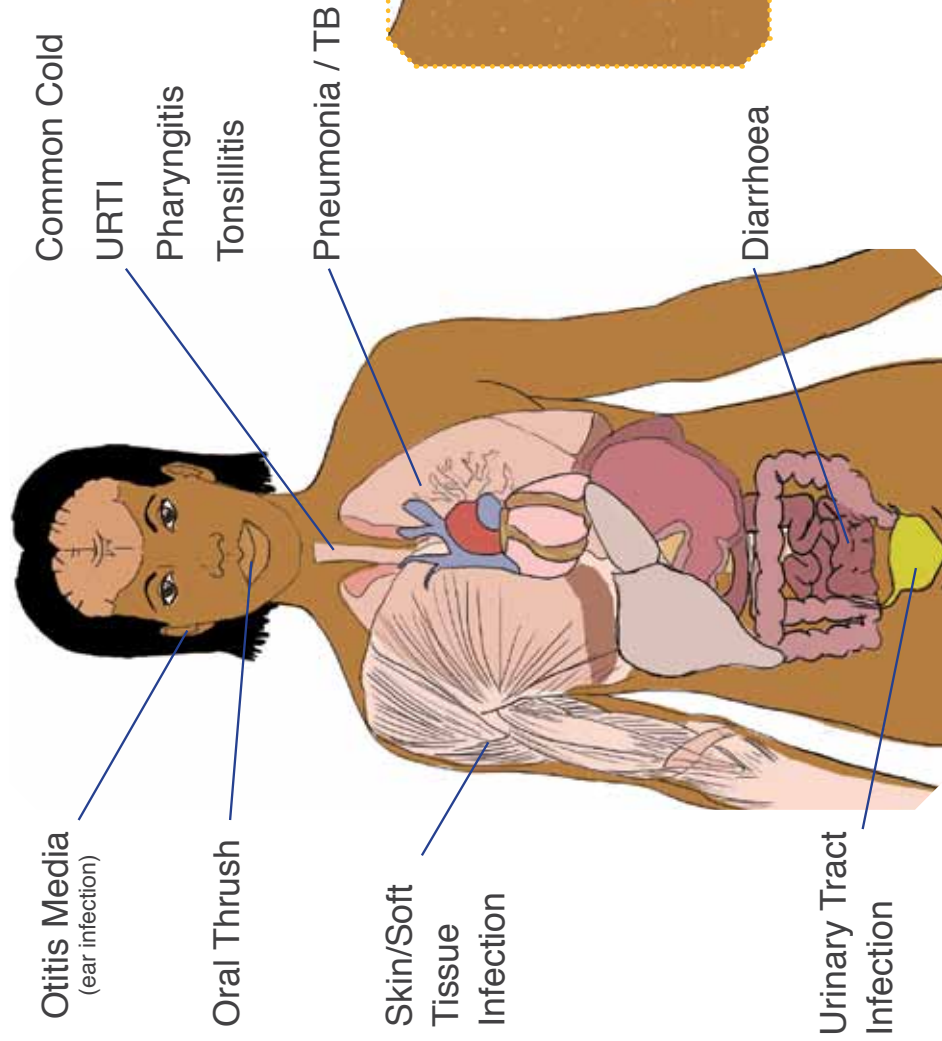
**When assessing the patient, also consider:**

- Travel History
- Travel to At-Risk areas
- Timing of Travel
- Seasonality of Transmission
- Exposure to Vectors

**Test Before You Treat!**  
Clinical diagnosis is highly inaccurate because the signs and symptoms of malaria are non-specific. Therefore, when malaria is suspected, confirm with RDT or microscopy.  
**Treatment solely on the basis of clinical suspicion should be considered only when a parasitological diagnosis is not accessible.**



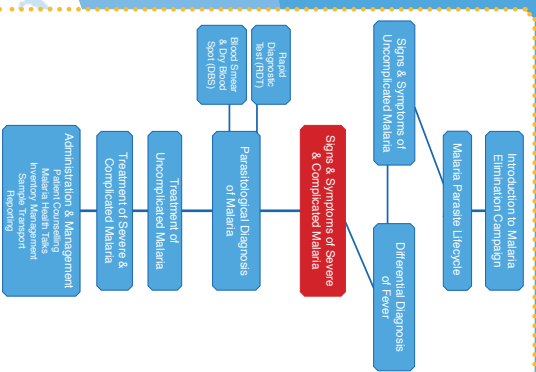
# Differential Diagnosis of Fever



## Be Mindful of Viral and HIV Induced Opportunistic Infections

Many fevers are a symptom of viral illnesses, or in the case of HIV, opportunistic infections. Opportunistic infections due to HIV should be considered at all times.

**Use all opportunities to offer testing for HIV.**



# Signs & Symptoms of Severe & Complicated Malaria Indicating Need for Immediate Referral

Whenever malaria is suspected, healthcare workers must assess patient for signs of severe and complicated malaria. **Only uncomplicated malaria is managed at the clinic level. Patient with signs of severe disease should be referred to a hospital or health centre urgently.**

## Ask Look Listen Feel

### Look, Listen, Feel

- ◇ Is the patient abnormally sleepy, finds it difficult to wake up, or is confused?
- ◇ Is the patient unresponsive to pain (coma)?
- ◇ Does the patient have shortness of breath or difficulty breathing (respiratory distress or signs of pulmonary oedema)?
- ◇ Does the patient have a weak rapid pulse?
- ◇ Does the patient have severe anaemia (paleness of lower eyelids, palms, and tongue)?
- ◇ Does the patient have yellow eyes (jaundice)?
- ◇ Does the patient have severe dehydration? Look for:
  - Sudden weight loss
  - Loose skin
  - Sunken eyes
  - Dry mouth
- ◇ Is the patient bleeding with no known cause?
- ◇ Is the patient unable to stand or sit?

### Ask

- ◇ Has the patient got a fever or had a history of fever in the last 48 hours?
- ◇ Is the patient able to drink?
- ◇ Has the patient had convulsions (fits)?
- ◇ Does the patient vomit repeatedly?
  - Very little?
  - None at all?
  - Is it dark?
- ◇ How much urine does the patient pass?



If the patient has fever or history of fever in the past 48 hours and the answer to any of these questions is yes, the patient has severe febrile illness, possibly severe and complicated malaria. **Any febrile coma, bulging fontanelle or stiff neck is malaria until proven otherwise in areas of high malaria transmission. Urgent pre-referral treatment and referral is required.** The patient's life is in danger. Urgent treatment is needed to save the patient's life.



# Signs & Symptoms of Severe & Complicated Malaria

In addition to the signs and symptoms of uncomplicated malaria...

Bulging fontanelle  
if under 18 months

Impaired  
Consciousness

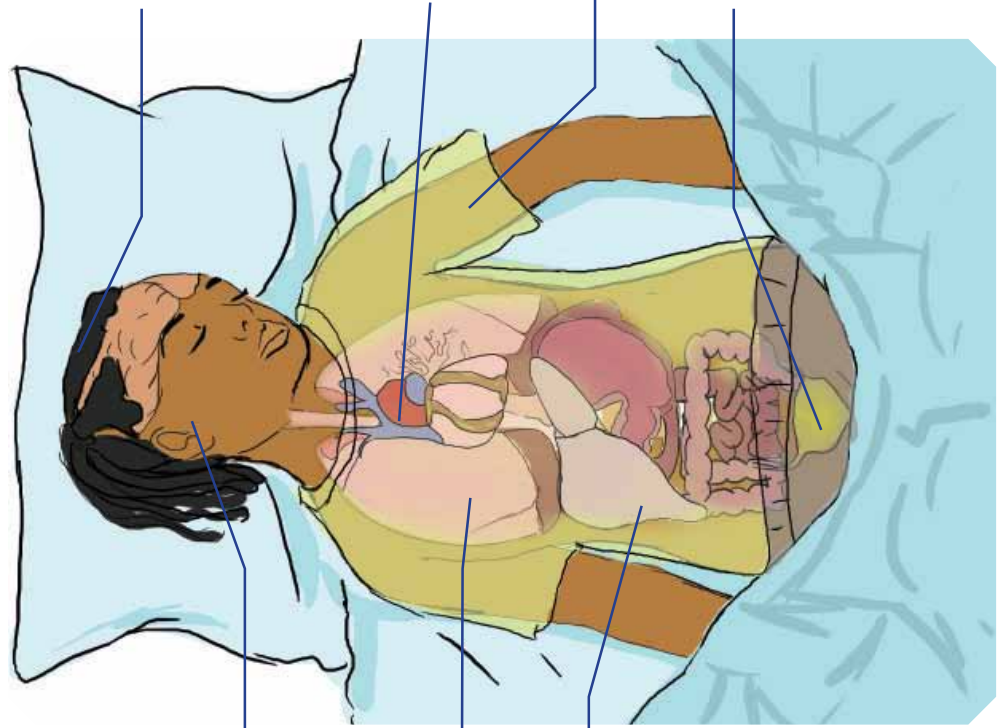
Multiple  
Convulsions

Stiff neck

Circulatory  
Collapse  
(Weak Rapid Pulse)

Extreme Weakness  
(Unable to Sit or Stand)

Haemoglobinuria  
Decreased Urine  
Output



Shock

Respiratory Collapse

Difficulty Breathing

Pulmonary Oedema

Jaundice

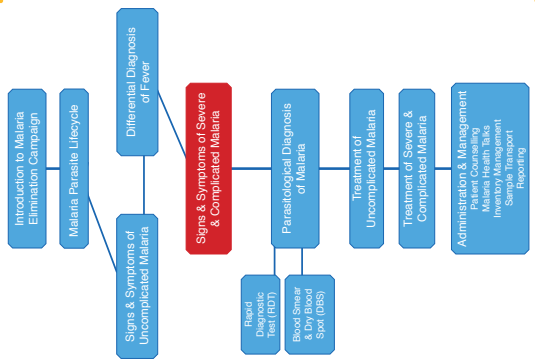
Hypoglycaemia

Abnormal Bleeding

Severe Pallor

Severe Dehydration

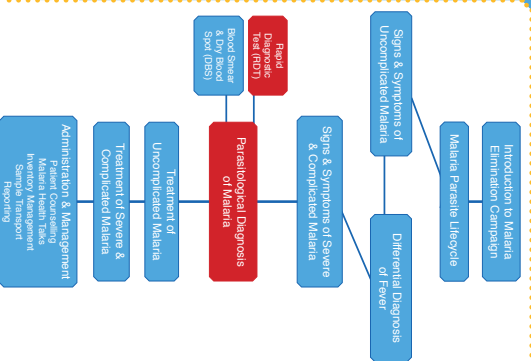
(Sudden Weight Loss,  
Loose Skin, Sunken Eyes,  
Dry Mouth)



**Note:**

A prior diagnosis of HIV means that the patient is more susceptible to malaria.

# Diagnosis of Malaria: Rapid Diagnostic Test (RDT)



**Getting Good Blood Flow**

When the weather is cold, warm the patient's hand (e.g., submerge patient's hand in warm water, or instruct the patient to rub their hands together) to obtain good blood flow for finger prick. Apply same methodology to the foot when collecting blood from a heel or big toe.

'The diagnosis of malaria is based on clinical suspicion and on the detection of parasites in the blood. The two methods routinely used for parasitological diagnosis are light microscopy of a blood smear and rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs). RDTs are commercially available in different formats: e.g. dipstick, cassettes or cards. They are relatively simple to perform and to interpret and they do not require electricity or special equipment. RDTs for malaria can be used to confirm diagnosis of malaria at a health facility where microscopy is not available, or in facilities with laboratory services to reduce the workload of microscopy. Most RDTs detect malaria species-specific antigens produced by parasites present in the blood of infected individuals. As RDTs does not detect antibodies due to the immunological reaction, the result is not affected by impaired immunity (i.e. HIV or malnutrition).'

## 1 Materials Needed



Prepare the above materials (lancet, alcohol swab, pipette, RDT, and buffer) as well as gloves, the correct waste disposal containers, and labelling and reporting materials. Do not use test kit if it has expired or if the packaging is damaged.

## 2 Finger Pricking



The finger pricking device needs to be loaded. Hold the body of it firmly in one hand and push the protective tab in. Listen for a click.

## 3



Aim for the side of the finger or toe. Avoid pricking the top of the digit or back of the heel.

## 4 Disposal



Lancets are not re-usable and should be disposed in a sharps container.



# Example of Cassette Format RDT (First Response)\*

Refer to local guidelines for preferred RDT kit and refer to product leaflet for specifications for use.

## 5 Performing the RDT



Wipe away first drop of blood with a dry piece of cotton wool. Apply gentle pressure to the finger until a new blood drop appears.

## 6



Squeeze the top of the pipette, immerse the open end in the blood drop. Gently release the pressure drawing blood into the tube, up to the raised plastic ring near the bottom of the pipette.

## 7



Transfer two (2) drops of blood from the pipette to the sample well (the small well) on the RDT by squeezing the top of the tube.

## 8



Holding the buffer bottle vertically, add two (2) drops of buffer into the buffer well. Take care with this process and add no more than 2 drops. Squeezing the bottle may result in dispensing too much.

## 9

**Interpreting RDT Results** Read the RDT result in 20 minutes. Do not read the results before or after the set time.

### Negative



The presence of just the control band, at the C mark indicates a negative result for *P. falciparum* malaria.

### Invalid



If the test does not show the control band at the C mark, even if there is a reaction on the T band, the test is INVALID. Perform another RDT.

### Positive



The presence of both the control band at the C mark and the test band at the T mark indicates a positive result for *P. falciparum* malaria.

### Important Note

Any faint line at the T mark, together with a line at the C mark, must be taken to mean that the malaria test is positive and the patient should be given the relevant care and treatment.

## 10

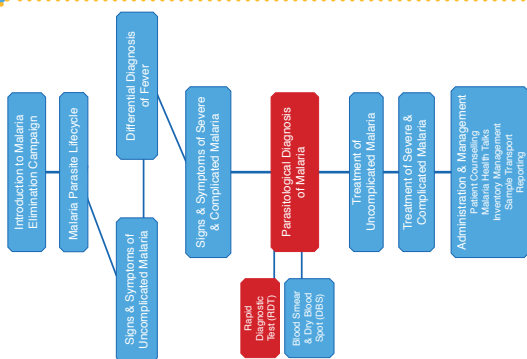
### Recording

Record the RDT result and the prescribed treatment in the clinic, OPD, or ward register.

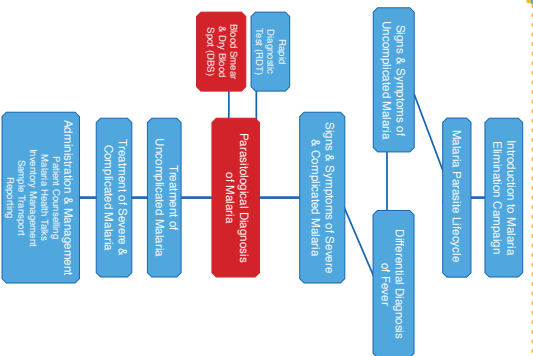
## 11

### Disposal of the RDT

The used RDT should be discarded in the bio-hazardous waste.



# Diagnosis of Malaria: Blood Smear & Light Microscopy



## Tips for Effective Blood Collection

Blood can coagulate quickly on the slide. To prevent this, set up your work station with all required materials for slide collection before you prick the patient. Work quickly to collect blood. In the rare case that an adequate quantity of blood cannot be collected from the first prick, prick the patient again with a new lancet.

In the diagnosis of severe malaria cases, microscopy is the preferred option; as it is also useful in assessing other important parameters like quantification of malaria parasites and identification of the infecting species. It is considered the 'field standard' against which the sensitivity and specificity of other methods are assessed.

## 1 Blood Smear Collection



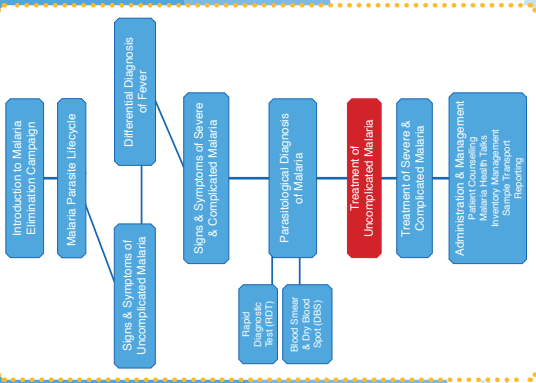
Wipe the slide clean with a lint-free cloth prior to use. Using the same pipette from the RDT kit, carefully position two drops of blood on the end of the slide, closest to where the label will be. Once the blood has been positioned on the slide, work quickly to avoid blood coagulation.

## 2 Blood Smear Preparation



Ensure the slide with the blood drops is on a flat, firm surface. Using another clean slide as a spreader, touch the small drop with the spreader, and allow the blood to run along its edge. Pull the spreader firmly along the slide away from the largest drop, keeping the spreader at a 45° angle. Make sure that the spreader is in even contact with the surface of the slide while the blood is being spread. Using the corner of the spreader, quickly spread the large drop to make an even, thick film approximately 1 cm<sup>2</sup> in area.

# Treatment of Uncomplicated Malaria



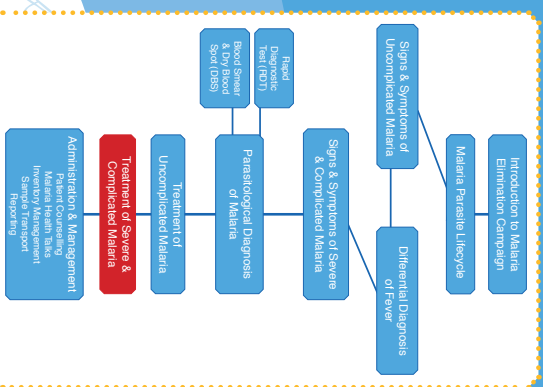
- ◇ Prompt parasitological confirmation by microscopy or alternatively by RDTs is recommended in all patients suspected of malaria before treatment is started.
- ◇ Artemisinin-based combination therapies (ACTs) are the recommended treatments for uncomplicated P.falciparum malaria in infants and young children.
- ◇ The choice of ACT in a country or region will be based on the level of resistance of the partner medicine in the combination. The following ACTs are recommended: artemether plus lumefantrine, artesunate plus amodiaquine, artesunate plus mefloquine, and artesunate plus sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine.
- ◇ Artesimisin and its derivatives should not be used as monotherapy.
- ◇ Pay attention to accurate dosing and ensure that the administered dose is retained.

- ◇ Give the first dose of co-artemether in the clinic and observe for one hour. If the child vomits within an hour repeat the dose.
- ◇ 2nd dose at home after 8 hours.
- ◇ Then twice daily for further two days as shown below.
- ◇ Co-artemether should be taken with food.

Weight (age)	Co-artemether tablets (20 mg artemether and 120mg lumefantrine)					
	0hr	8hr	24hr	36hr	48hr	60hr
5 - <14 kg (5 months up to 3 years)	1	1	1	1	1	1
14 - <19 kg (3 years up to 5 years)	2	2	2	2	2	2

<b>Supportive Treatment for Uncomplicated Malaria</b>
<b>High fever (&gt;39° C) and body aches</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ Give paracetamol and advise patient to receive tepid sponging and fanning to bring fever down</li> </ul>
<b>Dehydration or diarrhoea</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ Give oral rehydration solution (ORS)</li> <li>◇ Advise to take increased amounts of water or other fluids</li> <li>◇ In the case of infants, encourage mothers to provide extra breastfeeding</li> <li>◇ Give zinc for 14 days</li> </ul>
<b>Anaemia</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ Take elemental iron for 3 months</li> <li>◇ Refer severe anaemia to a higher level health facility</li> </ul>

# Treatment of Severe & Complicated Malaria



<p><b>Guidelines for Treatment of Severe and Complicated Malaria at Clinic Level</b></p> <p><b>Pre-referral Antimalarial Treatment</b> Immediately administer intramuscular (IM) Quinine (10 mg/kg, IM Quinine should be diluted to at least 60 mg/ml) while organising transport to higher-level healthcare facility.</p> <p><b>Antibiotics</b> Administer at the clinician's discretion.</p> <p><b>Hydration and Glucose</b> The patient may have low blood sugar from the infection. In addition IM Quinine can lower blood sugar levels. If the patient can swallow, give sugar water or oral rehydration salt (ORS) and for babies, expressed milk. Where there is a qualified staff member, administer 5% glucose IV.</p> <p><b>Fever Management</b> Encourage the caretaker to undertake sponging along the journey to keep the temperature down. Paracetamol can be used if patient is able to take oral medication.</p> <p><b>Parasitological Diagnosis</b> If an RDT can be performed without delay, it should be performed and the results noted in the referral letter.</p> <p><b>Referral Documentation</b> Record all findings and drugs given in the referral letter.</p>
--

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ Severe malaria is a medical emergency. After rapid assessment and confirmation of the diagnosis, full doses of parenteral antimalarial treatment should be started without delay with whichever effective antimalarial is first available.</li> <li>◇ For children, use artesunate IV or IM</li> <li>◇ Artemether or Quinine is an acceptable alternative if parenteral Artesunate is not available.</li> <li>◇ Give parenteral antimalarials in the treatment of severe malaria for a minimum of 24 hrs, and thereafter complete treatment by giving a complete course of an ACT.</li> <li>◇ If complete treatment of severe malaria is not possible, patients should be given pre-referral treatment and referred immediately to an appropriate facility for further treatment. The following are options for pre-referral treatment: rectal Artesunate, Quinine IM, Artesunate IM, Artemether IM.</li> </ul>
--



# Patient Counselling & Malaria Health Talk

**To ensure adherence to treatment, the first treatment dose for all patients should be directly observed and the following counselling messages should be provided...**

- ◇ Explain the dosing schedule and use probing questions to confirm the patient's understanding
- ◇ Emphasize that all doses must be taken even if the patient feels better after a few doses
- ◇ Recommend paracetamol for symptoms of fever and body aches
- ◇ If vomiting occurs within 30 minutes after receiving the drug orally, the doses should be repeated; if vomiting occurs after this time, continue with planned dosing schedule
- ◇ Coartem® is best absorbed when taken with fatty foods or dairy (e.g., milk)
- ◇ Advise patients to go immediately to the nearest health facility if the condition deteriorates at any time or if symptoms have not resolved after three days

## Educate your family and friends on how to implement prevention of malaria



Seek care within 24 hours if sick and insist on a malaria test



Accept indoor residual spraying in homes and other buildings



Sleep under an insecticide-treated net every night



Take prophylaxis when travelling in malaria areas



Treat or clear away stagnant water



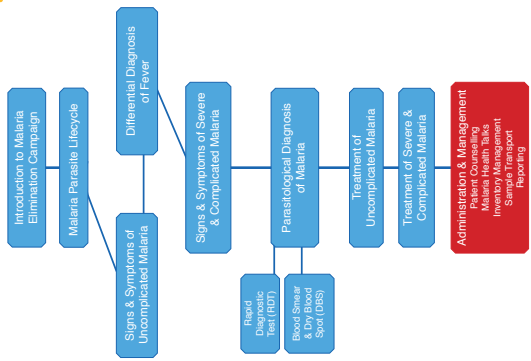
Place screens on all windows and doors that lead outside



Wear long-sleeve tops and bottoms in the evening time



Use mosquito coils and insect repellent as prevention







We would like to thank the Malaria Research Programme of the Medical Research Council of South Africa for their assistance in the production of the photographs used in this training tool.

Adapted by Zoë-Life and South to South Program for Comprehensive Family HIV Care & Treatment (2011)

# NUTRITION



# NUTRITION

Nutrition assessment and support is an essential aspect of care for HIV exposed infants and HIV infected children. HIV and opportunistic infections increase the body's energy needs above average daily requirements. Every healthcare provider caring for families living with HIV should familiarize themselves with nutrition issues and know when to refer for additional support. The materials in this chapter cover a broad range of topics from infant feeding support for the HIV exposed infant to nutritional management of HIV-related complications.

## **Considerations for the nutrition for HIV-infected infants and children**

1. HIV-infected children should be assessed routinely for nutritional status, including weight and height at scheduled visits, particularly after the initiation of ART.
2. HIV-infected children on or off ART who are symptomatic, have conditions requiring increased energy (e.g. TB, chronic lung disease, chronic OIs or malignancies) or have weight loss or have evidence of poor growth, should be provided with 25 – 30% additional energy.
3. HIV-infected children who are severely malnourished should be managed as per the guidelines for uninfected children and provided with 50 – 100% additional energy.
4. HIV-infected children should receive one recommended daily allowance (RDA) of micronutrients daily. If this cannot be assured through the diet, or there is evidence of deficiency, then supplementation should be given.
5. HIV-infected infants and children should receive high-dose vitamin A supplementation every 6 months between 6 and 59 months of age, as per the guidelines for uninfected children.
6. HIV-infected children who have diarrhoea should receive zinc supplementation as a part of management, as per the guidelines for uninfected children.



### **KEY MESSAGE:**

***Growth and nutrition is a good marker of HIV disease progression and response to ART.***

## Core Measurements

Every HIV exposed infant and HIV infected child should have the following measurements obtained during every clinical review visit:

- Weight (kg) measured without shoes and minimum clothing
- Length or height (cm)
- Head circumference (cm) if less than 3 years of age

## Growth Charts

Included in this chapter are sample growth charts from the South African Road to Health Booklet (based on the WHO guidelines) as well as the actual WHO growth charts. Growth charts are an essential tool for the provision of quality paediatric HIV services. Growth measurements should be plotted and interpreted using the appropriate growth chart.

These growth charts use the Z-score measurement which may be new to some. The Z-score is a simple way of establishing thresholds for the departure from median, expected growth which is defined as zero. The growth charts also now include weight-for-height charts which are an ideal way of assessing acute malnutrition. You will note text next to the South African growth curve providing guidance on the interpretation of the Z-score.

In caring for HIV infected children you will note that stunting or shorter height than average is very common. Observing improvements in growth and nutrition following ART initiation is rewarding and a visible way of celebrating successful adherence with caregivers.

## INFANT FEEDING RECOMMENDATIONS FOR HIV-POSITIVE MOTHERS

All women should be provided with infant feeding information counselling during antenatal care to ensure that they are properly informed and supported to make the best decision for their situation. Assess and educate the mother on her infant feeding options and important steps she can take to minimise HIV transmission while promoting overall feeding safety and healthy infant outcomes.



### KEY MESSAGE:

*It is important to interpret the growth curve by looking at the shape, pattern and location on the chart.*

All HIV-positive pregnant women should receive infant feeding counselling at least 4 times antenatally.

**UP TO 6 MONTHS OF AGE:**

- The main feeding recommendation for HIV-positive women not on lifelong ART is:
  - Exclusive breastfeeding (EBF) for the first 6 months of life PLUS
  - Infant Nevirapine throughout the breastfeeding period until 1 week after breastfeeding stops
- The main feeding recommendation for HIV-positive women on lifelong ART is:
  - Exclusive breastfeeding (EBF) for the first 6 months of life PLUS
  - Infant Nevirapine for 6 weeks post delivery
- Breastfeed exclusively as often as the child wants, day and night – feed at least 8 times in 24 hrs
- Do not give other foods or fluids

Exceptions to the above recommendations are mothers in whom formula feeding can be given safely (**Group 1 on left where AFASS criteria apply**) or breastfeeding is completely non-feasible (**Group 2 on right**).

It is recommended that these women:

- Exclusively formula feed for the first 6 months of life PLUS
- Infant Nevirapine for 6 weeks post delivery

<b>GROUP 1:</b> <b>Mother is clinically well and AFASS*            Criteria applies</b>	<b>GROUP 2:</b> <b>EBF is not feasible</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Safe water and sanitation are assured at the household level and in the community, AND</li> <li>• The mother or caregiver can reliably provide (buy) sufficient infant formula milk to support normal growth and development of the infant, AND</li> <li>• The mother/caregiver can frequently prepare it hygienically so that it carries no risk of diarrhoea and malnutrition, AND</li> <li>• The mother/caregiver can, in the first 6 months exclusively formula feed, AND</li> <li>• The family is supportive of this practice</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mother is terminally ill with full blown AIDS and a high viral load that is not responding to lifelong ART, OR</li> <li>• Mother has demised, OR</li> <li>• Mother has/will be unable to care for the infant herself or will give the infant up for adoption – thus no breastmilk will be available</li> </ul>

\* See page 173



- **Formula feeding:**

- Ensure exclusivity for 6 months – other foods or fluids are not necessary
- Prepare formula as directed on tin – start with sterilization of bottle and make up feeds to correct strength
- Use milk within an hour and discard leftovers
- Cup feeding is safer than bottle feeding
- Use a cup which can be kept clean i.e. not one with a spout



**KEY MESSAGE:**

***Mixed feeding in the first 6 months of life carries the highest risk of HIV transmission***

## 6 MONTHS UP TO 12 MONTHS

- HIV infected women (on or not on lifelong ART) who have been exclusively breastfeeding, should continue breastfeeding until the infant is one year old, whilst continuing on prophylaxis, and start introducing solids.
- Infants that have thus far been exclusively formula fed (Group 1 and 2) should continue being given formula or 3 cups of full cream cow's milk (from 9 months of age) together with solids.
- Start giving 2-3 teaspoons of soft porridge, and begin to introduce fruit and vegetables.
- Gradually increase the amount and frequency of feeds. Children between 6 - 8 months should have two meals a day, by 12 months this should have increased to 5 small meals per day.
- Give locally available protein daily. Examples include egg (yolk), beans, dhal, meat, fish, chicken / chicken livers, mopani worms.
- For malnourished children, mix margarine, fat, or oil with porridge.

### **Gradual weaning at 1 year:**

- It is recommended that HIV-infected mothers opting to breastfeed do so for a period of one year with prophylaxis, and gradually wean their infants over a period of one month.
- Nevirapine should be given to a baby for one week after breastfeeding has stopped in cases where the mother is not on ART
- Abrupt weaning is not recommended

### **Help mother prepare for transition:**

- Mother should discuss weaning with her family if possible.
- Express milk to practice cup feeding.
- Ensure a regular supply of formula or full cream cow's milk (if child older than 9 months).
- Learn how to prepare and store milk safely at home.

**Help mother make the transition:**

- Teach mother to cup feed her baby.
- Clean all utensils with soap and water.
- Start giving only formula or cow's milk (if child older than 9 months).

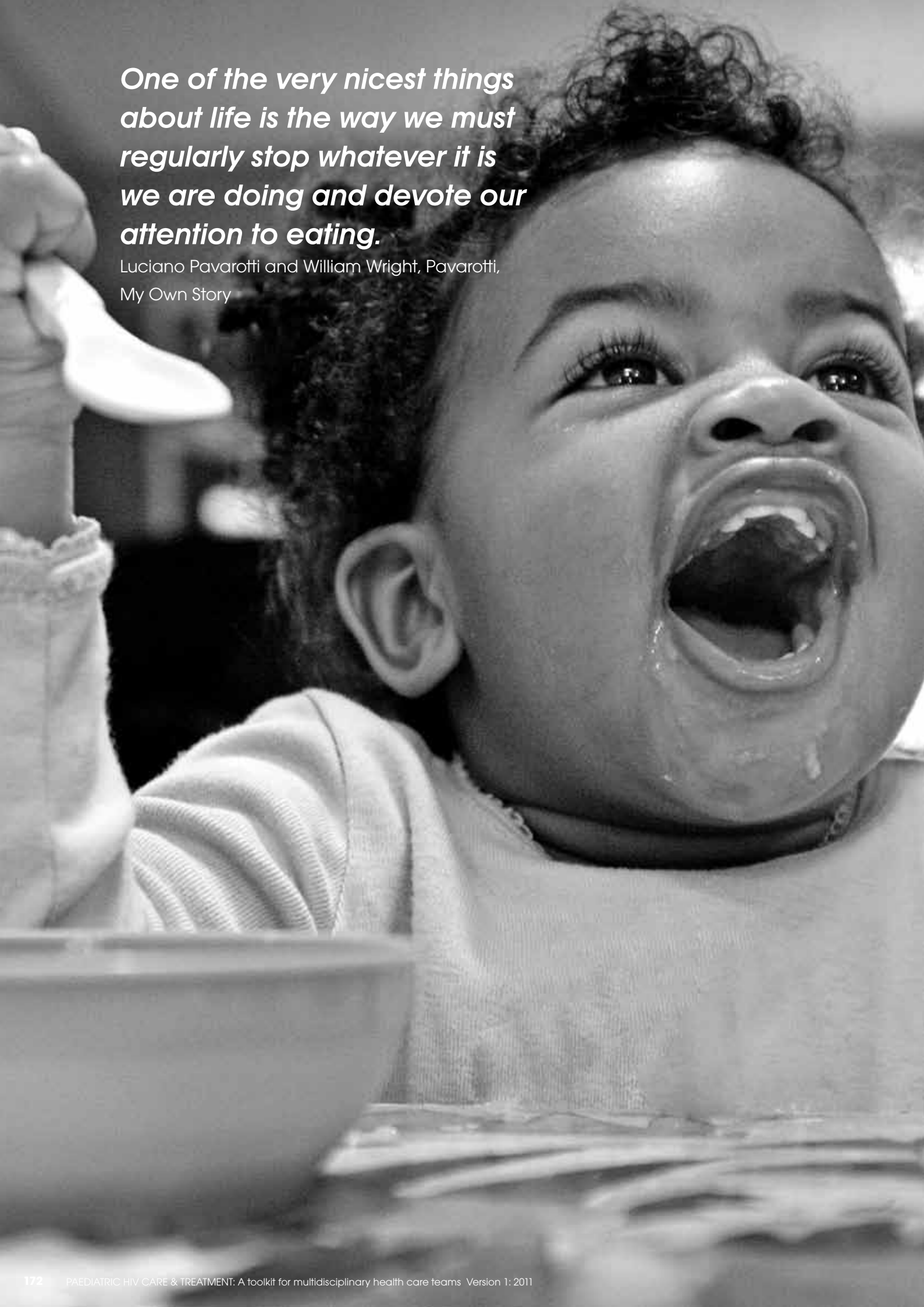
**Stop breastfeeding completely:**

- Express and discard some breastmilk, to keep comfortable until lactation stops

**12 MONTHS UP TO 2 YEARS**

- Give at least 5 adequate nutritious family meals per day.
- Provide at least 2 cups of a nutritionally adequate and safe feed (e.g. cow's milk or formula) daily.
- Give locally available protein at least once a day. Examples include: egg, beans, dhal, meat, fish, chicken/chicken livers, mopani worms.
- Give fresh fruit or vegetables at least twice every day.
- Give foods rich in iron, and vitamins A and C.
- Feed actively from the child's own bowl.





*One of the very nicest things  
about life is the way we must  
regularly stop whatever it is  
we are doing and devote our  
attention to eating.*

Luciano Pavarotti and William Wright, Pavarotti,  
My Own Story

# THE AFASS CRITERIA

## FOR INFANT FORMULA FEEDING

---

### **ALWAYS PERFORM AN AFASS ASSESSMENT BEFORE ADVISING WOMEN NOT TO BREASTFEED**

#### **Ensure that infant formula feeding is:**

# A

#### **ACCEPTABLE**

No cultural or social barriers, or fear of stigma or discrimination, must be present

# F

#### **FEASIBLE**

The carer must have adequate time, knowledge, skills and resources to feed the child and cope with outside pressures

# A

#### **AFFORDABLE**

The family must be able to afford infant formula without compromising their spending on food and health

# S

#### **SUSTAINABLE**

The carer must have access to a continuous, uninterrupted supply of formula, especially when the clinic runs out of stock

# S

#### **SAFE**

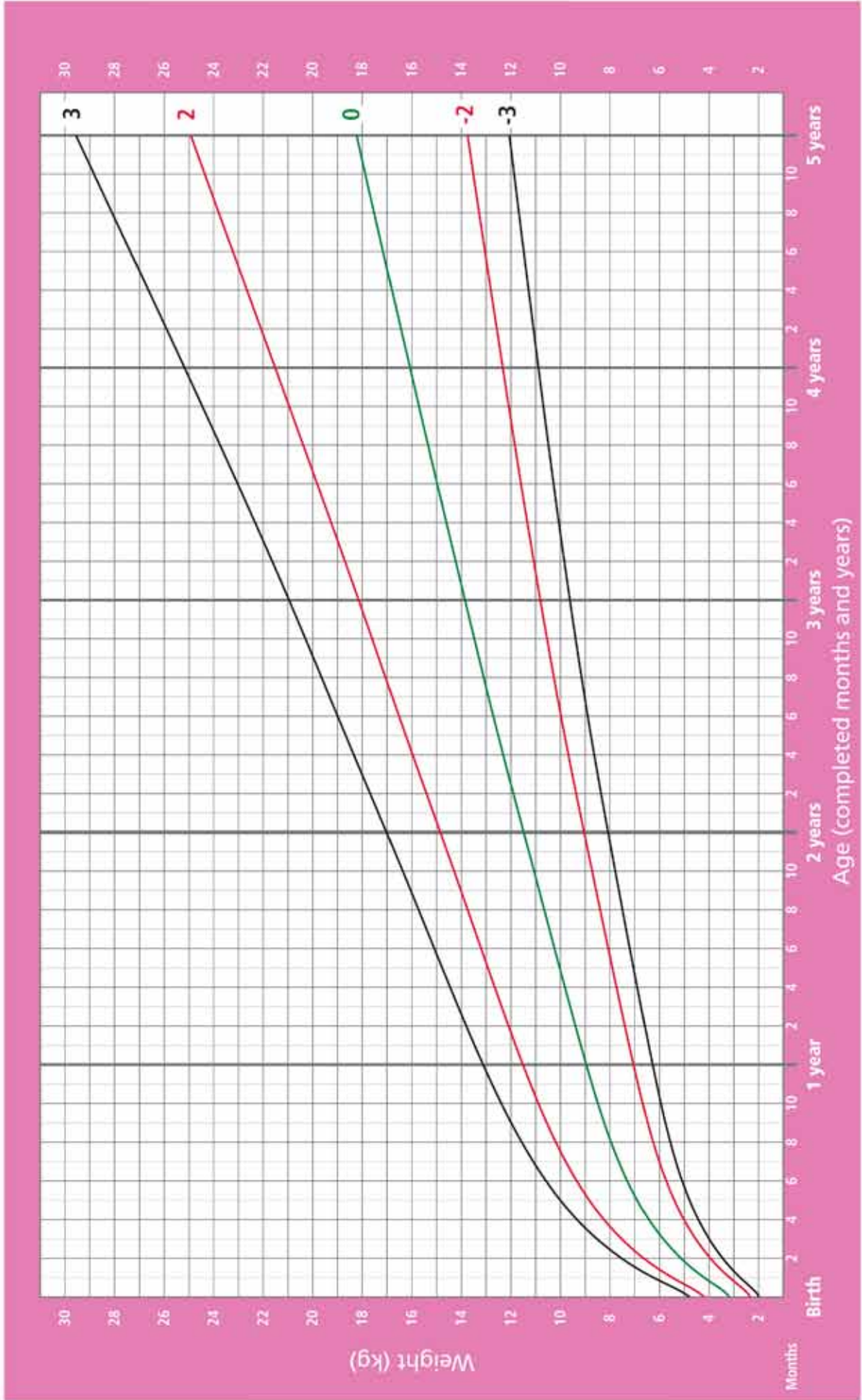
The infant formula must be hygienically prepared and stored under sanitary conditions

### **The WHO Guidelines on Infant Feeding for HIV-infected Women**

All mothers who are known to be HIV-infected, either on lifelong ART or not, who exclusively breastfeed their infants should do so for the first 6 months, introducing appropriate complementary foods thereafter, and continue breastfeeding for the first 12 months of life. (WHO 2009)

# Weight-for-age GIRLS

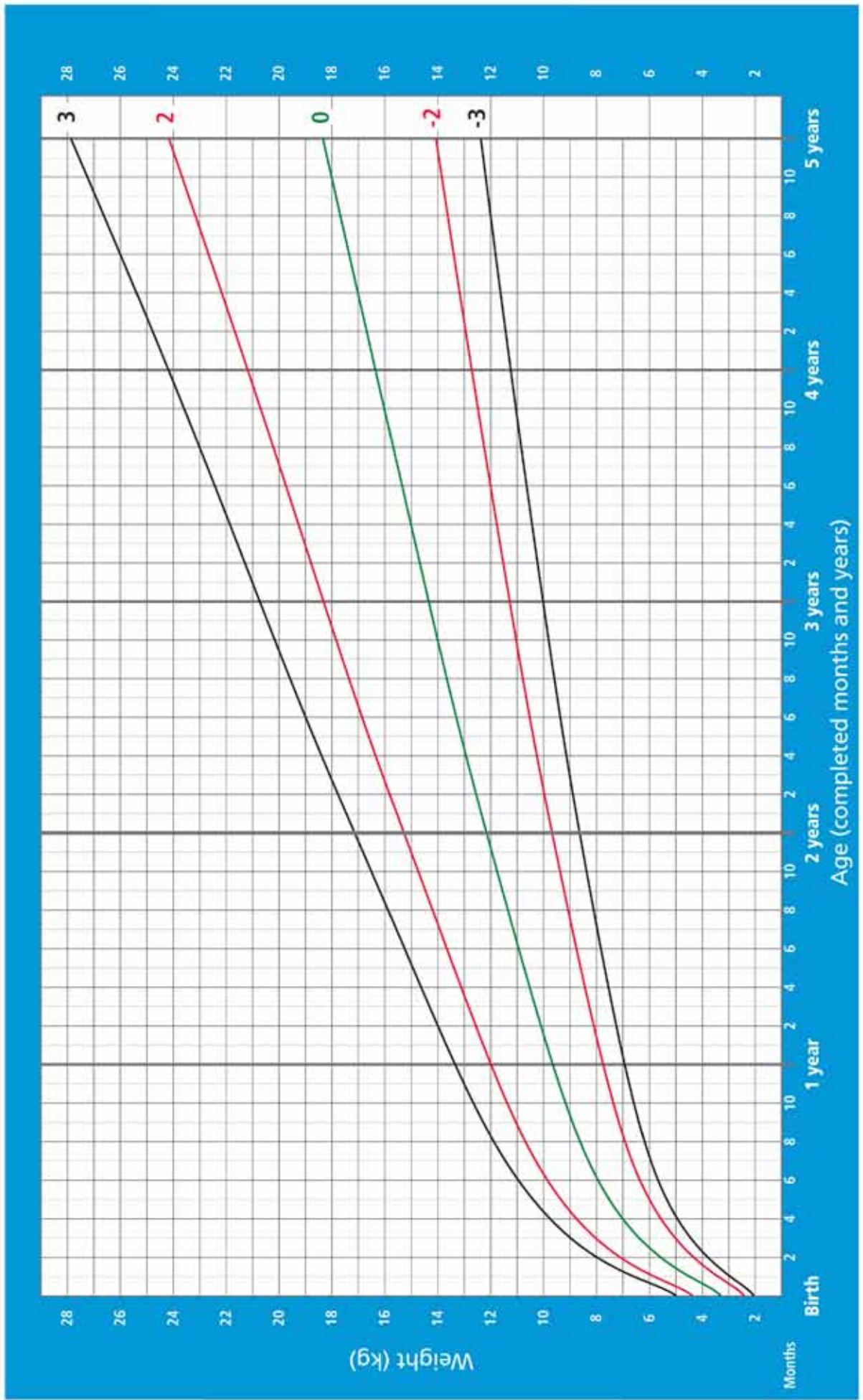
Birth to 5 years (z-scores)





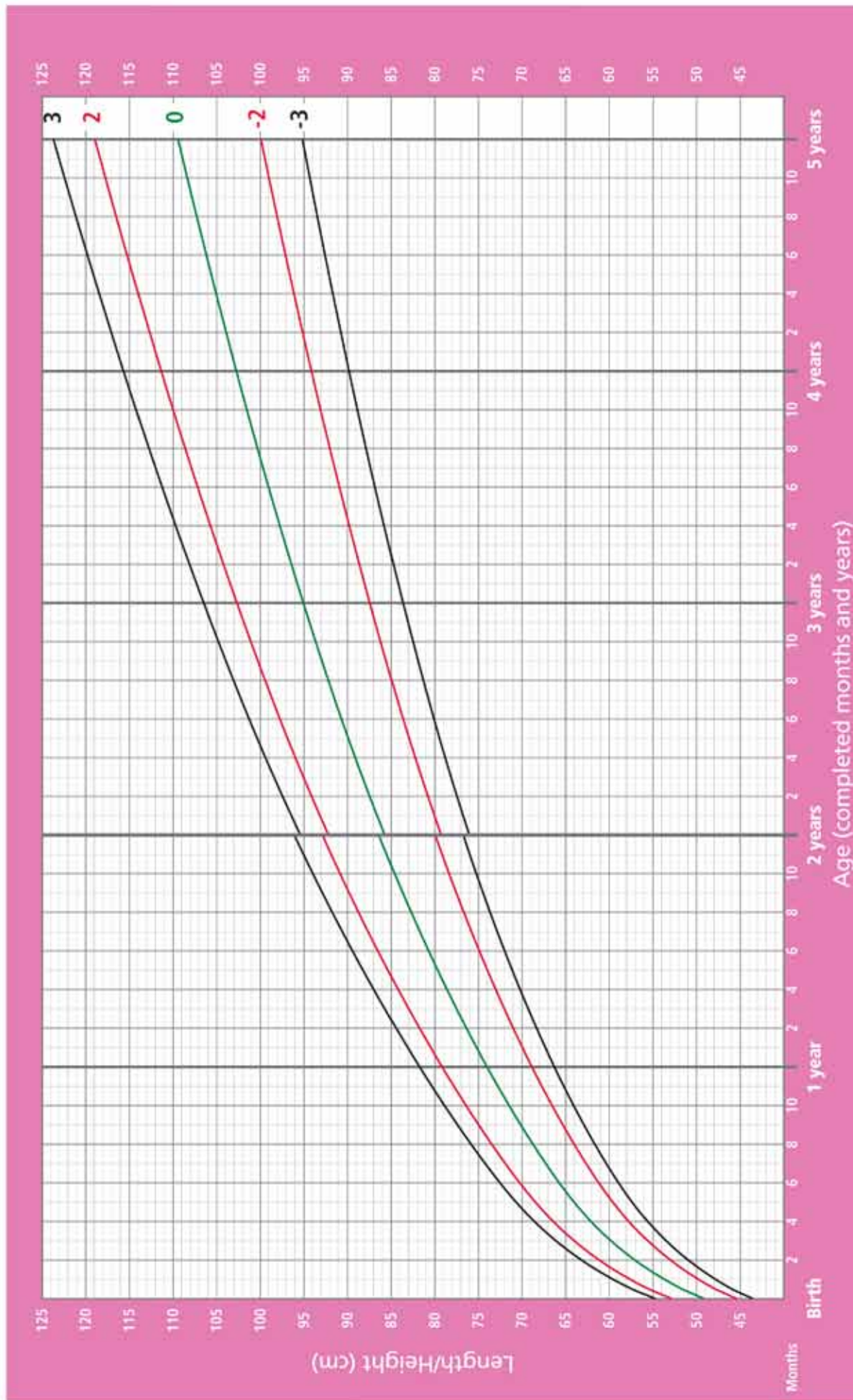
# Weight-for-age BOYS

Birth to 5 years (z-scores)



# Length/height-for-age GIRLS

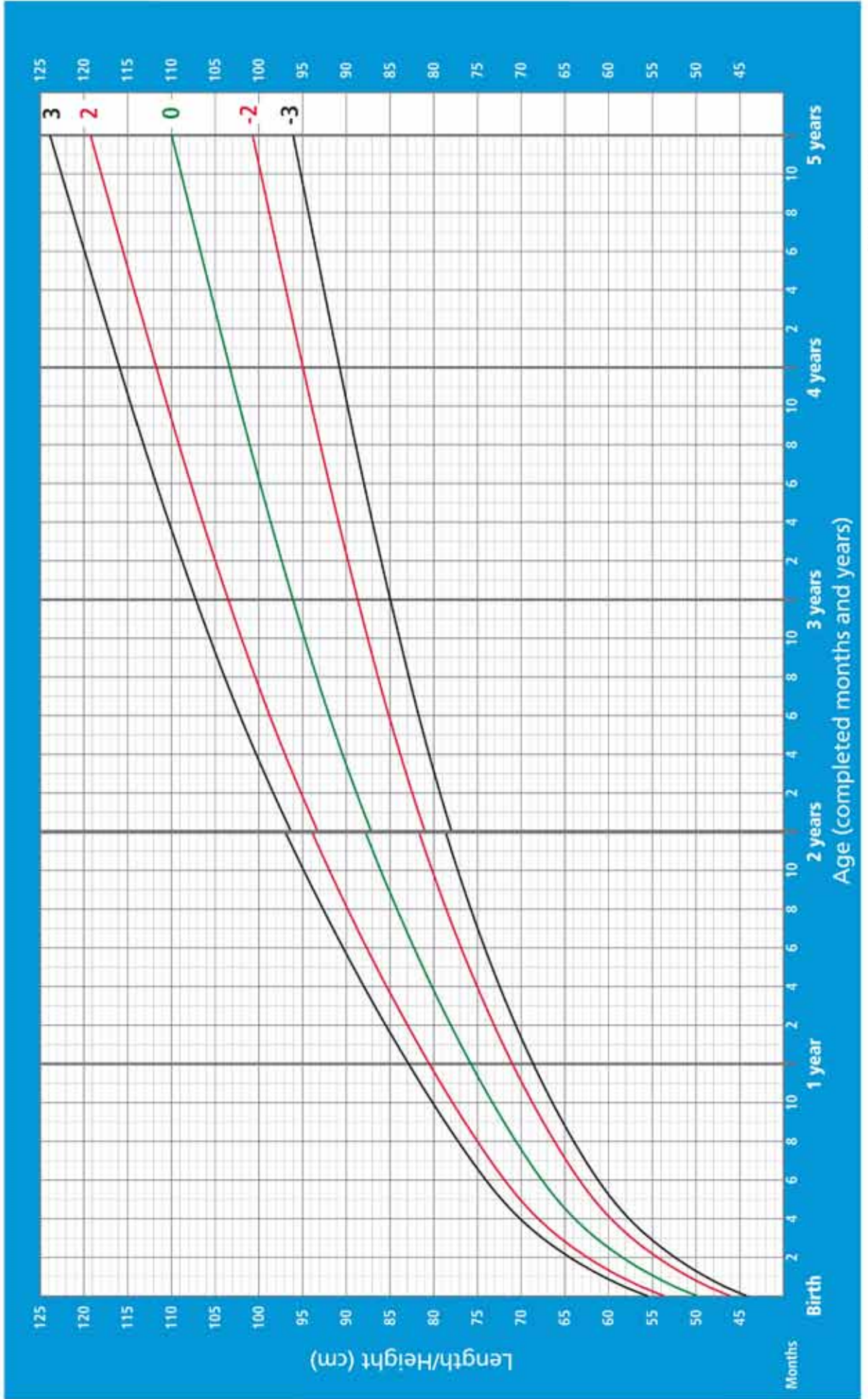
Birth to 5 years (z-scores)





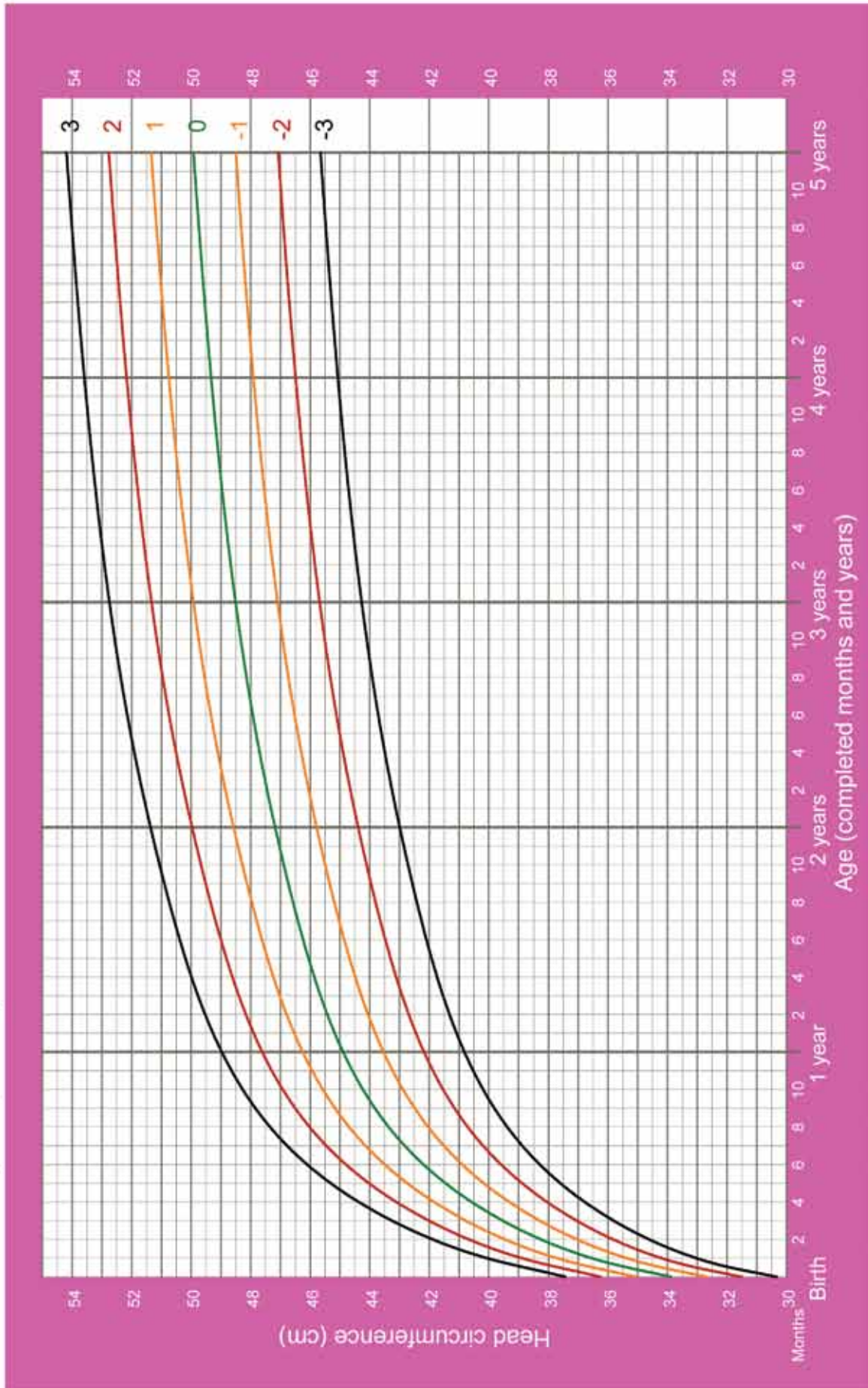
# Length/height-for-age BOYS

Birth to 5 years (z-scores)



# Head circumference-for-age GIRLS

Birth to 5 years (z-scores)

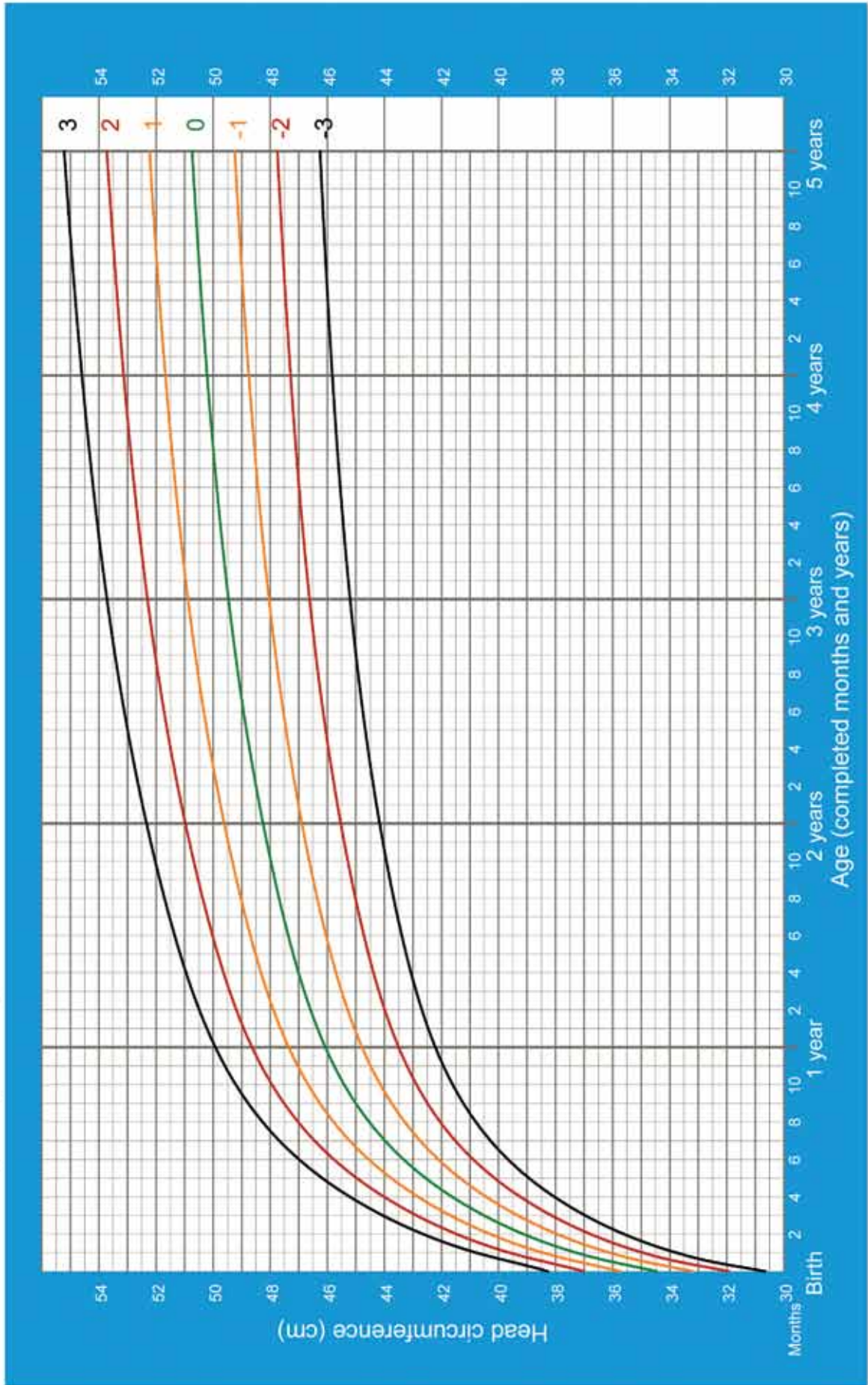


WHO Child Growth Standards



# Head circumference-for-age BOYS

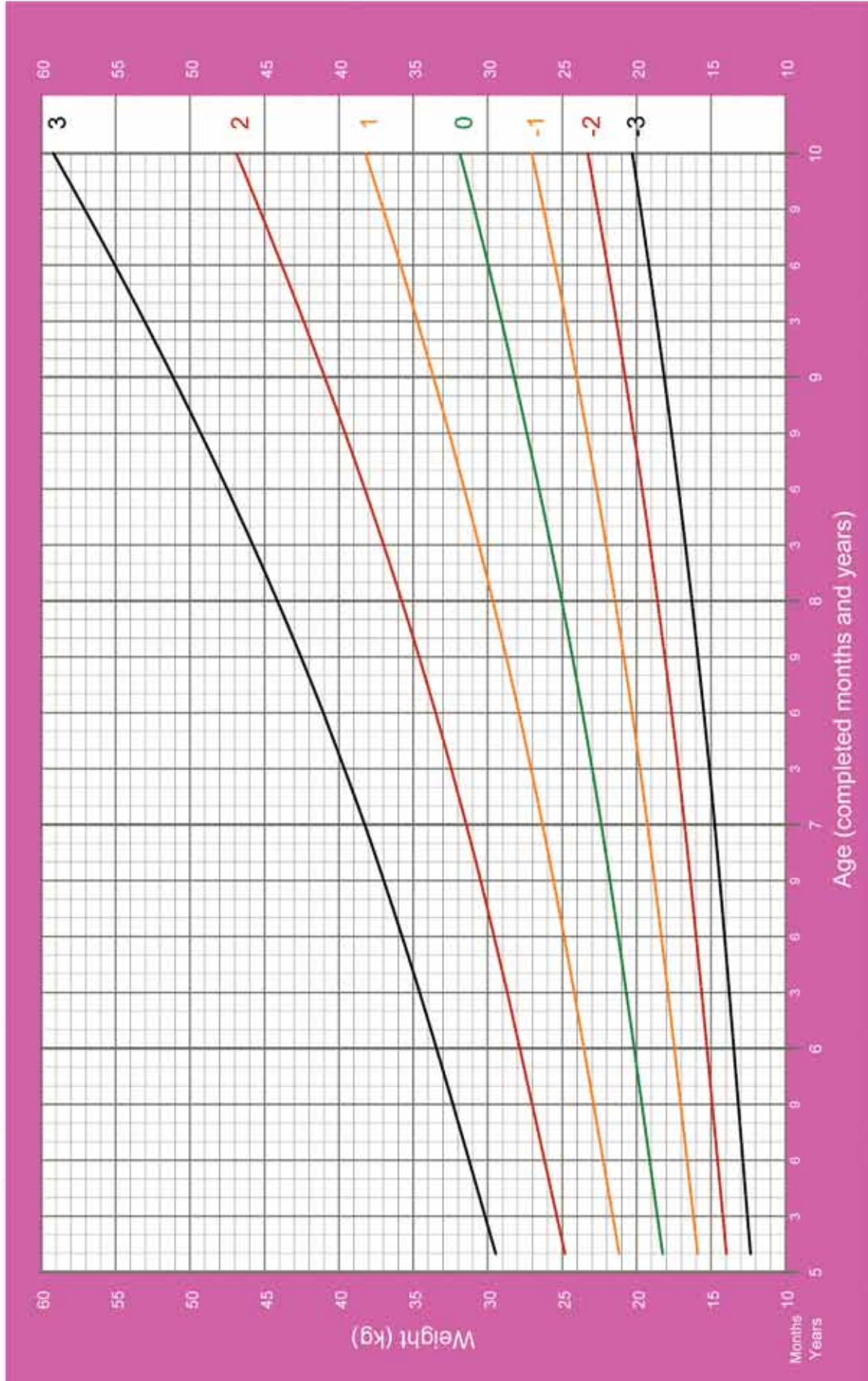
Birth to 5 years (z-scores)





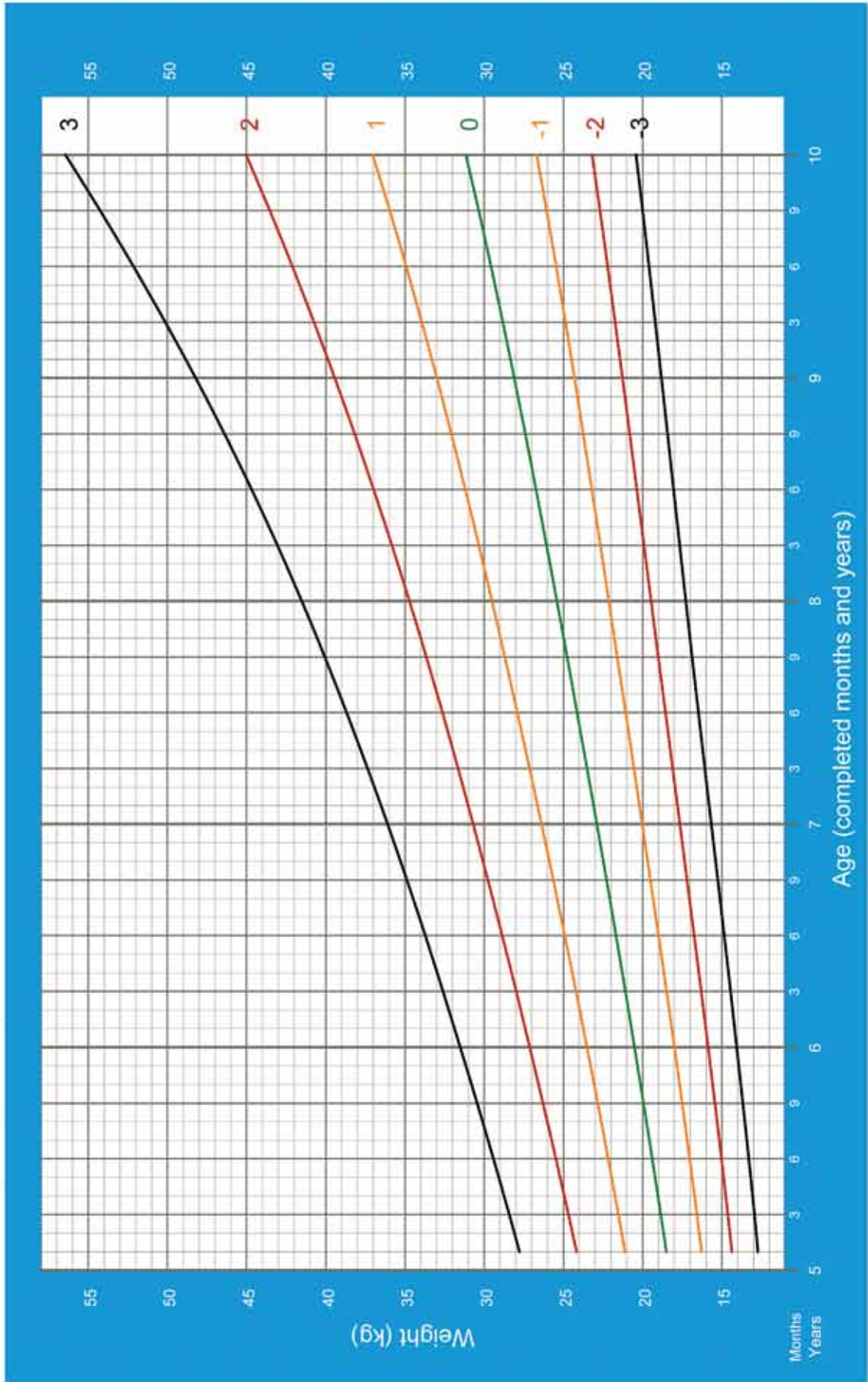
# Weight-for-age GIRLS

5 to 10 years (z-scores)



# Weight-for-age BOYS

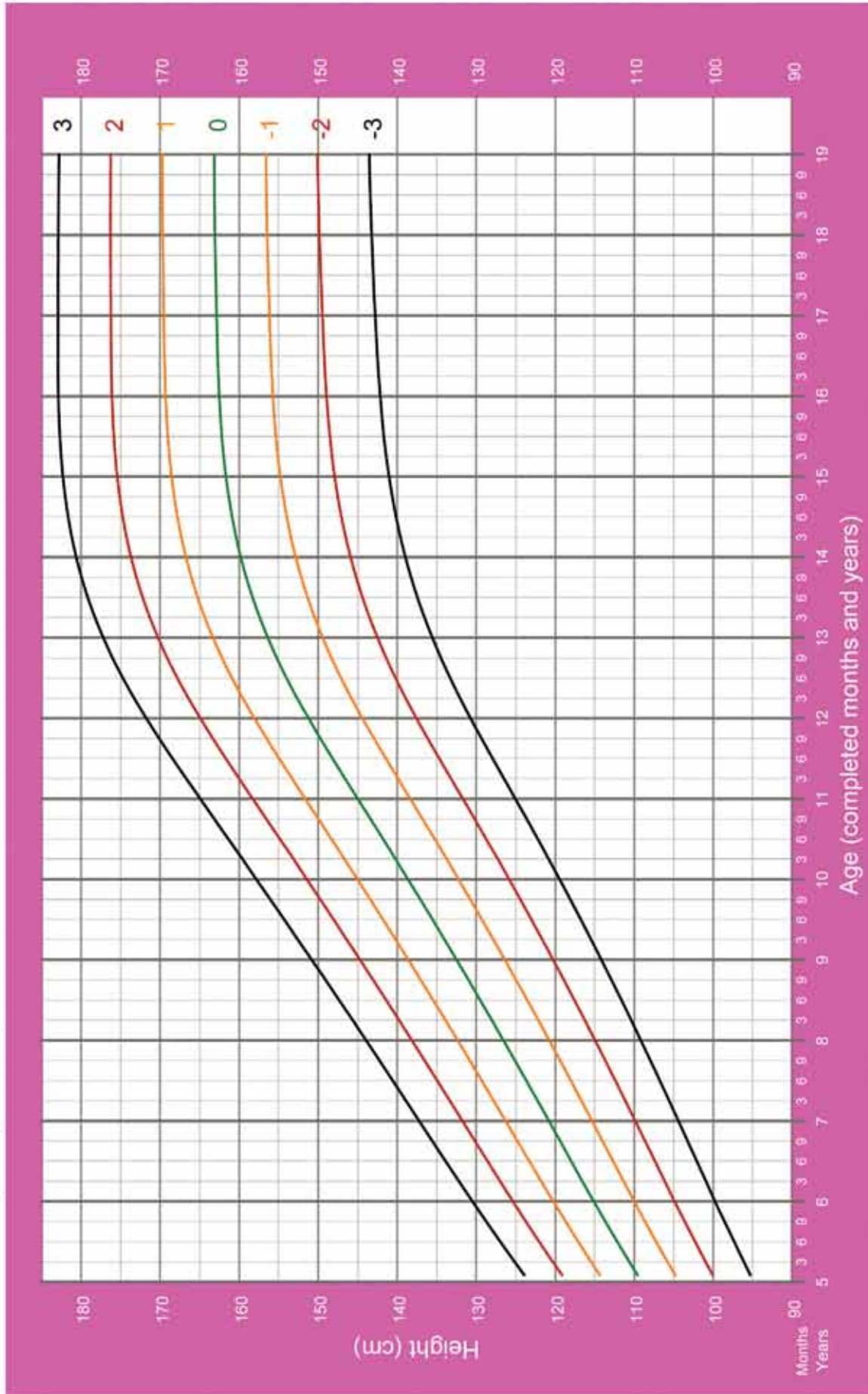
5 to 10 years (z-scores)





# Height-for-age GIRLS

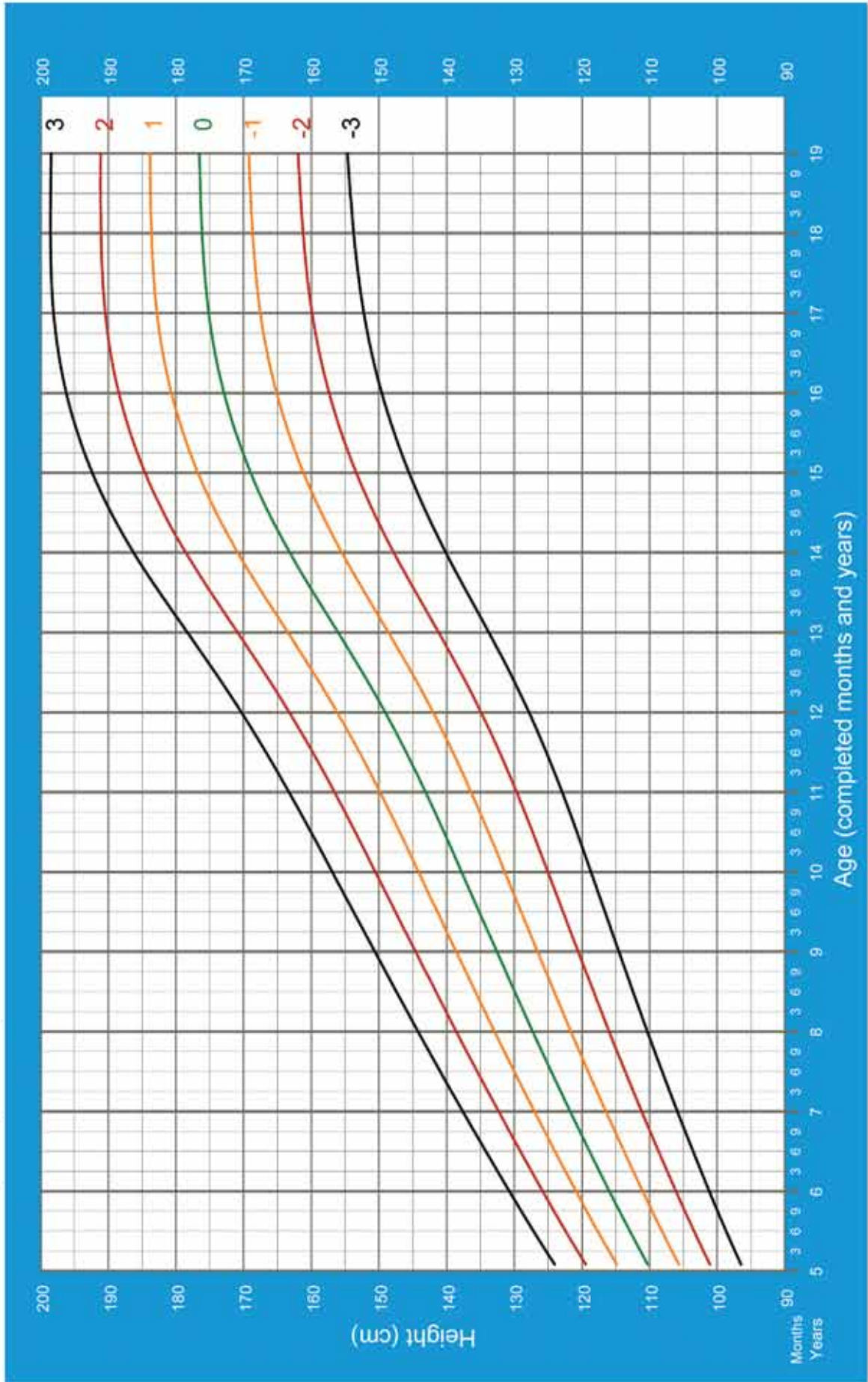
5 to 19 years (z-scores)



2007 WHO Reference

# Height-for-age BOYS

5 to 19 years (z-scores)





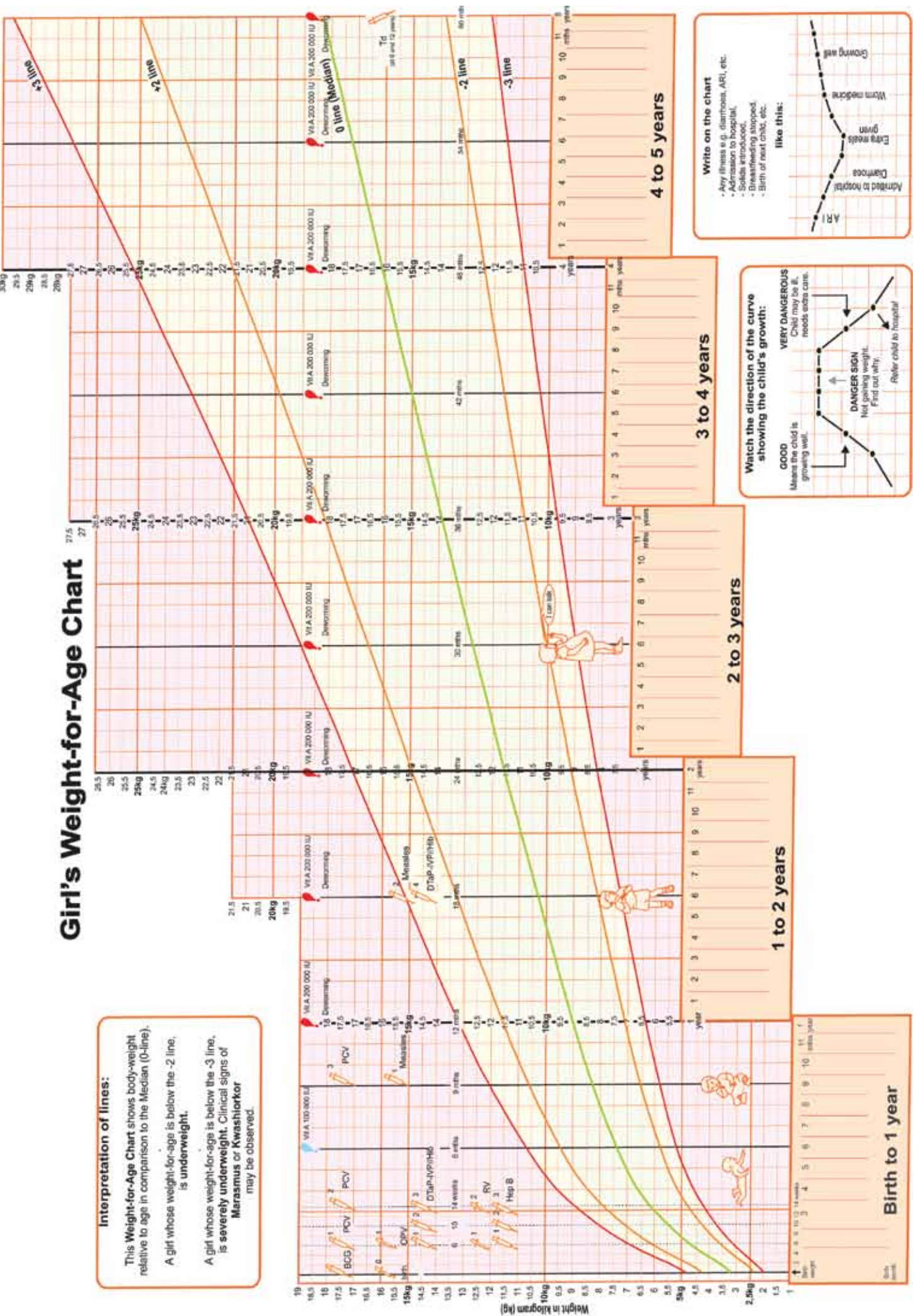
# Girl's Weight-for-Age Chart

## Interpretation of lines:

This Weight-for-Age Chart shows body-weight relative to age in comparison to the Median (0-line).

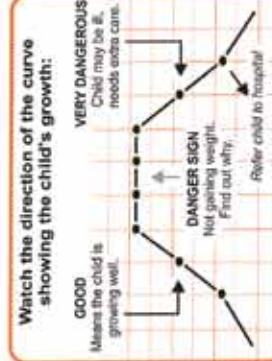
A girl whose weight-for-age is below the -2 line, is underweight.

A girl whose weight-for-age is below the -3 line, is severely underweight. Clinical signs of Marasmus or Kwashiorkor may be observed.



**Write on the chart**

- Any illness e.g. diarrhoea, ARI, etc.
- Admission to hospital,
- Solids introduced,
- Breastfeeding stopped,
- Birth of next child, etc.



**4 to 5 years**

**3 to 4 years**

**2 to 3 years**

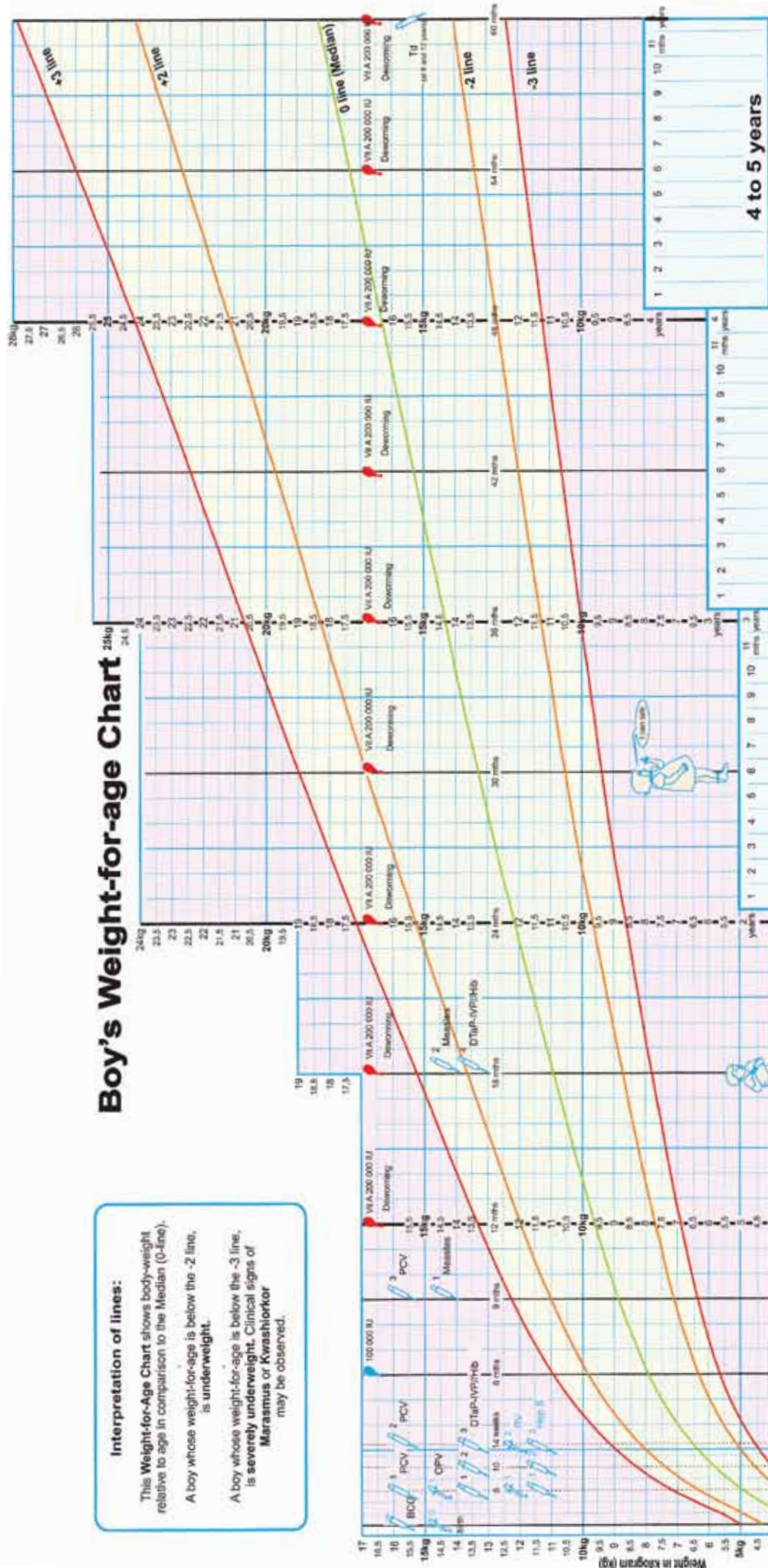
**1 to 2 years**

**Birth to 1 year**



# Boy's Weight-for-age Chart

**Interpretation of lines:**  
 This Weight-for-Age Chart shows body-weight relative to age in comparison to the Median (0-line).  
 A boy whose weight-for-age is below the -2 line, is underweight.  
 A boy whose weight-for-age is below the -3 line, is severely underweight. Clinical signs of Marasmus or Kwashiorkor may be observed.



### 4 to 5 years

**Write on the chart**

- Any illness e.g. diarrhoea, ARI, etc.
- Admission to hospital.
- Solids introduced.
- Breastfeeding stopped.
- Birth of next child, etc.

like this:

### 3 to 4 years

**Watch the direction of the curve showing the child's growth:**

- GOOD:** Means the child is growing well.
- DANGER SIGN:** Not gaining weight. Find out why.
- VERY DANGEROUS:** Child may be ill, needs extra care.

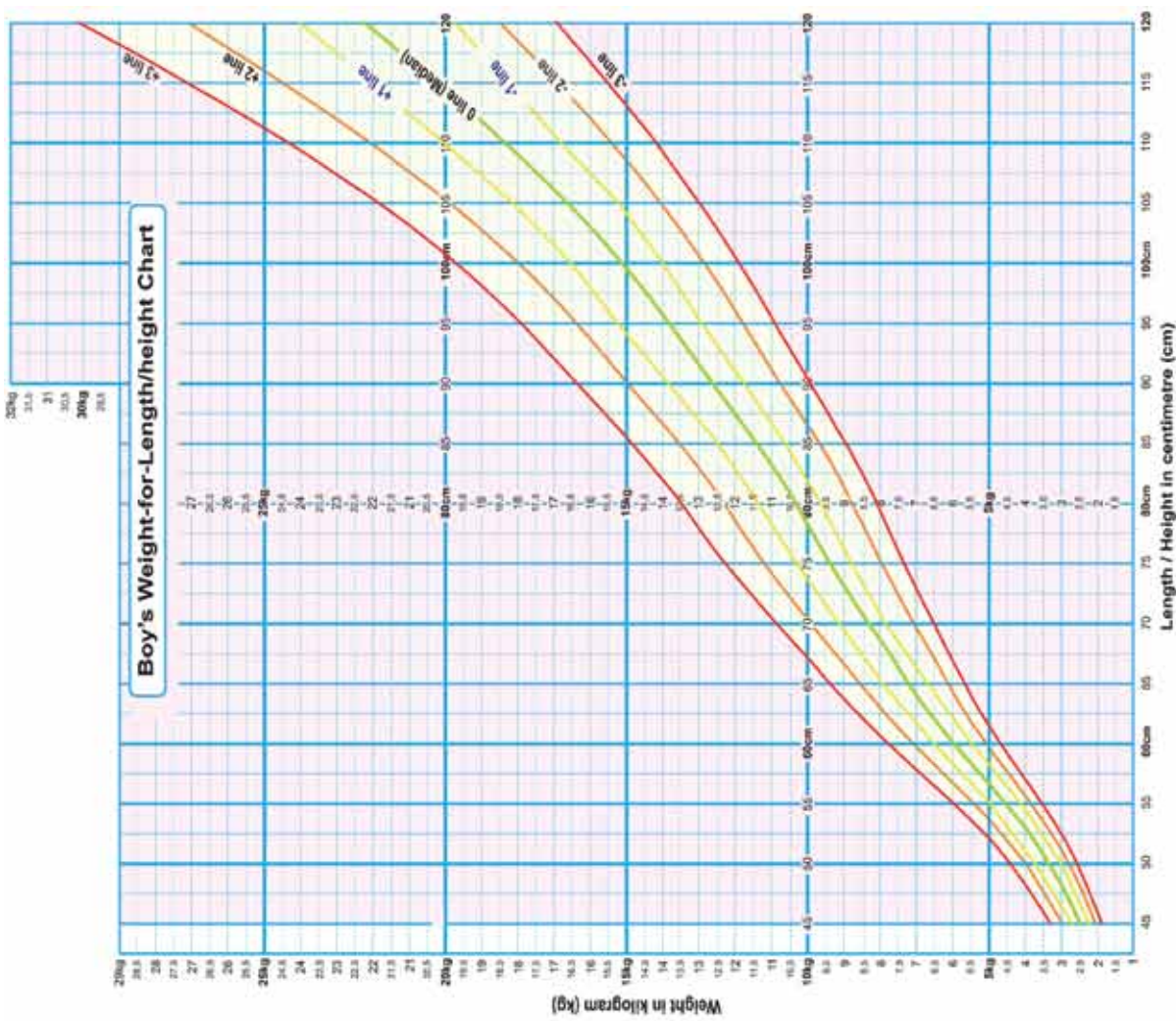
Refer child to hospital

### 2 to 3 years

### 1 to 2 years

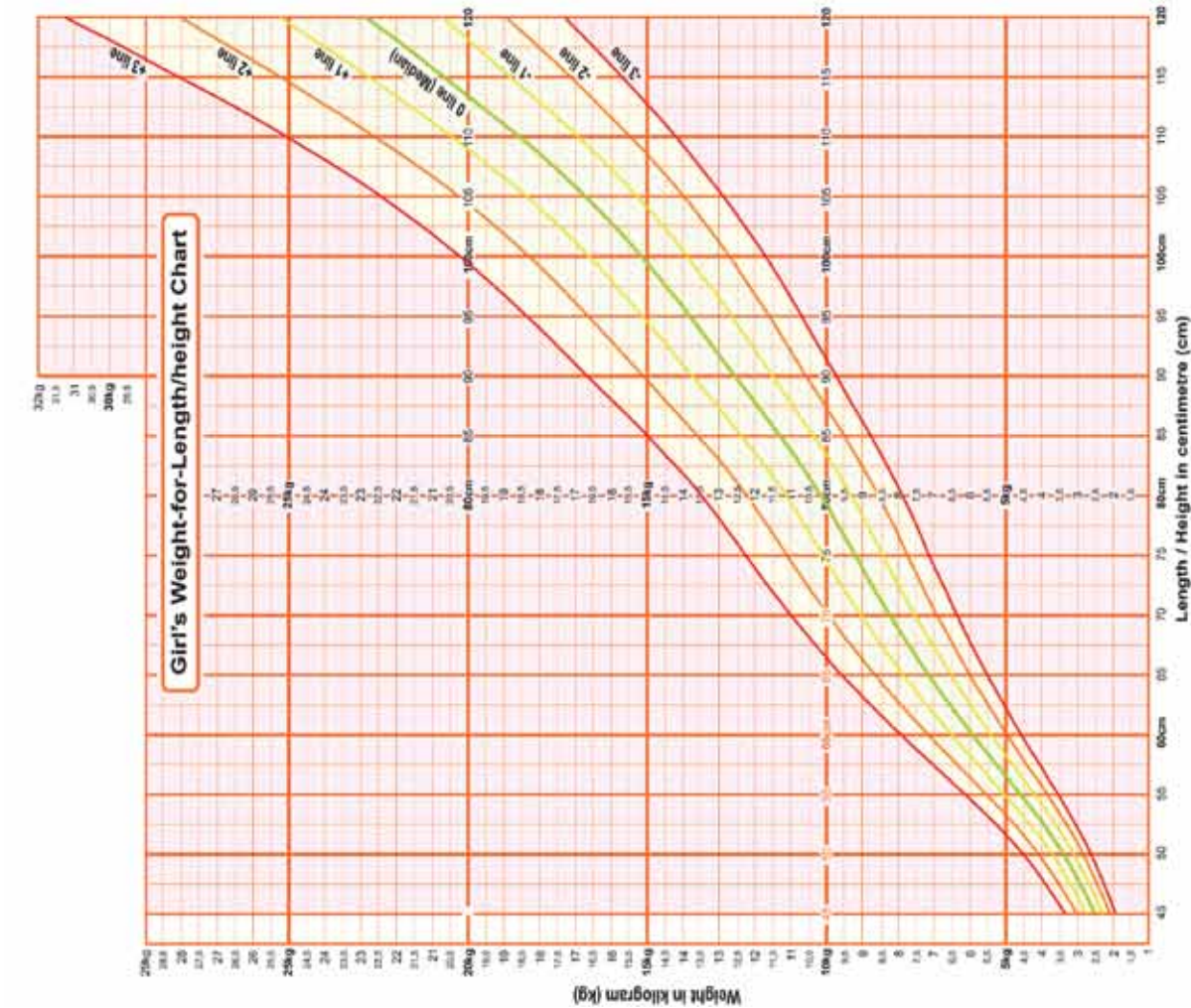
### Birth to 1 year





This Weight-for-Length/height Chart shows body-weight relative to length/height in comparison to the Median (the 0 z-score line).

- A boy whose weight-for-length/height is above the +3 line, is obese.
- A boy whose weight-for-length/height is above the +2 line, is overweight.
- A boy whose weight-for-length/height is below the -2 line, is wasted.
- A boy whose weight-for-length/height is below the -3 line, is severely wasted. Refer for urgent specialised care.



This Weight-for-Length/height Chart shows body-weight relative to length/height in comparison to the Median (the 0 z-score line).

- A girl whose weight-for-length/height is above the +3 line, is obese.
- A girl whose weight-for-length/height is above the +2 line, is overweight.
- A girl whose weight-for-length/height is above the +1 line, shows possible risk of overweight.
- A girl whose weight-for-length/height is below the -2 line, is wasted.
- A girl whose weight-for-length/height is below the -3 line, is severely wasted. Refer for urgent specialised care.

# NUTRITION RISK SCORE - USED IN SOUTH AFRICA

## CHILDREN: BIRTH – 14 YEARS

COLUMN 1 NUTRITION RISK SCORE	COLUMN 2 ASSESSMENT	COLUMN 3 SUPPLEMENTATION	COLUMN 4 FOLLOW-UP OR EXIT CRITERIA	COLUMN 5 REFERRAL																																												
<p>Is this child malnourished?</p> <p><b>1. Present Weight 0-3 years (RTHC)</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Following a curve on the RTHC</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>Inadequate weight gain, growth faltering</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>≤3rd percentile or Z score -2 to -3</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>≤60% of expected weight or Z score -3 or less</td><td>6</td></tr> </table> <p><b>2-14 years (BMI)</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>≥50th percentile</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>&lt;50th percentile</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>≤25th percentile</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>&lt;3rd percentile</td><td>6</td></tr> </table> <p><b>2. Appetite</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Good (5 complete meals daily)</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>Poor (less than 3 full meals daily)</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Unable to eat (No food eaten in 2 days)</td><td>4</td></tr> </table> <p><b>3. Ability to Eat</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>No problems</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>Mild vomiting/diarrhoea</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>Difficulty swallowing/chewing</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Severe vomiting/diarrhoea</td><td>4</td></tr> </table> <p><b>4. WHO Stage of Infection</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Stage 1</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>Stage 2</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>Stage 3</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Stage 4</td><td>3</td></tr> </table> <p><b>5. Other Problems</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>None</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>TB &amp; other infections</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Social problems</td><td>2</td></tr> </table>	Following a curve on the RTHC	0	Inadequate weight gain, growth faltering	2	≤3rd percentile or Z score -2 to -3	4	≤60% of expected weight or Z score -3 or less	6	≥50th percentile	0	<50th percentile	2	≤25th percentile	4	<3rd percentile	6	Good (5 complete meals daily)	0	Poor (less than 3 full meals daily)	2	Unable to eat (No food eaten in 2 days)	4	No problems	0	Mild vomiting/diarrhoea	1	Difficulty swallowing/chewing	2	Severe vomiting/diarrhoea	4	Stage 1	0	Stage 2	1	Stage 3	2	Stage 4	3	None	0	TB & other infections	2	Social problems	2	<p>If the score is →</p> <p><b>0-3 Primary Intervention (Nutrition Education)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exclusive breastfeeding for 6 months</li> </ul> <p><b>Or</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exclusive formula feeding</li> <li>Appropriate eating practices to meet daily energy, protein and micronutrient requirements (nutrient density of meals and the amount to be eaten per meal)</li> <li>Food-drug interaction</li> <li>Safe food preparation</li> </ul> <p><b>4-5 Nutrition "At risk"</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start with primary intervention as above</li> <li>Monitor weight monthly</li> <li>Poor weight gain for &gt;1 consecutive visit go to column 3</li> <li>Good weight gain for 3 months go to column 4</li> </ul> <p><b>&gt;6 Food Supplementation</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start with primary intervention as above</li> <li>Reassess monthly</li> </ul>	<p><b>Nutritional supplement (1/3 of daily RDA)</b></p> <p><b>Children: Macronutrient supplement</b></p> <p><b>0 – 6 months</b> Exclusive breastfeeding or Exclusive Formula</p> <p><b>6 months – 1 year</b> 30g enriched maize meal/day (530kJ) = 1kg/month</p> <p><b>1 – 6 years</b> 100g enriched maize meal/day (1765kJ) = 3kg/month</p> <p><b>7 – 12 years</b> 150g enriched maize meal/day (2648kJ) = 4kg/month</p> <p><b>12 – 14 years</b> 200g enriched maize meal/day (3530kJ) = 6kg/month</p> <p><b>Multivitamin Supplementation</b></p> <p>As needed, do not exceed 100% RDA</p>	<p>If score &gt; 4 arrange follow-ups regularly, according to patients ARV schedule</p> <p>Monitor and evaluate closely</p> <p>At each follow-up, repeat Column 1 for the Nutrition Risk Score</p> <p><b>Stop nutritional supplements if the score is:</b></p> <p>0-3 score</p> <p><b>Or</b></p> <p>4-5 score plus good weight gain for 3 months</p>	<p><b>Checklist</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nutrition care chart completed</li> <li>Nutrition Risk score recorded</li> <li>Follow-up date</li> </ul> <p><b>Check appropriate grants</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pension</li> <li>Child support grants</li> <li>Care-dependency grant</li> <li>Foster care grant</li> </ul> <p><b>Available food support</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Food vouchers</li> <li>National food energy program</li> <li>DACEL starter packs</li> <li>Food gardens</li> </ul>
Following a curve on the RTHC	0																																															
Inadequate weight gain, growth faltering	2																																															
≤3rd percentile or Z score -2 to -3	4																																															
≤60% of expected weight or Z score -3 or less	6																																															
≥50th percentile	0																																															
<50th percentile	2																																															
≤25th percentile	4																																															
<3rd percentile	6																																															
Good (5 complete meals daily)	0																																															
Poor (less than 3 full meals daily)	2																																															
Unable to eat (No food eaten in 2 days)	4																																															
No problems	0																																															
Mild vomiting/diarrhoea	1																																															
Difficulty swallowing/chewing	2																																															
Severe vomiting/diarrhoea	4																																															
Stage 1	0																																															
Stage 2	1																																															
Stage 3	2																																															
Stage 4	3																																															
None	0																																															
TB & other infections	2																																															
Social problems	2																																															
	<p><b>Go to Column 2 →</b></p>	<p><b>Go to Column 4 →</b></p>	<p><b>Go to Column 3 →</b></p>	<p><b>Go to Column 5 →</b></p>																																												

# NUTRITIONAL MANAGEMENT

## OF HIV-RELATED SYMPTOMS

SYMPTOM/SIDE-EFFECT	POSSIBLE CAUSES	MANAGEMENT
<p><b>Nausea and Vomiting</b></p>	<p>Opportunistic Infections</p> <p>Acute Retroviral Syndrome (ARS)</p> <p>Illness due to poor hygiene</p> <p>Food Intolerance/s</p> <p>Medications</p> <p>ARVs: Zidovudine, Combivir, Didanosine</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide small, frequent meals</li> <li>• Feed foods such as soups, unsweetened porridge, and fruits such as bananas</li> <li>• Provide lightly salty and dry foods such as crackers and toast</li> <li>• Avoid spicy and fatty foods</li> <li>• Avoid carbonated drinks – opt for herbal teas with mint or fresh ginger</li> <li>• Provide liquids such as clean boiled water, diluted fruit juices and lemon water between meals and not with meals</li> <li>• Avoid taking medication on an empty stomach</li> <li>• Avoid child lying down immediately after eating</li> <li>• Encourage rest between meals</li> <li>• Cold foods may be better tolerated than warm ones</li> <li>• Sour/salty food may be better tolerated than sweet foods</li> <li>• Avoid cooking smells and foods with strong aroma such as garlic &amp; onions</li> <li>• For the breastfed child, continue breastfeeding</li> <li>• Teach the caregiver how to maintain good hydration by using oral rehydration solution</li> </ul>
<p><b>Loss of Appetite/Weight Loss</b></p>	<p>Chronic infection (HIV, TB)</p> <p>Medications</p> <p>Malnutrition</p> <p>Anxiety and depression</p> <p>Oral sores</p> <p>Changing or starting treatment</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try to stimulate appetite by offering favourite foods often</li> <li>• Avoid strong-smelling foods</li> <li>• If appetite loss is a result of illness, seek medical attention for treatment</li> <li>• Provide high energy, high protein liquids and fruit juices during the day and not with their meals</li> <li>• Children with a poor appetite should be encouraged to drink frequently; for example, sour milk, milk, custard, yoghurt, drinking yoghurt, soup or fruit juice</li> <li>• Make the food look and taste good, using colour and different texture to make the food more interesting</li> <li>• A child can be encouraged to eat by offering different foods and by making eating fun and a family occasion. Children that are left alone to eat do not eat as well as children that have company</li> <li>• Offer small, frequent meals to the child as often as needed throughout the day. Meal times do not need to be adhered to</li> <li>• High energy snack can be offered to the child e.g. fruit, dried fruit, peanuts, yoghurt or Mageu</li> <li>• Increase nutrient density of foods without visibly increasing volume of meal by adding peanut butter, skimmed milk powder, or eggs in soups or porridge</li> </ul>



SYMPTOM/SIDE-EFFECT	POSSIBLE CAUSES	MANAGEMENT
<p><b>Diarrhoea</b></p>	<p>Opportunistic Infections</p> <p>Common at initiation of treatment</p> <p>Non-HIV conditions (IBD, ulcerative colitis)</p> <p>Poor absorption of and intolerance to nutrient</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure correct hygiene</li> <li>• Provide adequate fluids (soups, diluted fruit juices, boiled water, rice water and light herbal teas) to avoid dehydration</li> <li>• Avoid strong citrus fruits (orange, lemon) because they may irritate the stomach</li> <li>• Promote consumption of foods rich in soluble fibre (millet, potatoes, banana, peas, and lentils) to help retain fluids</li> <li>• Consume fermented foods such as porridges, maas and yogurt instead of milk</li> <li>• Consume easily digestible foods such as rice, bread, millet, maize porridge, potato, sweet potato, and crackers</li> <li>• Eat small amounts of food frequently and continue to eat after illness to recover weight and nutrient loss</li> <li>• Omit gas-forming food such as cabbage, onions, carbonated soft drinks (sodas)</li> <li>• Avoid insoluble fibre such as that in whole grain foods and beans</li> </ul>
<p><b>Oral Candidiasis(Thrush)/ Oral Sores</b></p>	<p>Infection</p> <p>Immunosuppression</p> <p>Antibiotic therapy</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try soft, non-irritating foods such as scrambled eggs, custard, pureed pumpkin, paw-paw or porridge</li> <li>• Fermented food like maas &amp; yoghurt may provide relief</li> <li>• Suck lump of ice or have ice cold drink or ice lollies before a meal</li> <li>• Practice good oral hygiene</li> <li>• Appropriately add custard to reduce acidity</li> <li>• Avoid sticky or dry foods such as peanut butter, popcorn, roasted nuts or dry toast</li> <li>• Avoid sweet or sugary drinks</li> <li>• Avoid acidic foods such as citrus fruit, vinegar, salty and spicy food</li> <li>• Eat cold or room-temperature foods</li> <li>• Provide plenty of liquids using a straw to avoid contact with affected part of mouth</li> <li>• Seek medical attention for treatment</li> <li>• Rinse mouth with boiled warm salt water after eating to reduce irritation and keep infected areas clean so yeast cannot grow</li> <li>• Continue breastfeeding where applicable</li> <li>• Continue exclusive cup feeding where applicable</li> <li>• Give paracetamol half an hour before solid feeds or try topical anaesthetic</li> <li>• Give cold puree enriched soups that are bland in taste</li> </ul>

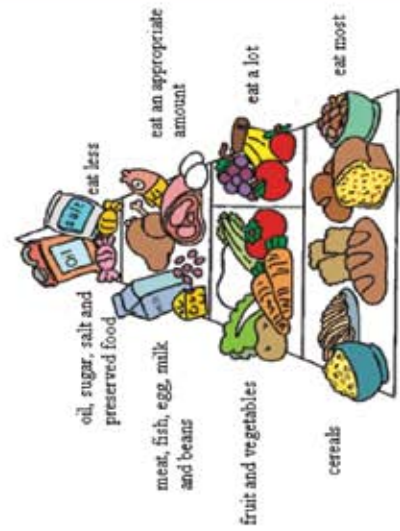


SYMPTOM/SIDE-EFFECT	POSSIBLE CAUSES	MANAGEMENT
<b>Constipation</b>	<p>Inadequate fibre or fluid intake</p> <p>Antibiotics</p> <p>Iron supplementation</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase dietary fibre by increasing consumption of wholegrain products, fruit and vegetables</li> <li>• Increase water intake to at least 4 glasses per day</li> <li>• Provide frequent small meals</li> <li>• Encourage physical activity</li> </ul>
<b>Anaemia</b>	<p>Acute illnesses i.e. malaria</p> <p>Nutritional deficiency</p> <p>Opportunistic infections</p> <p>Drugs (cotrimoxazole, Zidovudine and other ARVs)</p> <p>Auto-immune haemolysis, parvovirus infections and direct effect of HIV infection on the bone marrow</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eat more iron-rich foods such as animal products (eggs, fish, meat, and liver) green leafy vegetables (collard greens, spinach), legumes (beans, lentils, groundnuts), nuts, oil seeds and fortified cereals</li> <li>• Take iron supplements</li> <li>• If available, take one iron tablet once a day with some food. Take with a source of vitamin C such as tomatoes or orange juice to help with absorption</li> <li>• Drink fluids to avoid constipation</li> <li>• Treat malaria and hookworm</li> <li>• Avoid giving dairy products, tea and bran with meals rich in iron, as these reduce iron absorption</li> </ul>



## Enjoy A Balanced Lifestyle

- Be as active as you can
- Enjoy a variety of food
- Make starchy foods the basis of most meals
- Eat vegetables and fruits daily
- Drink lots of clean, safe water
- Eat fat in moderation
- Use salt sparingly
- Eat beans, lentils and soya regularly
- You can eat meat, chicken, fish and eggs everyday
- **DO NOT** drink alcohol
- **DO NOT** smoke



**For more information:**  
**ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)**  
 4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
 Joubert Extension  
 Braamfontein

**Tel: 011 547 5000**

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License. To view a copy of this license, visit: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-3-7



# Eating When Pregnant And Breastfeeding





It is important to eat correctly when you are pregnant because your **baby gets essential nutrients from you.**

#### **Some Important Tips For Your Diet:**

- Eating breakfast is important
- Avoid skipping meals
- Drink 8 glasses of water daily. It will help prevent constipation and bladder infections
- Eat well, but remember you are **NOT** eating for two - being overweight when you are pregnant may cause problems
- Eat foods rich in iron, calcium and vitamin C such as green leafy vegetables, liver, low-fat dairy products, vegetables and fruit

**It is recommended that all pregnant and breastfeeding women include the following in their diet:**

- An additional 60g of protein per day such as half a cup of dried beans, a small piece of chicken or fish, a tablespoon of peanut butter or grated cheese or yogurt
- An additional 1200 kJ (300 calories) which is equal to one slice of bread with margarine
- Increase calcium intake by drinking an extra glass of low-fat milk per day

## **DEALING WITH COMMON PROBLEMS**

The following are some common complaints during pregnancy. Adjusting your diet may help.



### **Nausea And Vomiting**

- Eat dry ginger, ginger biscuits or a piece of bread when you wake up
- Have water and other drinks between meals
- Avoid being around during the preparation of food if this makes you nauseous
- Reduce fatty, rich meals and rather eat cold snacks instead of warm food



### **Heartburn**

- Eat small meals more often during the day and avoid large meals
- Avoid fried, fatty and spicy food
- Be a clever cook! Prepare meals using little or no fat by steaming, baking or grilling food instead of frying
- Do not lie down soon after eating

### **Constipation**

- Drink lots of clean, safe water every day
- Eat plenty of fresh vegetables and fruit
- Eat lots of fibre-rich foods such as whole-wheat bread, dried beans, and high-fibre cereals
- Do moderate exercise for 30 minutes 3 times per week
- Avoid using laxatives

### **Cravings**

- Strange cravings for certain foods or other substances like sand, ash or pencils are usually due to a lack of a nutrient in your body. You must eat a varied, healthy diet
- Do not eat harmful non-food products

## **WHEN BREASTFEEDING**

Eating healthily while breastfeeding will give you energy, make sure your breast milk has all the nutrients for your baby and help with your recovery after the pregnancy.



- Eat in response to hunger and include healthy snacks
- Drink water and fruit juices in response to thirst

## Types of Breast Milk

- **Colostrum:** A yellow, sticky fluid that comes out in the first few days after birth. This is very good for your baby's immunity and it is very important that the baby should drink it!
  - **Fore milk** (first milk during feed) quenches your baby's thirst
  - **Hind milk** (produced after the fore milk with each feed) helps your baby gain weight and grow
- Always **first empty one breast** before feeding from the other!

## When Breastfeeding

- You may express your breast milk and leave it in a closed container for someone else to feed your baby with a cup or a spoon
- **Expressed breast milk will stay fresh for 8 hours at a cool temperature outside the fridge**
- Babies are likely to develop nipple confusion when given the breast **and** a bottle with a teat. This may cause you to struggle with breastfeeding later on



**IMPORTANT**  
**Breastfeeding needs patience and practice**



# Breastfeeding

# Your Baby

## For more information:

**ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)**

**4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
Joubert Extension  
Braamfontein**

**Tel: 011 547 5000**

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License.

To view a copy of this license, visit  
<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-4-4





## Breast Milk Is A Complete Feed And Offers Many Benefits For You And Your Baby

### What Milk Does My Baby Need?

- From birth to 6 months all your baby needs is breast milk
- If your baby is **exclusively breastfed** this means **ONLY** breast milk and

#### NO:

- water
- infant formula
- food
- baby porridge
- rooibos tea
- gripe water

A baby who is exclusively breastfed will feed at least **8-12 times in 24 hours**, including night feeds. Feed your baby often and do not time the feeds.

### IMPORTANT

**If you are HIV infected and you are breastfeeding, it is very important that you do so EXCLUSIVELY!**

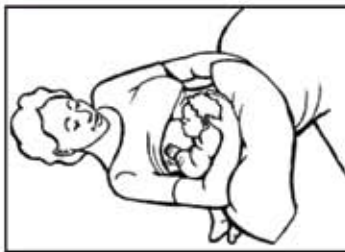
**Remember to discuss ARV's for you and/or your baby with your health worker!**

## How Do I Hold My Baby When I Breastfeed?



### The Cradle Hold

- Cradle the baby's head in the bend of your arm
- Use a chair or pillows for support
- Tuck the baby's arm under yours



### The Underarm Hold

- The baby faces you with nose level to your nipple and feet pointing to the back
- Use a pillow and support the baby's shoulders, neck and head with your hand



### The Lying Down Hold

- For support, use pillows for your back
- Try to keep body straight and do not bend forward
- Bring your baby as close to the breast as possible so that he/she does not stretch to reach your nipple
- This is a less painful position if you have had a caesarean delivery

## Where Should My Baby's Mouth Be On My Breast?



### Good attachment



### Poor attachment

## Good Attachment

- Make sure that the baby takes the **nipple AND areola** (brown area around the nipple) into the mouth
- Less of the areola should be showing below the baby's mouth than above it
- The baby's mouth must be wide open
- The baby's chin must be touching the breast
- The baby's nose must be against the breast
- The baby's lips should be curled outward
- Baby taking slow deep sucks and feeding comfortably
- Suckling should be comfortable and without pain



## Introduce Solid Foods At 6 Months

This becomes necessary when a baby starts to need milk plus food to support its growth and should start at **6 months** and **NOT before then**. See the pamphlet called "*Introducing Solid Foods to My Baby At 6 Months*".

### If You Have Been Exclusively Formula

#### Feeding:

Continue to give the formula by cup and slowly start to add solid foods.

### If You Have Been Exclusively Breastfeeding:

Continue to breastfeed with Nevirapine prophylaxis for your baby, and slowly add solid foods. Continue to breastfeed until your baby is 1 yr and you can provide a nutritionally safe milk substitute such as cow's milk or formula. Once these are available stop breastfeeding over 1 month. Continue giving Nevirapine prophylaxis to your baby for 1 week after you have stopped breastfeeding.

#### Important:

- Take ARV's for your health if prescribed by your health worker
- Test your baby for HIV at 6 weeks and 18 months unless he/she is sick—in which case test **earlier**
- Once you stop breastfeeding do not give any breast milk again

For more information:  
ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)

4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
Joubert Street Extension  
Braamfontein

Tel: 011 547 5000

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License. To view a copy of this license, visit:

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-8-2



# How Should I Feed My Baby If I Am HIV Positive?



health  
Department of Health  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



USAID  
FOR THE PEOPLES OF THE WORLD





**Uninfected mothers and mothers who do not know their HIV status are encouraged to exclusively breastfeed their babies for the first 6 months and to continue until the child is 2 years or older.**

**EXCLUSIVE BREASTFEEDING** means ONLY breast milk is given

**NO water, food or traditional medicine is allowed!**



**How Should I Feed My Baby If I Am HIV Positive (HIV+)?**

This is a very important decision which only you, as the mother, can make after consultation with your health worker. Your decision must be based on your home circumstances, family and community support. There is no absolutely safe way to feed your baby as:

- Formula feeding can make a baby very sick if not made or given **safely and correctly**
- **HIV is found in breast milk and can be transmitted to your baby.** This may cause your baby to become HIV+. Mothers on **ARV's** and who **breastfeed exclusively** have a very small chance of passing HIV to their babies compared to those who **mix feed without ARV's**

**Mixed feeding** means feeding your baby breast milk as well as infant formula or any other foods or liquids at the same time!

Your decision about how you are going to feed your baby should be based on your ability to give infant formula safely within your individual circumstances.

Answer Yes (Y) or No (N) to the following questions. Your answers will help you to choose either **exclusive breastfeeding** or **exclusive formula feeding**:

QUESTION	Y	N
Will you be able to cope with the stigma or discrimination from family or your community who might see formula feeding as proof that you are HIV+ or as an unusual way to feed your baby?		
Will you be able to safely and correctly prepare formula feeds?		
Do you always have enough time to safely and correctly prepare formula feeds?		
Will you always be able to buy the formula even if the clinic runs out?		
Is there a shop nearby where you can buy the formula in an emergency?		
Do you always have the following: clean tap water close to your home, a method of boiling water, soap for washing your hands and sterilizing feeding utensils (cups/bottles)?		
Do you have a working refrigerator inside your home to store prepared feeds?		

**If you answered NO to ANY of the questions, it is recommended that you exclusively breastfeed for the first 6 months of the babies life.**

**Ask your health workers about Nevirapine prophylaxis for your baby during breastfeeding.**

Remember that breast milk is the perfect food for a baby and babies that are breastfed do not get sick as often as babies that are formula fed.

**If you answered YES to ALL of the questions, you may opt to exclusively formula feed for the first 6 months of the child's life.**

**Your baby still needs Nevirapine prophylaxis for 6 weeks.**

Regardless of how you are feeding your baby, discuss ART for your own health with your health worker.

**What Should I Do if My Baby Has Already Tested HIV+?**

- It is best to **exclusively breastfeed** for the **first 6 months** and to continue to breastfeed even once you start giving solid foods at 6 months. Continue breastfeeding until your baby is 2 years old
- If you have been formula feeding, you may choose to start breastfeeding again because breast milk is healthier for your baby
- Follow Guidelines for HIV-positive infants and **start ART as soon as possible**

This pamphlet is **NOT** a substitute for infant feeding counselling.

Your health worker remains responsible for helping you to make an informed choice!



Should you use a bottle for mixing the formula, ensure that all your utensils are **cleaned and sterilised** as described:



**Step 1:** Wash bottles, teats and caps thoroughly with soap and warm water.



**Step 2:** Use salt or sugar to clean the teat by placing it in the teat and rubbing.



**Step 3:** Now boil all the utensils in water for 10 minutes. Boil the teat for 5 minutes only. Allow the utensils to stand and air dry on a clean surface. **Do not use a cloth to dry!**



**Step 4:** Pour in the correct amount of previously boiled water. Allow to cool.

**Always add the water before the powder**



**Step 5:** Scoop the powder with the scoop provided in the tin. Level the powder by scraping the back of a clean knife over the scoop



**Step 6:** Close the bottle and close the lid. Shake until the powder is completely dissolved

**Tip: You may mix the formula in a bottle and then use a cup to feed it to the baby!**

**For more information:**  
ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)

4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
Joubert Extension  
Braamfontein

Tel: 011 547 5000

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License.  
To view a copy of this license, visit:

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-5-1



# Cup Feeding Is Safer Than Bottles!



health  
Department:  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



USAID  
FROM THE AMERICAN PEOPLE



Mothers are encouraged to give their babies only breast milk for the **first 6 months** and to continue giving breast milk until the baby is 2 years or older.

## CUP FEEDING

Mothers may decide to **cup feed**, rather than bottle feed, for various reasons:

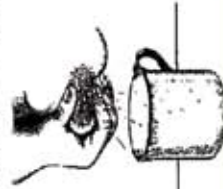
- Cups are **easier to clean** than bottles and the chance of the baby getting sick from germs is a lot less
- **Someone else can cup feed** your expressed breast milk to the baby when you are not available
- Mothers often **pay more attention** to their babies while cup feeding than while bottle feeding
- Using a cup causes **less feeding confusion** for the baby because there is no confusion between the nipple and the bottle teat
- Your **baby can decide** how fast or slow he/she would like to drink when using a cup

**Even very small babies can feed well from a cup**

### Step 1: Expressing your breast milk

Wash your hands and the container. Sit comfortably and relax. Feel for little lumps on the edge of the dark part of the breast with your forefinger and thumb.

Gently press back on the lumps and squeeze the milk toward the nipple. Do not let your fingers rub or slide over the skin. Rotate your fingers to empty the whole breast.



### Step 2: Feeding by cup

- Ensure that the baby is awake enough to be fed
- Wrap the baby so the cup will not be knocked out of your hand by the baby
- Support the baby in an upright sitting position
- Place the rim of the cup on the baby's lower lip, with the edges just touching the upper lip
- Tip the cup slowly so that the milk is just touching the baby's upper lip



- The baby usually automatically sips the milk
- Allow time for the baby to swallow
- Allow the baby to rest between sips, but don't remove the cup from this position
- **Do not pour the milk into the baby's mouth, let the baby take it by itself**

**It is better for your baby to receive expressed breast milk or formula with a cup. Cup feeding is safer than bottle feeding!**

## FORMULA FEEDING

If you have decided not to breastfeed your baby for any reason, it is important that you prepare your baby's formula **safely and correctly**.

- Babies often get **diarrhoea** and may even die when utensils are not properly washed and sterilised
- If the formula is not mixed correctly it can cause a baby to not grow and develop adequately

Ensure that the cup is washed with soap and hot water **just before feeding**.



A measuring cup is useful for both making formula and feeding it!









After the first 6 months breast milk or formula alone is no longer enough for a baby. Your baby now needs **solid foods and other fluids** too.



### IMPORTANT

**Before 6 months,** all a baby needs is breast milk, or for special reasons, infant formula. This means **no water, baby porridge, baby food or any other foods are needed, except for prescribed medicines!**

### If you have been breastfeeding:

Are you HIV negative or do not know your HIV status? Continue breastfeeding even after solid foods have been introduced and continue this for up to 2 years. If you are infected with HIV, refer to the pamphlet called "*How should I feed my baby if I am HIV positive?*"

### If you have been formula feeding:

Formula should be continued **until 1 year** and followed by the introduction of full cream cow's milk and other dairy products

## HOW TO START GIVING SOLID FOODS

- Give the breast or some formula first, then offer some food
- Start with a teaspoonful of food
- This is new for your baby so he/she may turn his/her head away
- Do not force the baby to eat, be patient!
- Introduce only one food at a time. Once your baby knows the taste of that food, you may move on to the next food



## WHAT TO BEGIN WITH

- All foods must be mashed or pureed for children from 6 months to one year
- Start with soft porridge like maize meal or oats porridge (baby cereals are also fine, but expensive), seasonal vegetables and fruit such as pumpkin, carrots, potato, butternut, banana and grated apple
- Start giving vegetables before fruit because fruit has natural sugars that are sweeter than vegetables. This may cause a baby to refuse vegetables after first having tasted fruit

## SOME HANDY TIPS

- Keep foods bland. Do not flavour with sugar, salt or herbs and spices
- Prepare small portions
- Do not expect your baby to finish a bowl of food every time
- From about **8 months** you can begin to give more coarse foods, i.e. bread and meat (cut into cubes or minced). This is important so that your baby gets used to different textures of food and learns to chew
- Fruit juice must be diluted -  $\frac{1}{4}$  cup of juice with  $\frac{3}{4}$  cup of water

## FOODS TO AVOID



- **Before 1 year:**
  - ◊ Cow's milk (full cream, low-fat, 2% or fat-free) must **not** be given
  - ◊ Rooibos tea must **not** be given
  - ◊ It is better to introduce fish, cow's milk, peanut butter and egg white **after 1 year** because these foods may cause allergies if given too early
- Sweets, fizzy drinks, biscuits, crisps and chocolates should not be given as a reward
- Coffee and tea must not be given

## Tips For Feeding Children

- Be patient and do not force the child to eat
- Provide small meals with favourite foods and give these often
- Prepare foods that are soft, moist and easy to chew especially when the child has mouth sores
- Feed liquids and soups using a straw when the child has thrush
- Give yogurt, buttermilk or *maas* instead of milk, if the child has diarrhoea
- Make meals attractive and include foods of different colours
- Supplements that you get from the clinic should not replace meals, but add to them
- If the child is fed formula, make sure you know how to mix the formula safely and correctly

**REMEMBER**

**Breastfeeding is best for ALL children!**



# Feeding The HIV Positive Child



**For more information:**  
ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)  
4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
Joubert Extension Street  
Braamfontein

**Tel: 011 547 5000**

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License. To view a copy of this license, visit:

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-7-5





It is important for caregivers to make sure that children with HIV, and other infections and illnesses, **eat well and often**. Looking after their diet is one of the ways to help them feel healthier and better sooner.

#### **Start Early With Good Nutrition**

- It is far harder to regain good health than to keep it; therefore start to feed the child healthy food as early as possible (from 6 months onwards)

#### **Eat A Variety Of Foods**

- No single food is either good or bad by itself
- It is best to eat many different types of food as each one has different nutrients that are needed by the body

#### **Make Starchy Foods The Basis Of Every Meal**

- Starchy foods are relatively cheap and supply plenty of energy
- Foods in this group include bread, porridges, rice, sweet potatoes, *pap*, sump and pasta
- Other food groups should be eaten with the starchy foods to provide a balance

#### **Provide Plenty Of Vegetables and Fruit**

- These foods are especially important as they help fight against infections

- Aim to eat

**5 portions** of vegetables or fruit per day and include a variety of them



#### **Eat Meat And Dairy Products Daily**

- Eat a variety of animal protein such as meat, chicken, fish, eggs, milk, cheese and other dairy products
- These foods provide the body with proteins to build muscle and keep the body strong



#### **Eat Vegetable Sources of Protein Often**

- Eat foods such as peanuts, peanut butter, dried beans, soya beans, peas and lentils regularly
- These vegetable sources of protein are cheaper than animal protein and may be used to replace meat and dairy products

#### **Sugars, Fats And Oils Add Energy**

- **Children living with HIV need more food and energy to stay healthy**
- Add oil, butter, margarine and peanut butter to foods to make them more energy rich, especially if the child is sick and has a fever
- These foods may be included to enrich the diet but should be used sparingly if the child is overweight



#### **Use Salt Sparingly**

- Use salt as little as possible when cooking
- Many foods such as chips, Aromat, and tinned foods have hidden salt so always read food labels
- Use lemon juice, vinegar, fresh herbs and spices to flavour food instead of salt



#### **Provide Plenty Of Safe, Clean Water**

- Children should drink 2-4 glasses of water per day and more when it is very hot
- Water from taps is usually safe in our country
- If water from a borehole, river or well is used, it needs to be boiled first

#### **Use the bleach method to make water safe if it cannot be boiled:**

- Add one teaspoon of bleach to 25 litres of water
- Mix well and let it stand for at least 2 hours before drinking



## RULES OF FOOD SAFETY

- Always wash fruit and vegetables with clean water before eating them
- If possible, use only pasteurised milk bought from a shop
- Throw away mouldy cheese or left-over food that is no longer fresh or left out of the fridge for too long
- Do not eat raw eggs, meat, chicken or fish and ensure cooking until well done
- Keep cold foods cold and hot foods warm
- Make sure that cooked food bought on the street is from a clean and safe source



**For more information:**  
ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV  
Outcomes)  
4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
Joubert Extension  
Braamfontein

Tel: 011 547 5000

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License.  
To view a copy of this license, visit  
<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-1-3



# Food Hygiene And Safety



health  
Department  
of Health  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

USAID  
FROM THE AMERICAN PEOPLE



## IT STARTS WITH YOU!

- **Always** wash hands thoroughly with soap and water before preparing food, especially after using the toilet, sneezing or touching pets
- Bath or shower everyday to ensure personal hygiene
- Cover wounds and sores with a bandage or plaster before touching food



## ALWAYS DRINK AND USE CLEAN, SAFE WATER

In South Africa, tap water is generally safe to drink



Use the **bleach method** to make water safe if it cannot be boiled

### The Bleach Method:

- Add **one teaspoon of bleach** to 25 litres of water
- Mix well and let it stand for at least **2 hours** before using

## CARRYING FOOD HOME

- Always place food in clean bags, containers or trolleys
- Do not put cleaning materials such as bleach or soap powder in the same bag as food
- Get bought food to where you will store it as soon as possible
- Place frozen/chilled foods together and separate them from other unfrozen food
- Handle perishable products with greater care as they can spoil easily. Keep them cool, refrigerated or frozen where necessary
- To keep food cold during transportation, it may help to wrap it in a newspaper or to carry a cooler bag



## FOOD FIRST

- Always check the expiry date of food before purchasing it
- 
- 
- Wash all dishes and kitchen surfaces with hot, soapy water
  - Use a separate chopping board when cutting raw meat, fish and chicken. If you only have one, then make sure you wash it in-between cutting different foods.
  - Store leftovers in the fridge. If you do not have a fridge only prepare small amounts of food that does not have to be stored
  - **Do not store raw and cooked food together**, e.g. raw chicken and cooked chicken should be stored separately
  - Keep food left outside covered so that flies and germs cannot get in

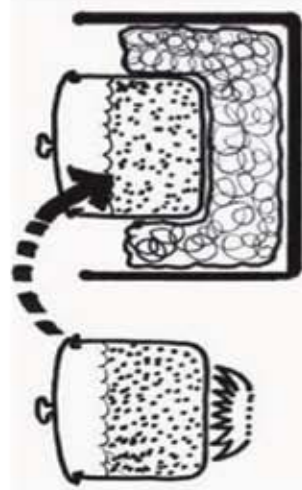


### Save Fuel With A Hay Box

A hay box is a clever, healthy and cheap way to prepare foods that need to be cooked for a long time. It is a great way to save on fuel as you only have to cook the food for a short while and then place the hot food inside the box for the cooking to continue.

Follow these easy steps to make your own hay box:

- Use a box made of wood or a hard material that will not melt
- Line with straw, newspaper, foam, old blankets or scrap material
- Heat your food in a pot with a lid until it starts to boil and cook for 5 minutes
- Without opening the lid, place the pot inside the box and cover until snug and well-wrapped to continue cooking
- Place a lid on the box
- Leave until food is cooked. It is important when cooking meat to heat it on the stove before serving



**For more information:**  
**ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)**  
4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
Joubert Extension  
Braamfontein

**Tel: 011 547 5000**

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License. To view a copy of this license, visit:

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-2-0



# Healthy Eating

# Does Not Have

# To Be Expensive!



health  
Department  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



USAID  
FROM THE AMERICAN PEOPLE



Department  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

You can be proud of yourself for making an effort to live well by following a healthy diet! By following some easy tips, **you do not have to spend a lot of money to eat healthily.**

**Here are some guidelines to consider:**

### **Plant Your Own Vegetables And Fruit**

- With seeds you can start your own vegetable garden so that your family has a supply of different vegetables
- This may be a new income because you can sell excess produce in your community
- If you don't have a large garden, plant seeds in any available container such as an old bath tub or old tyres cut in half



### **Protein From Sources Other Than Meat**

- If meat is too expensive to buy, **try other healthy protein sources** such as dried beans, lentils, soya mince, chickpeas, eggs, milk, peanuts and peanut butter
- You can also cook a little meat and add beans or soya to make it go further!



### **Forget Junk Food**

- Take-away and junk food is expensive and **many of these are not healthy**
- Rather use your money to buy cheaper, healthier foods that everyone in the family can share



### **Buy In Bulk**

- When meat is on sale, buy more than usual and store in a fridge or freeze if necessary
- The same may be done with products that stay fresher for longer such as certain tinned foods
- **Always check the expiry date!**



### **Share Food With A Neighbour Or Friend**

- It is a good idea to buy food in bulk and then to cook and share with a friend
- This way is cheaper as you can share the costs



### **Buy Food From Local Vendors Or Buy No-Name Brands**

- Branded products are usually more expensive than no-name brands and the **quality is just as good**

### **Use Leftovers**

- If you do not have a fridge, cook food in small amounts for one meal at a time
- A fridge is useful in storing leftover food to keep it fresh
- Be creative with leftovers, e.g. use leftover fruit to make fruit juice or add milk to make a milkshake

### **Plan Ahead**

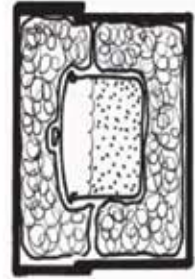
- It is useful to plan meals ahead of time as this will help you shop around for the best price and buy only what you need

### **Healthy, Balanced Eating Need Not Be Expensive**

- A healthy diet means eating lots of vegetables, fruit, low-fat proteins (see Protein From Sources Other Than Meat), and high-energy carbohydrates like rice, *pap*, bread and pasta
- **Do not spoil children with sweets, chips and junk foods as these are expensive and not healthy**

### **Use Cheaper, Healthier Cooking Methods**

- Cook food without oil or butter where possible and **rather steam foods**
- Use methods that save fuel such as a hay box





### Eat Food And Drinks Containing Sugar Sparingly And Not Between Meals

- Most people love sugar, sweets and everything that is sweet
- **Too much sugar is not good for us!**



- Make a habit of not taking food and beverages containing sugar often - **save them for special occasions!**

### If You Drink Alcohol, Drink It Sensibly

- Alcoholic drinks provide no nutrients for the body
- **Drinking in excess is not good for your health**
- If you do drink, do so in **moderation** and when you are **not going to drive**

- **Pregnant and breastfeeding women should not drink at all!** Alcohol is very dangerous to the baby



**For more information:**  
ECHO (Enhancing Children's HIV Outcomes)  
4<sup>th</sup> Floor, CMI Building  
Joubert Extension  
Braamfontein

Tel: 011 547 5000

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License.

To view a copy of this license, visit:  
<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/>

ISBN 978-0-9814369-0-6



# South African Guidelines For Healthy Eating



health  
Department of Health  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



USAID  
FROM THE AMERICAN PEOPLE



Department of Health  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

USAID  
FROM THE AMERICAN PEOPLE

Food is used inside our bodies for energy and to help the body repair itself. It is therefore important for all of us to take care of what we eat.

**These guidelines are best for all persons older than 7 years and who are healthy and well. Make them part of your life to feel healthier and better!**

### Enjoy A Variety Of Foods

- No single food provides all the nutrients we need and it is best to enjoy many different foods



### Be Active

- Regular activity helps us to stay fit, to control our weight and to keep our hearts and body healthy
- You don't have to join a gym!
- Aim to do at least **30 minutes** of exercise **every day** by taking brisk walks, doing house or garden work, or doing a fun-filled activity like dancing



### Drink Lots Of Clean, Safe Water

- Did you know that every part of our bodies contains large amounts of water?
- Water is the best and cheapest drink around
- It is important so drink **6 - 8 glasses of clean, safe water every day**

### Make Starchy Foods The Basis Of Most Meals

- Starchy foods provide the body with energy and other important nutrients
- Starchy foods, like maize meal (or pap), samp, bread, rice, pasta, potatoes and sweet potatoes can be enjoyed daily in moderation!

### Eat Plenty Of Vegetables And Fruit Every Day

- Most people know that **eating vegetables and fruit have many benefits**, and yet don't eat enough of them
- These foods are especially important as they provide **vitamins** that help the body fight against illness
- Where possible, enjoy them raw and unpeeled in salads and with other food
- **Always wash before eating!**
- Aim to eat **different types and colours** of vegetables and fruit every day
- Aim for at least **5 portions** of either vegetables or fruit daily



### Eat Dried Beans, Peas, Lentils, Peanuts Or Soya Regularly

- Eat foods such as peanuts, peanut butter, jugo beans and soya beans, **regularly**
- These are good sources of plant protein and are cheaper than animal protein and may be used instead of meat

### Chicken, Fish, Meat, Milk Or Eggs Can Be Eaten Daily

- These are all animal-based foods and are good sources of protein
- **Be sure to remove the skin from chicken and visible fat from meat!**

### Eat Fats Sparingly

- Fats are very concentrated sources of energy and may easily exceed your requirements
- Fatty food are also very tasty and it is easy to eat too much
- **Steam, grill or bake food using little or no fat instead of frying in oil or butter**
- Some foods contain healthier fats and may be included, eg: pilchards, tuna, nuts, avocado, olives and vegetable oil (use or eat small amounts)
- **Avoid lots of animal fats**, e.g.: butter and cream
- Some foods contain hidden fats, e.g. coffee creamer, sauces, processed and junk foods

### Use Salt Sparingly

- Use salt as little as possible in cooking
- Remember that many foods, like chips, peanuts, tinned foods and instant soups and sauces, contain hidden salt
- Always read food labels
- Use lemon juice, vinegar, fresh herbs and spices to flavour food instead of salt



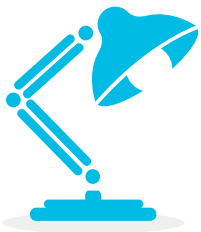


# DEVELOPMENT



# DEVELOPMENT

The celebration of childhood involves witnessing the many developmental milestones a child achieves over time. Developmental milestones are the skills children gain as they grow and play. Children develop skills in language, fine motor function, gross motor function and in tasks they need to master in order to achieve independence. Unfortunately, HIV can have very negative impacts on this process from both direct and indirect causes. An estimated 40-60% of HIV-infected children have some degree of developmental impairment due to neurological involvement. These can range from mild cognitive disorders to severe and debilitating psychomotor impairments. Any neurological involvement due to HIV is a WHO Stage 4 disease, therefore children with delayed milestones, brisk reflexes in the lower limbs and microcephaly are eligible for ART. Detection and early intervention are essential to ensure children reach their fullest potential.



## **KEY MESSAGE:**

***Monitoring developmental achievements is an essential part of paediatric HIV care & support.***

Caregivers are experts in taking care of their children. A developmental milestone assessment should include a discussion about the child's development with the caregiver. Always take caregiver developmental concerns seriously as they know their child best. This chapter contains age-appropriate screening job aides which provide sample questions to guide this discussion. It is also important to ask questions about all developmental areas.

Assessing the child begins with observing the child as they enter your consultation room. Being familiar with normal development will assist you in identifying delays or abnormalities. Take note of the child's activities, behaviour, motor skills, as well as verbal and non-verbal communication with the caregiver. The age-appropriate screening job aides included in this section will assist you to assess the different developmental areas, namely:

- Gross motor
- Fine motor
- Communication
- Personal/Social

Assessment of school performance in older children can provide insight into possible cognitive learning disorders. Questions about play (how, when and with whom) can give insight into possible behavioural difficulties.

Finally, remember to obtain, document and interpret the head circumference in children less than 3 years of age. Head circumference is a proxy measurement for brain growth. Children with HIV encephalopathy often present with acquired microcephaly, or small head size for age.

#### **KEY MESSAGE:**

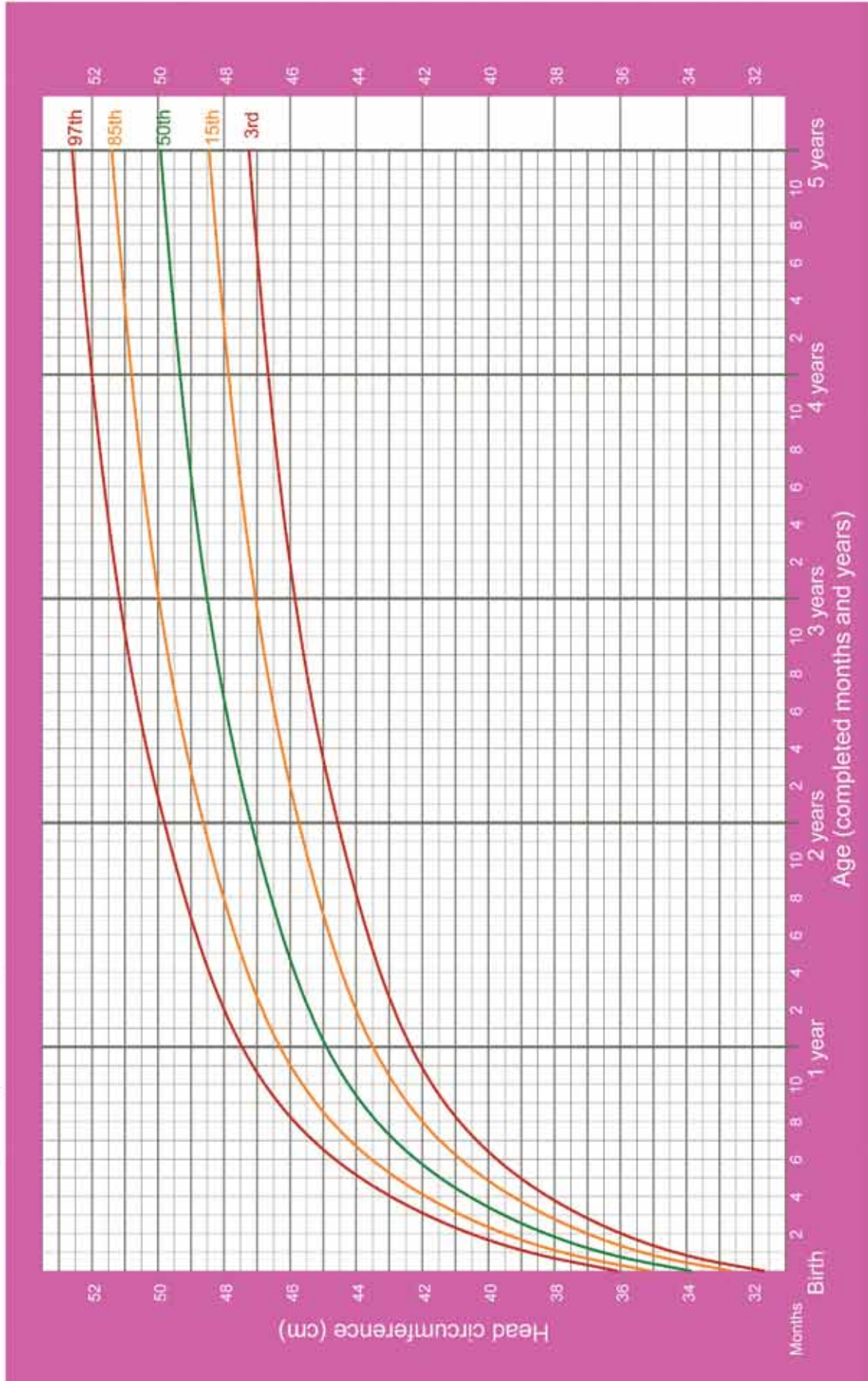
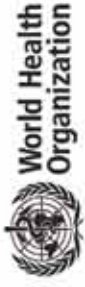


***Early referral of children with developmental delay to the rehabilitation team could improve the child's development and prevent disabilities. Remember that occupational and physiotherapy consultants can play an important role in supporting HIV infected children with developmental concerns. If in doubt, refer for an assessment.***



# Head circumference-for-age GIRLS

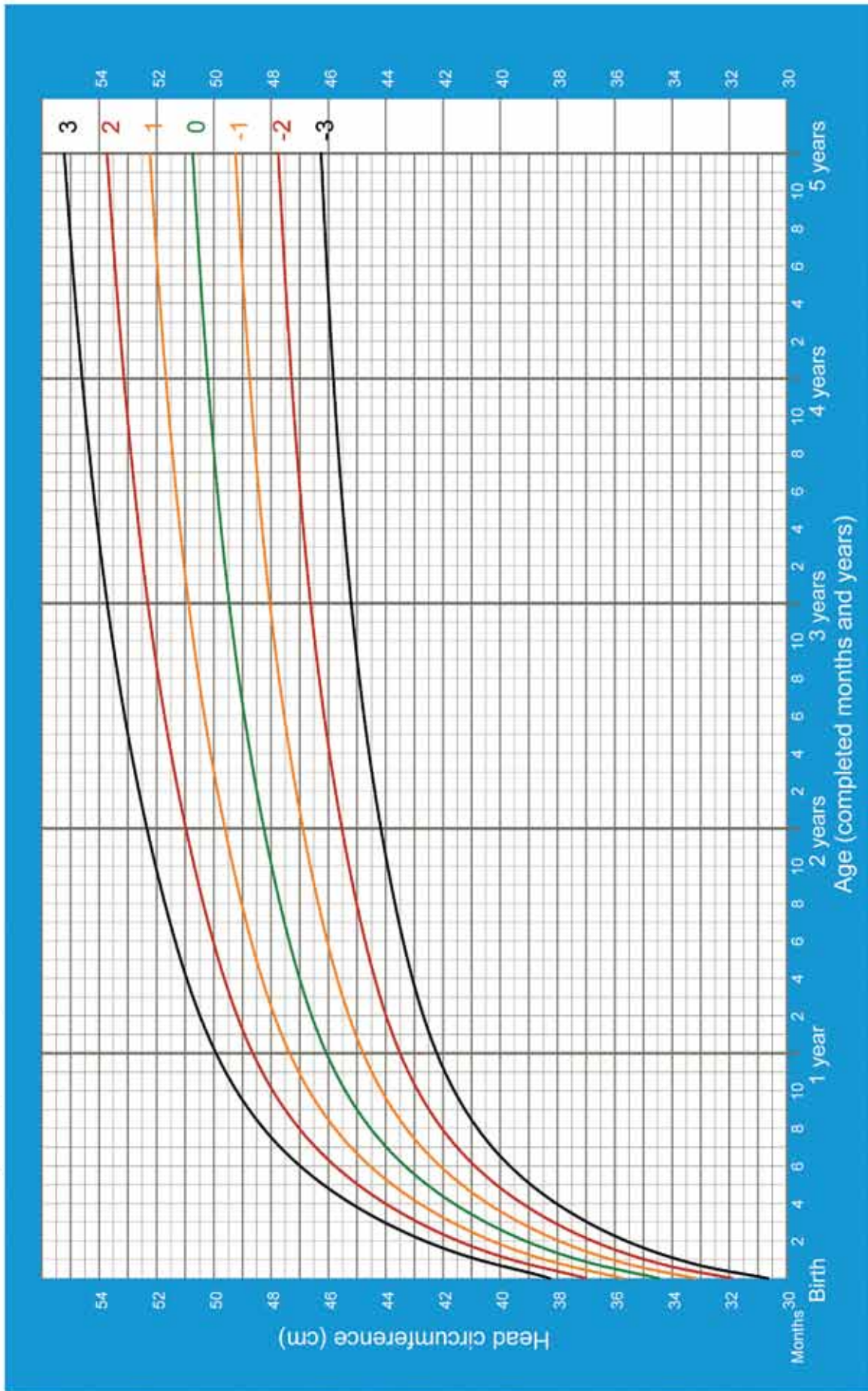
Birth to 5 years (percentiles)





# Head circumference-for-age BOYS

Birth to 5 years (z-scores)



WHO Child Growth Standards

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO				
<b>6 Weeks</b>	Poor hearing	Does your child get frightened by loud sounds?		refer				
		Does your baby move or turn his head when you talk to him?						
	Poor vision	Have you noticed a white spot on your child's eyes?	refer					
		Is your baby looking at your face during feeding?						
	Floppy	Does your baby try to lift his head up when you hold your baby against your shoulder?		refer				
Deformities present	Are there any body parts that look different than other children's?							
		Health Care Worker should undress and examine baby for any deformities						
<b>Comments:</b>		<table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 60%;"></td> <td style="width: 40%;"><b>Signature:</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td><b>Date:</b></td> </tr> </table>				<b>Signature:</b>		<b>Date:</b>
	<b>Signature:</b>							
	<b>Date:</b>							
		<p><b>Referred to:</b>                      ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service</p>						

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked; Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>3 months</b>	No visual fixation or following	Does the baby follow you when you move? /Follow a toy with his eyes?		refer
		Does your baby look at you during feeding?		refer
		Have you noticed a white spot on your baby's eyes?	refer	
	Poor hearing	Does your baby respond to sounds by turning, blinking or stop sucking?		refer
	Asymmetry of tone or movement	Does your child prefer to use one side (left or right) more than the other?		
		Is the child moving his arms more than his legs or vice versa?		
	Floppy/stiff	Do you struggle to change your baby's nappy, because the legs are stiff?		
		Is the baby reminding you of a rag doll or a new born baby?		
	Consistent fisting	Does your child open his hands to take your finger or a rattle?		
	Unable to turn or lift head	Is the baby able to turn his head sideways when lying on his tummy?		
	Is the baby able to lift his head when lying on his tummy?		refer	
Failure to smile	Does your baby smile when you talk or play with him?		refer	
Poor sucking and swallowing	Does your baby struggle with feeding e.g. struggle to suck the nipple/dummy?			
<b>Comments:</b>		<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service	<b>Signature:</b>	
			<b>Date:</b>	

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer.

JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>6 months</b>	Floppiness and poor head control	Can your baby sit if you hold his hands or put pillows around him?		refer
		Is the baby able to lift his head with his upper body when pulled to sit?		
	Baby is not rolling	Does your baby roll over from his tummy to his back and vice versa?		
		Does your baby help to hold his bottle or the breast with both hands?		
	Asymmetrical movements e.g. failure to use both hands	Does your baby pick up and play with a rattle or another toy? Both hands		refer
		Does your child lift both his feet and play with them with both hands?		refer
	Squint or blindness	Are you worried about your child's vision? Squint?		refer
		Does the baby follow an object from one side to another?		refer
	Hearing: failure to turn to sound	Does your baby turn his head to sounds?		refer
		Does your baby babble to get attention?		
Poor response to people	Does your baby cry differently when he is hungry, tired or sick?		refer	
	Does the baby laugh out loud?			
<b>Comments:</b>			<b>Signature:</b>	
			<b>Date:</b>	
		<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service		

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010



# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>9 months</b>	Unable to sit	Is your baby able to sit without support?		
	Not developing the crawling position	Is your baby able to lean forward and sit up again without falling over?		
		Can your baby roll over from his back or sides to his stomach?		refer
	Hand preference	Is your baby standing on his hands and knees, swaying forwards and backwards?		
		Does your child mostly use one hand?		
		Is your child able to bring both hands together in the middle of the body?		
	Fisting	Can your baby pass a toy from one hand to the other?		refer
		Do you struggle to open your baby's hands to clean them or to cut the nails?		
	Squint or blindness	Does your child reach out and pick up a toy with any given hand?		
		Are you worried about your child's vision? Squint?		refer
Hearing and speech	Does the baby follow an object from one side to another?			
	Does your baby stop and turn when you call his name?		refer	
Persistence of primitive reflexes	Does your baby babble using different sounds like "dadada" or "bababa"?		refer	
	Evaluate the Grasp reflex and the Routing reflex: Is it present?			
<b>Comments:</b>			<b>Signature:</b>	
			<b>Date:</b>	

**Referred to:**  
 ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>12 months</b>	Unable to bear weight on legs	If you hold your child, feet touching the ground: Is your child standing?		
		Does your child carry an equal amount of weight on both legs?		
	Not yet crawling and pulling to stand	Is your child crawling?		
		Does your child crawl to a chair and then pull himself up to standing?		
	Abnormal grasp	Can your child hold a block or a stone in each hand at the same time?		
		Can your child pick up a button or a small stone from the floor?		
	Failure to respond to sound	Do you have a very quiet child?		
		Does your baby imitate sounds and babbles "ma-ma-ma"?		
Feeding: Unable to start with solids independently	Does your child start to understand the meaning of some words? "No" "Bye"			
	Does your child struggle to swallow mashed solids?			
	Is your child able to pick up firm cooked food and eat it? Cooked carrots, chips			
<b>Comments:</b>		<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service	<b>Signature:</b>	
		<b>Date:</b>		

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>15 months</b>	Unable to bear weight on legs	If you hold your child, feet touching the ground: is your child standing?		
	Not yet walking	Does your child carry an equal amount of weight on both legs?		
	Struggle to change between positions	Is your child walking forward if held by one hand?		
		Is your child able to give a few steps independently (even if he is unsure)?		
		If your child is sitting on the floor, does he turn to reach toys behind him?		
	Abnormal grasp	Can your child sit down unaided from standing?		
		Are you worried about how your child's hands look?		
		Is your child able to release a toy (an object) if you ask him to?		
	Abnormal posture: floppy/spastic	Can your child hold a toy and play with it with the other hand?		
		Are you worried that your child doesn't look like other children the same age?		
Do you think your child struggles to move freely? Legs scissoring, arms stiff				
Failure to respond to sound	Do you think your child is floppy, reminding you of a rag doll?			
	Do you have a very quiet child?			
Not yet talking	Does your child turn to the sound when you talk to him if he did not see you?			
<b>Comments:</b>		Is your child saying at least 3 words with meaning?		

<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service	<b>Signature:</b>

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>18 months</b>	Failure to walk	Is your child able to walk (even if it is with a broad base)?		refer
	Struggle to change between positions	Can your child squat and stand up again?		
	Poor vision	Is your child able to walk, and then stop to bend over to pick something up?		
	No pincer grip (Unable to pick up small objects)	Are you worried about your child's vision?	refer	
		Is your child able to pick up a button between the thumb and another finger?		refer
		Is your child able to put a lid on a plastic container (e.g. lunchbox)?		
		Are you worried that your child doesn't look like other children the same age?		
	Abnormal posture: floppy/spastic	Do you think your child struggles to move freely? Legs scissoring, arms stiff		
	Poor hearing	Do you think your child is floppy, reminding you of a rag doll?		
	Inability to understand simple commands	Does your child have any problem with hearing?	refer	
	Does your child respond to a simple command like "Don't touch it!"?		refer	
	Does your child understand what "up", "down" or "under" mean?			
	Is your child able to say 5 different words with meaning?			
	Does your child use one word sentences? (2 or more word sentences are good)		refer	
<b>Comments:</b>				
		<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service		
		<b>Signature:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> _____		

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010



# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO				
<b>24 months (2years)</b>	Unable to understand simple commands	Does your child respond to a simple command like "Don't touch that!"?						
		Does your child understand what "up", "down" or "under" mean?						
	Cognition (learning) not developing	Do you sometimes worry that your child is not learning new things?						
		Can your child point to at least 5 body parts if you ask him to?						
	Not yet talking	Is your child using 2 word sentences e.g. "Mommy bottle"?						
		Does your child ask for food, drink or his favourite toy?						
	Poor gross motor coordination	Has your child started running? (If not running ask if the child is walking)						
	Poor fine motor development * Tell mother to stimulate and reassess at next visit	Can your child throw and catch a big ball? (thrown directly to the child)  Can your child open a wrapped sweetie with little help? (Not using teeth)  Does your child scribble with crayons on paper?						
<b>Comments:</b>	<table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="2"></td> <td><b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service</td> <td><b>Signature:</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td><b>Date:</b></td> </tr> </table>				<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service	<b>Signature:</b>		<b>Date:</b>
	<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service	<b>Signature:</b>						
		<b>Date:</b>						

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>36 months (3years)</b>	Using only single words (or not yet talking)	Was your child previously able to speak but can no longer do so?		
		Is your child using 3 word sentences e.g. "Mommy give bottle"?		
		Is your child able to have a simple conversation with you?		
	Cognition (learning) developing slowly	Do you sometimes worry that your child is not learning new things?		
		Does your child know his own name, gender and age (use finger to indicate age)		
	Ataxia (HCW must assess) Failure of muscle co-ordination resulting in irregular and jerky movements	Are you worried about the way your child moves?		
		Is your child moving like someone that drank too much?		
	Poor fine motor development	Can your child open a wrapped sweetie with little help? (Not using teeth)		
		Can your child draw a man with 4 parts?		
	Poor gross motor coordination	Can your child walk on a straight line forwards and backwards?		
Can your child throw and catch a big ball? (thrown directly to the child)				
Child still completely dependent	Does your child start to help with his own dressing?			
	Can your child eat with a spoon on his own?			
<b>Comments:</b>		<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service	<b>Signature:</b>	
				<b>Date:</b>

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE


Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>48 months (4years)</b>	Speech difficult to understand because of poor articulation or omission or substitution of consonants	Was your child previously able to speak but can no longer do so?		
		Do you and /or other people struggle to hear or understand your child?		
		Can your child say his own name, gender and age?		
	Poor fine motor development   — + / ○	Can your child draw the basic shapes? (See pictures on the left)		
		Can your child draw a man with 8 parts?		
	Poor gross motor development	Can your child run comfortably?		
		Can your child play a clapping game crossing one hand to the opposite side?		
	Cognition (learning) developing slowly	Do you sometimes worry that your child is not learning new things?		
		Does your child often just sit doing nothing, not interested in any play?		
		Can your child concentrate on one activity for 5-10 minutes?		
	No interest in play	Is your child sitting in the house and not playing with his friends?		
		Does your child play with children much younger than him/her?	Refer to OT	
<b>Comments:</b>		<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service	<b>Signature:</b>  <b>Date:</b>	

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010

# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAG SCREENING FOR PRIMARY HEALTH CARE

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_ Clinic: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONE RED FLAGS	QUESTIONS TO ASK THE MOTHER/CARE GIVER	YES	NO
<b>60 months (5years)</b>	Speech difficult to understand because of poor articulation or omission or substitution of consonants	Is your child speaking fluently?		
	Poor fine motor development 	Can your child ask and answer relevant questions? Is the child able to name basic body parts? Able to colour in fairly neatly between the lines of a picture Can your child draw the basic shapes? (See pictures on the left) Can your child draw a man with all basic parts and clothes? Able to catch and throw a ball?		
	Poor gross motor development	Is your child clumsy? (constantly having mishaps) Able to march?		
	Cognition (learning) developing slowly	Do you sometimes worry that your child is not learning new things? Does your child sometimes just sit doing nothing, not interested in any play? Can your child concentrate on one activity for 5 - 10 minutes?		
	Emotional immaturity	Are you worried that your child is not ready to go to school? Does your child cry easily, have emotional outbursts when there is no reason?	Refer to OT	
<b>Comments:</b>	<b>Referred to:</b> ART clinic, Doctor, Speech Therapist, Occupational Therapist, Physiotherapist, Eye care service		<b>Signature:</b>	
			<b>Date:</b>	

These developmental milestones and the lack thereof represent the RED FLAGS of child development. The age linked to the milestones leave some leeway for the slow developer. If all the grey boxes representing the same Red Flag are ticked: Do provider initiated counselling and testing for HIV. The child should immediately be referred to a doctor for a comprehensive neurological assessment and referred as indicated. If an Occupational Therapist is available on primary level, refer. JULY 2010



# DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONES MONITORING

## FOR ART CLINICS

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_

These developmental norms are selected and adapted for the ART Clinic setting. Each section represents basic milestones for specific age groups. If the child lacks 3 or more milestones in a specific category, the child should be assessed for HAART eligibility. The child should also be referred to an Occupational Therapist, Speech Therapist or Physiotherapist according to the area of developmental delay. May 2010

AGE	GROSS MOTOR	FINE MOTOR	COMMUNICATION	PERSONAL / SOCIAL	WARNING SIGNS
<b>3 months</b> Date: _____	<b>Supine:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Pull to sit: 45° head lag still present  <b>Sitting:</b> <b>Propped up</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Flexed/C-position <input type="checkbox"/> Hold head steady  <b>Prone:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Bears weight on flexed arms <input type="checkbox"/> Lifts head 45° & turn head to side	<b>Eyes:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Follows through 90° in lying <input type="checkbox"/> Discover hands  <b>Hands:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Open for longer <input type="checkbox"/> Shake a rattle when it is placed in the hand (not intentional) <input type="checkbox"/> Mouthing begins	<input type="checkbox"/> Coos and chuckles <input type="checkbox"/> Identifies familiar voices <input type="checkbox"/> Make noises & smile when spoken to <input type="checkbox"/> Cries less <input type="checkbox"/> Turn head towards sound	<input type="checkbox"/> Excited when fed, looks at mother's face <input type="checkbox"/> Smiles selectively  <b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Better routine  <b>Play:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Brief interest in toys & sounds <input type="checkbox"/> Plays with own body	<input type="checkbox"/> No visual fixation or following <input type="checkbox"/> Asymmetry of tone or movement <input type="checkbox"/> Floppy/stiff <input type="checkbox"/> Consistent fisting <input type="checkbox"/> Unable to turn or lift head <input type="checkbox"/> Failure to smile <input type="checkbox"/> Poor sucking & swallowing
<b>Comments:</b>				<b>Signature:</b>	
<b>6 months</b> Date: _____	<b>Supine:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Pull to sit, no more head lag <input type="checkbox"/> Plays with feet <input type="checkbox"/> Rolls from back to tummy  <b>Sitting: Unaided</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Sit, supported by arms  <b>Standing:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Bears weight on legs, equal both sides  <b>Prone:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Props self on straight arms, legs extended, toes turned outwards	<b>Eyes:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Follows through 180° in lying <input type="checkbox"/> Focus on small objects  <b>Hands:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Hands to midline <input type="checkbox"/> Banging blocks against the table <input type="checkbox"/> Reaches and attains object at will <input type="checkbox"/> Hold and actively plays with rattle	<input type="checkbox"/> Babbles to get attention <input type="checkbox"/> Makes simple sounds <input type="checkbox"/> Laughs aloud <input type="checkbox"/> Turns to mother's voice <input type="checkbox"/> Responds to his name	<input type="checkbox"/> Holds out arms to be picked up <input type="checkbox"/> Examines the face of the person holding him  <b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Start eating solid food off a spoon Starts to hold the bottle  <b>Play:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Puts everything in mouth	<input type="checkbox"/> Floppiness <input type="checkbox"/> No head control <input type="checkbox"/> Failure to use both hands <input type="checkbox"/> Asymmetrical movements <input type="checkbox"/> Squint <input type="checkbox"/> Failure to turn to sound <input type="checkbox"/> Poor response to people
<b>Comments:</b>				<b>Signature:</b>	
<b>9 months</b> Date: _____	<b>Sitting:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Sits without support <input type="checkbox"/> Lean forward and sit up again without losing balance  <b>Standing:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Remain standing for a few seconds by holding onto an object, falls down again  <b>Prone:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Baby start to crawl	<b>Eyes:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Extremely accurate vision  <b>Hands:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Can pick up a button <input type="checkbox"/> Holds a block in each hand <input type="checkbox"/> Points	<input type="checkbox"/> Babbles "ma-ma" <input type="checkbox"/> Imitates sounds <input type="checkbox"/> Understands "no" / "bye-bye"	<input type="checkbox"/> Stranger anxiety  <b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Dependent on mother <input type="checkbox"/> Holds bottle independently  <b>Play:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enjoys playing "peek-a-boo"	<input type="checkbox"/> Unable to sit <input type="checkbox"/> Failure to use both hands <input type="checkbox"/> Fisting <input type="checkbox"/> Squint <input type="checkbox"/> Persistence of primitive reflexes
<b>Comments:</b>				<b>Signature:</b>	

AGE	GROSS MOTOR	FINE MOTOR	COMMUNICATION	PERSONAL / SOCIAL	WARNING SIGNS
<b>12 months</b> Date: _____	<b>Sitting:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Turns around to reach toys next to him <input type="checkbox"/> Sit down unaided from standing  <b>Standing: (Walking)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Walks forward if held by one hand <input type="checkbox"/> Walks around furniture sideways-cruising  <b>Prone: (Crawling)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Crawl <input type="checkbox"/> Pull up to standing by holding onto object <input type="checkbox"/> Bear walking	<b>Eyes:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Looks for toys when out of sight  <b>Hands:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Able to pick up a button with his thumb and index finger (Pincer grasp) <input type="checkbox"/> Release on request <input type="checkbox"/> Hold with 1 hand and play with the other <input type="checkbox"/> Throw things into a container and take it out again	<input type="checkbox"/> Knows own name <input type="checkbox"/> 1 Word sentences <input type="checkbox"/> 2 Words with meaning <input type="checkbox"/> Understand simple commands <input type="checkbox"/> Copies words he hears a lot	<b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Finger feeds <input type="checkbox"/> Drinks from cup <input type="checkbox"/> Pushes arms into sleeves <input type="checkbox"/> Take own socks off  <b>Play:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Throw a ball, but loses balance in process <input type="checkbox"/> Like to fit things into one another (Nesting toys) <input type="checkbox"/> Throw an object on the floor for pleasure	<input type="checkbox"/> Unable to bear weight on legs <input type="checkbox"/> Not yet crawling and pulling to stand <input type="checkbox"/> Abnormal grasp <input type="checkbox"/> Failure to respond to sound <input type="checkbox"/> Unable to start with solids independently
<b>Comments:</b>				<b>Signature:</b>	
<b>15 months</b> Date: _____	<b>Sitting:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Stand up from sitting <input type="checkbox"/> Will climb on a chair and sit down  <b>Standing: (Walking)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Bend over to pick up an object <input type="checkbox"/> Squat and stand up again <input type="checkbox"/> Walks alone, broad base with arms in the air  <b>Prone: (Crawling)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Able to crawl fast and manage obstacles e.g. stairs	<input type="checkbox"/> Hold the crayon in a fist when scribbling <input type="checkbox"/> Turn pages of a book roughly <input type="checkbox"/> Hold 2 small toys in 1 hand <input type="checkbox"/> Put lid back on container	<input type="checkbox"/> Jabber with expression <input type="checkbox"/> 2-6 words <input type="checkbox"/> Points to known object on request <input type="checkbox"/> Understand what the word "up" and "down" mean <input type="checkbox"/> Respond to a simple command e.g. "Fetch the ball"	<b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Picks up, drinks and puts down a cup <input type="checkbox"/> Indicates wet nappy <input type="checkbox"/> Bring spoon up to his mouth during feeding tends to lick it upside down  <b>Play:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Examines everything <input type="checkbox"/> Enjoys the company of other children, but prefer to play by himself	<input type="checkbox"/> Unable to bear weight on legs <input type="checkbox"/> Not yet walking <input type="checkbox"/> Abnormal grasp <input type="checkbox"/> Abnormal posture: floppy/spastic <input type="checkbox"/> Failure to respond to sound <input type="checkbox"/> Not yet talking
<b>Comments:</b>				<b>Signature:</b>	
<b>18 months</b> Date: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Walk with more confidence <input type="checkbox"/> Walk, squat and pick up something, stand up and walk again <input type="checkbox"/> Start running, often falls.	<input type="checkbox"/> Build a 3 cube tower <input type="checkbox"/> Scribbles <input type="checkbox"/> Hold the crayon in a fist <input type="checkbox"/> Turn pages of a book	<input type="checkbox"/> 6-20 words <input type="checkbox"/> Understand 15 words <input type="checkbox"/> Points to known object on request <input type="checkbox"/> Use gestures to indicate his needs <input type="checkbox"/> Point out body part on himself and another person	<input type="checkbox"/> Mood swings  <b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Handles spoon well <input type="checkbox"/> Takes off shoes and socks  <b>Play:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Interested in own mirror image	<input type="checkbox"/> Failure to walk <input type="checkbox"/> Unable to pick up small objects e.g. buttons <input type="checkbox"/> Abnormal posture Inability to understand simple commands <input type="checkbox"/> Not yet talking
<b>Comments:</b>				<b>Signature:</b>	


These developmental norms are selected and adapted for the ART Clinic setting. Each section represents basic milestones for specific age groups. If the child lacks 3 or more milestones in a specific category, the child should be assessed for HAART eligibility. The child should also be referred to an Occupational Therapist, Speech Therapist or Physiotherapist according to the area of developmental delay. May 2010

Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE	GROSS MOTOR	FINE MOTOR	COMMUNICATION	PERSONAL / SOCIAL	WARNING SIGNS
<b>24 months (2 years)</b> Date: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Take few steps backwards <input type="checkbox"/> Runs and change direction easily <input type="checkbox"/> Jump off step with 2 feet together <input type="checkbox"/> Stand and kick a ball <input type="checkbox"/> Able to throw a ball	<input type="checkbox"/> Page through a book page by page <input type="checkbox"/> Obvious hand preference <input type="checkbox"/> Uses lines:  , _ ,O <input type="checkbox"/> Complete 3 piece puzzle <input type="checkbox"/> Open a sweet with little help	<input type="checkbox"/> <50 words <input type="checkbox"/> 2 word sentences <input type="checkbox"/> Ask for food, drink, toilet <input type="checkbox"/> Point to at least 5 body parts <input type="checkbox"/> Able to place objects with the same colour together <input type="checkbox"/> Can count up to 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Able to orientate self in relation to another object e.g. 'Stand behind /on top of/in front of the chair'	<input type="checkbox"/> Has a strong will of his own "I'll do it myself!" <input type="checkbox"/> Temper tantrums <input type="checkbox"/> Likes to give hugs <input type="checkbox"/> Shy towards strangers  <b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Spoon feeds without mess <input type="checkbox"/> Take off own clothes <input type="checkbox"/> Toileting: Clean during day, start indicating his need  <b>Play: Pretend play</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Want to help with house chores and copy the parents	<input type="checkbox"/> Unable to understand simple commands <input type="checkbox"/> Poor co-ordination
<b>Comments:</b>			<b>Signature:</b>		
<b>36 months (3 years)</b> Date: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Walk forward and backward <input type="checkbox"/> Walks on tip toes <input type="checkbox"/> Walk on straight line <input type="checkbox"/> Jump 2 feet together <input type="checkbox"/> Able to climb on chair <input type="checkbox"/> Catch a big ball (hugging against chest) <input type="checkbox"/> Hold ball above head and throws <input type="checkbox"/> Run and kick a ball	<input type="checkbox"/> Copies the following shapes: _  , O,T <input type="checkbox"/> Start colouring in , go over the lines <input type="checkbox"/> Pencil grip: <input type="checkbox"/> Holding crayon to draw (still developing) <input type="checkbox"/> Builds a 9 block tower <input type="checkbox"/> Thread big beads on a shoelace <input type="checkbox"/> Draw-a-man: at least 4 parts	<input type="checkbox"/> Produce all consonants and vowels correct. ('R', 'S' not perfect) <input type="checkbox"/> Talks constantly and can have a simple conversation with you <input type="checkbox"/> Knows own name and gender <input type="checkbox"/> Show his age by using his fingers <input type="checkbox"/> Can identify all parts of face <input type="checkbox"/> Identify circle, square and triangle if you name them <input type="checkbox"/> Fit basic colours together (blue, red, yellow)	<input type="checkbox"/> More co-operative temperament <input type="checkbox"/> Understand what is socially acceptable  <b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Want to go to the toilet by himself <input type="checkbox"/> Dress with supervision <input type="checkbox"/> Eat with a spoon <input type="checkbox"/> Washes and dries hands  <b>Play: Parallel play</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Play close to other children <input type="checkbox"/> Build a 3 piece puzzle <input type="checkbox"/> Enjoy listening to stories <input type="checkbox"/> Focus for 10 minutes on one game	<input type="checkbox"/> Using only single words <input type="checkbox"/> Ataxia
<b>Comments:</b>			<b>Signature:</b>		

These developmental norms are selected and adapted for the ART Clinic setting. Each section represents basic milestones for specific age groups. If the child lacks 3 or more milestones in a specific category, the child should be assessed for HAART eligibility. The child should also be referred to an Occupational Therapist, Speech Therapist or Physiotherapist according to the area of developmental delay. May 2010


Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE	GROSS MOTOR	FINE MOTOR	COMMUNICATION	PERSONAL / SOCIAL	WARNING SIGNS
<b>48 months (4 years)</b> Date: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Walk heel-toe with good balance <input type="checkbox"/> Walk on tip toe <input type="checkbox"/> Stands on 1 leg for 3 seconds <input type="checkbox"/> Hop on 1 leg <input type="checkbox"/> Jump with 2 feet together forward <input type="checkbox"/> Can catch and throw a ball <input type="checkbox"/> Catch a bouncing ball direct	<input type="checkbox"/> Draw-a-man: at least 8 parts <input type="checkbox"/> Able to copy:   - + / O <input type="checkbox"/> Able to pick up a button with thumb and index finger (2 Point pincer grip) <input type="checkbox"/> Build a 10 block tower <input type="checkbox"/> Able to do own buttons	<input type="checkbox"/> Full name and age <input type="checkbox"/> Give the names of 4 colours if you point to it <input type="checkbox"/> Point to most of his body parts if asked to <input type="checkbox"/> Count up to 10 <input type="checkbox"/> Know the difference between big and small <input type="checkbox"/> Able to orientate self in relation to another object e.g. 'Stand behind /on top of the chair' <input type="checkbox"/> Listen to a longer story	<input type="checkbox"/> Sometimes silly and like to show off <input type="checkbox"/> Get involved in fights <b>Independence:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Eats with spoon <input type="checkbox"/> Carry a cup without wasting water <input type="checkbox"/> Want to go to the toilet by himself <b>Play: Make believe play</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enjoy playing with other children <input type="checkbox"/> Able to play alone <input type="checkbox"/> Identify pictures of shapes:  <input type="checkbox"/> Complete a puzzle (15 piece at most)	<input type="checkbox"/> Speech difficult to understand because of poor articulation or omission or substitution of consonants <input type="checkbox"/> Not able to draw basic shapes <input type="checkbox"/> Doesn't show an interest to play
<b>Comments:</b>			<b>Signature:</b>		

These developmental norms are selected and adapted for the ART Clinic setting. Each section represents basic milestones for specific age groups. If the child lacks 3 or more milestones in a specific category, the child should be assessed for HAART eligibility. The child should also be referred to an Occupational Therapist, Speech Therapist or Physiotherapist according to the area of developmental delay. May 2010



Name of child: \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth: \_\_\_\_\_ File No: \_\_\_\_\_

AGE	GROSS MOTOR	FINE MOTOR	COMMUNICATION	PERSONAL / SOCIAL	WARNING SIGNS
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>60 months (5 years)</b></p> <p>Date: _____</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Stand on 1 leg (8-10seconds)</li> <li>Walk heel-toe with good balance</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Walk on tiptoe</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Hop on one leg (3times)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Jump with 2 feet together</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to march</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to catch and throw a ball</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Catch and throw a bouncing ball with both hands</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to build a 10 block tower</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to cross his midline during a clapping game</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Copies square and triangle</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Draw a man: all the basic parts of a man with clothes</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Copy the following shapes on paper</li> </ul> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Colour in fairly neatly within the lines of a picture</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Hold pencil like an adult</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to thread beads</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Fluent speech</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to talk about the world around him</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Ask a lot of questions</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to point to basic body parts if asked to</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to name body parts if you point to them</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to give his first and last names</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> He knows where he lives: street name/ residential area and city</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Choose and make friends</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to take turns</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Temperament: gentle and friendly</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Trust and like adults</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Obedient to caregivers (open to social norms and authority)</li> </ul> <p><b>Independence:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Dresses and undresses alone</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Fasten and loosen buttons</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Can wash himself</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Toilet trained: he can clean himself</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to eat with spoon</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to butter bread</li> </ul> <p><b>Play: Fantasy</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Play with sticks and stones</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Build a puzzle (20 piece at most)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Emotional immaturity e.g. acting out, disruptive</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Poor concentration</li> <li>Unable to play in a group</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Poor posture during table top activities</li> </ul>
<p><b>Comments:</b></p>			<p><b>Signature:</b></p>		

These developmental norms are selected and adapted for the ART Clinic setting. Each section represents basic milestones for specific age groups. If the child lacks 3 or more milestones in a specific category, the child should be assessed for HAART eligibility. The child should also be referred to an Occupational Therapist, Speech Therapist or Physiotherapist according to the area of developmental delay, May 2010

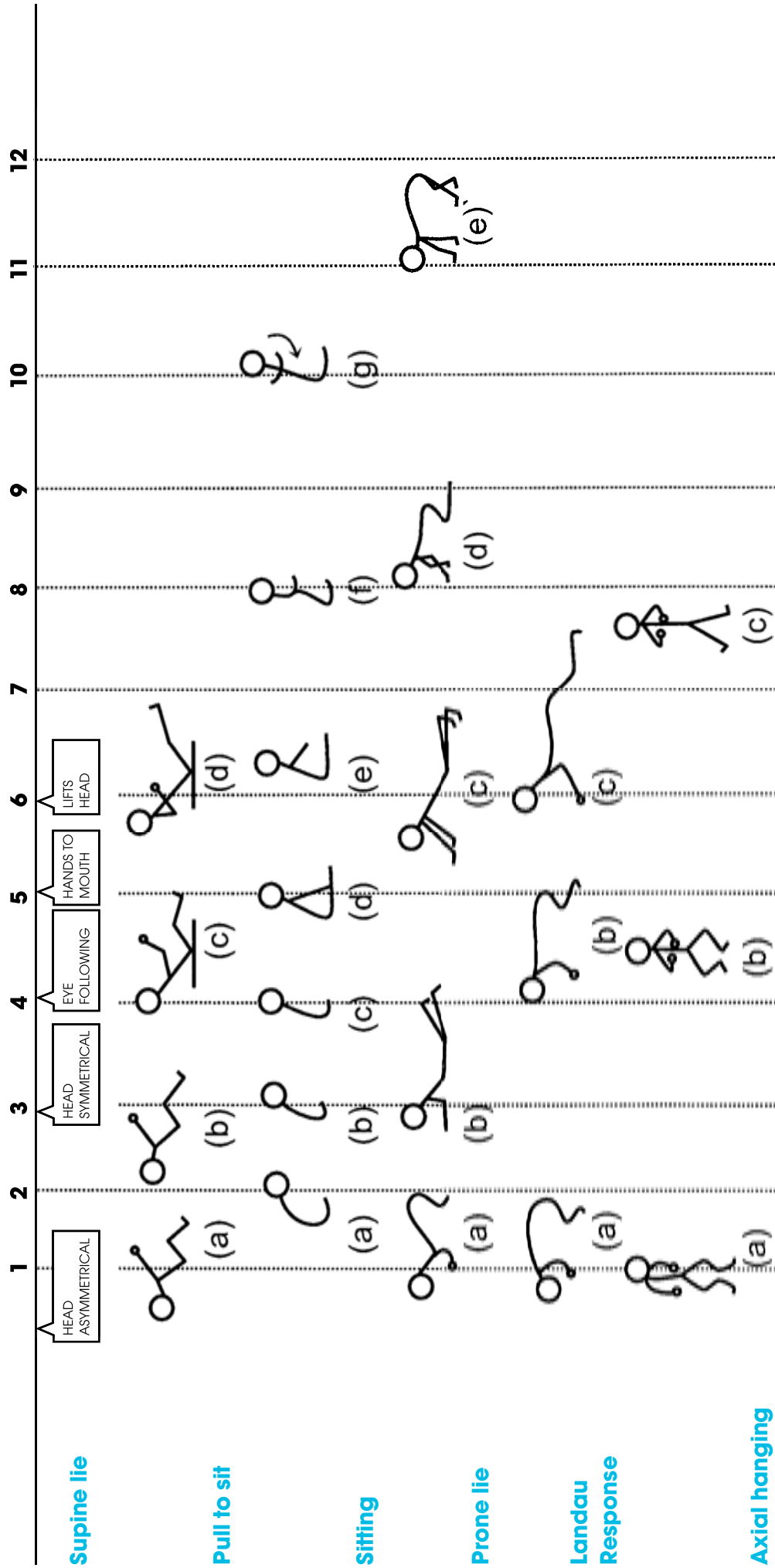
AGE	GROSS MOTOR	FINE MOTOR	COMMUNICATION	PERSONAL / SOCIAL	WARNING SIGNS
<p><b>72 months (6 years)</b></p> <p>Date: _____</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Sits up without using hands</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Stand on 1 leg for at least 10 counts</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Long jump keeping his feet together</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Make a star jump</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Catch a ball with his hands (not against his chest)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Bounce a tennis ball and catch it again</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Follow moving object fluently with his eyes</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Rhythmical clapping across the midline(Play clap game)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to build a 10 block tower</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Colour in well within the lines of a picture</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Draw a man: Detailed picture of a human with clothes</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Hand dominance established</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to copy the following shapes:</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">  - \ X / +</p> <p style="text-align: center;">□ △ ○ ∪</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to point to all body parts if asked to (choose 3)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to give the names of all body parts (choose 3)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to point to circle, triangle and rectangle if asked to</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to name all the circle, triangle and rectangle</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to point to blue, green, red and yellow</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to give the names of blue, green, red and yellow on request</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> He can count 13 objects</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Identify numbers 1 to 10</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to lift his left hand and right hand when requested</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Make and keep friends,play in groups</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Open to social norms prescribed by his culture</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Respect others</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to express his feelings</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Self-confident to talk in front of people</li> </ul> <p><b>Independence:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to use a knife</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to wash dishes</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Go to bed on his own</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Dress and undress himself</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Fasten his own buttons and belt</li> </ul> <p><b>Play: (Cooperative play)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to place 1 block in relation to another block e.g. in front of, behind</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Thread beads</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Able to build a puzzle with ease (30 piece at most)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Enjoy to repeat a story</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Clumsy</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Poor posture</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Poor pencil grip</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> No hand dominance</li> </ul>
	<b>Comments:</b>			<b>Signature:</b>	

These developmental norms are selected and adapted for the ART Clinic setting. Each section represents basic milestones for specific age groups. If the child lacks 3 or more milestones in a specific category, the child should be assessed for HAART eligibility. The child should also be referred to an Occupational Therapist, Speech Therapist or Physiotherapist according to the area of developmental delay. May 2010

Compiled by Annemadelein Scherer  
Occupational Therapist

# BASIC INFANT NEUROMOTOR ASSESSMENT

## THE SIX TEST POSITIONS



# PALLIATIVE CARE AND HIV





# PALLIATIVE CARE AND HIV

## FOREWORD

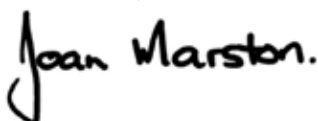
No health care professional enjoys watching a child suffer from pain or other distressing symptoms, when there could be effective management of these symptoms – physical, spiritual, and emotional. Palliative care, provided by health care workers educated and skilled in holistic pain and symptom management, and provided within the context of the child’s development; effective communication with the child and family, and understanding of each child’s unique needs, relieves suffering and improves quality of life.

The children’s palliative care movement began in the UK in 1976 with the establishment of Helen House in Oxford UK by Sr Frances Dominica; and in Africa in Bloemfontein, South Africa in the early 1990’s . Despite this, very few health care workers in Africa are trained in palliative care for children, palliative care drugs, including opioids, are often not freely available (and seldom in paediatric formulations), and very few children’s palliative care programmes have been developed. Only South Africa has a network of services throughout the country. However, there are exciting developments in a number of African countries, and materials and training curricula developed for palliative care of the child in Africa.

Anti-retroviral therapy is reaching an increasing number of children with HIV , and the improvement in prevention of vertical transmission is very encouraging. Despite this, many children still suffer from pain and other distressing symptoms, and exhibit spiritual and emotional distress. Children with HIV may also have other life-limiting conditions such as cancer, genetic anomalies, severe malnutrition, disabilities or neuro-degenerative conditions. Sadly, there is still a large number of children not receiving ART. The quality of life of all of these children would benefit from palliative care provided by skilled, informed and compassionate health care workers.

I am excited by the commitment of PATA to provide palliative care to these most vulnerable children, and believe that the extensive PATA network will become a leader in taking this care to where it is most needed. We all look forward to the time when, working together in the best interest of the child, each life-limited or life-threatened child has access to palliative care across Africa, and every health care provider is equipped to provide palliative care.

With warm good wishes and congratulations to the members of PATA; and all who make use of this excellent resource.



**Chief Executive:**

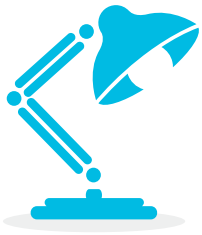
International Children’s Palliative Care Network.

[www.icpcn.org.uk](http://www.icpcn.org.uk)

## RESOURCES

1. Guidelines and Assessment Tools for Children’s Palliative Care in South Africa.  
Hospice Palliative Care Association of South Africa (HPCA)
2. Booklet 2: Guidelines for Managing Pain in Children.  
Hospice Palliative Care Association of South Africa (HPCA)
3. Sunflower Children’s Hospice, Bloemfontein, South Africa

Palliative care is the care of patients who have an incurable disease. It begins at the time of diagnosis and addresses all the patients' physical, emotional, social and spiritual needs. It also involves giving support to the family.



**KEY MESSAGE:**

*Although HIV can't be cured, HIV infection has become a chronic, manageable condition.*

**KEY MESSAGE:**

*The aim of palliative care for children and their families or guardians, is to promote quality of life, maintain dignity, and ameliorate suffering.*

## PAIN IN HIV INFECTED CHILDREN

***"Pain is inevitable, suffering is optional" Anonymous***

It may be more difficult to assess physical pain in children than in adults. Different pain rating scales have been developed for different ages and levels of development in both non-verbal and verbal children. These are used for establishing a baseline and for measuring response to pain treatment:

- FLACC Scale Pain Intensity Instrument
- Revised Faces Pain Scale
- Numeric/Word Pain Scale
- Eland Colour Scale



**KEY MESSAGE:**

*Pain is not just physical; it has psychological, spiritual, cultural and social components.*

# PAIN AT INITIAL ASSESSMENT

# FLACC SCALE

# PAIN INTENSITY INSTRUMENT

**INDICATIONS FOR USE:** Infants and Children (2 months -7 years) unable to validate the presence of, or quantify the severity of pain.

<b>DATE /TIME:</b>							
<b>FACE:</b> 0 - No particular expression or smile 1 - Occasional grimace or frown, withdrawn, disinterested 2 - Frequent to constant quivering of chin, clenched jaw							
<b>LEGS:</b> 0 - Normal position or relaxed 1 - Uneasy, restless, tense 2 - Kicking, or legs drawn up							
<b>ACTIVITY:</b> 0 - Lying quietly, normal position, moves easily 1 - Squirming, shifting back and forth, tense 2 - Arched, rigid or jerking							
<b>CRY:</b> 0 - No cry (awake or asleep) 1 - Moans or whimpers; occasional complaint 2 - Crying steadily, screams or sobs, frequent complaints							
<b>CONSOLABILITY:</b> 0 - Content, relaxed 1 - Reassured by occasional touching, hugging or being talked to, distractible 2 - Difficult to console or comfort							
<b>DATE /TIME:</b>							
<b>SCORE:</b>							

### INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE:

- Each of the five(5) categories is scored from 0-2, which results in a total score between 0 and 10
  - (F) Faces
  - (L) Legs
  - (A) Activity
  - (C) Cry
  - (C) Consolability
- The interdisciplinary team in collaboration with the patient/family can determine appropriate interventions in response to the FLACC scale scores.

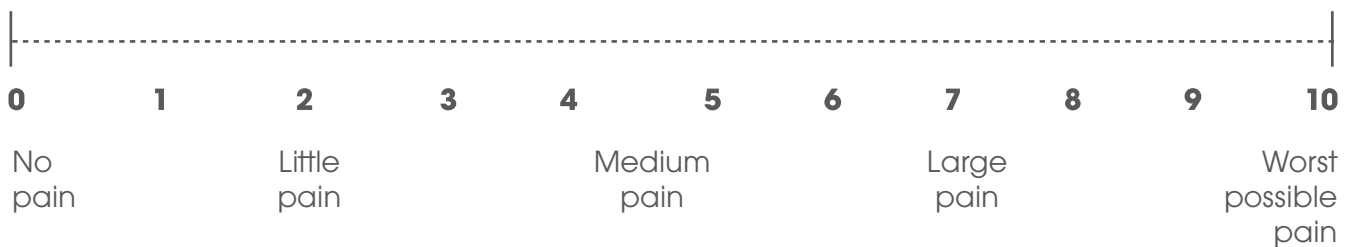
Reference: Merkek, Sl., Voepel-Lewis, T., Shayevitz, JR., Malviya, S. (1997): The FLACC: a behavioural scale for scoring post-operative pain in young children. Paediatric Nursing, 23(3): 293-297

# REVISED FACES PAIN SCALE

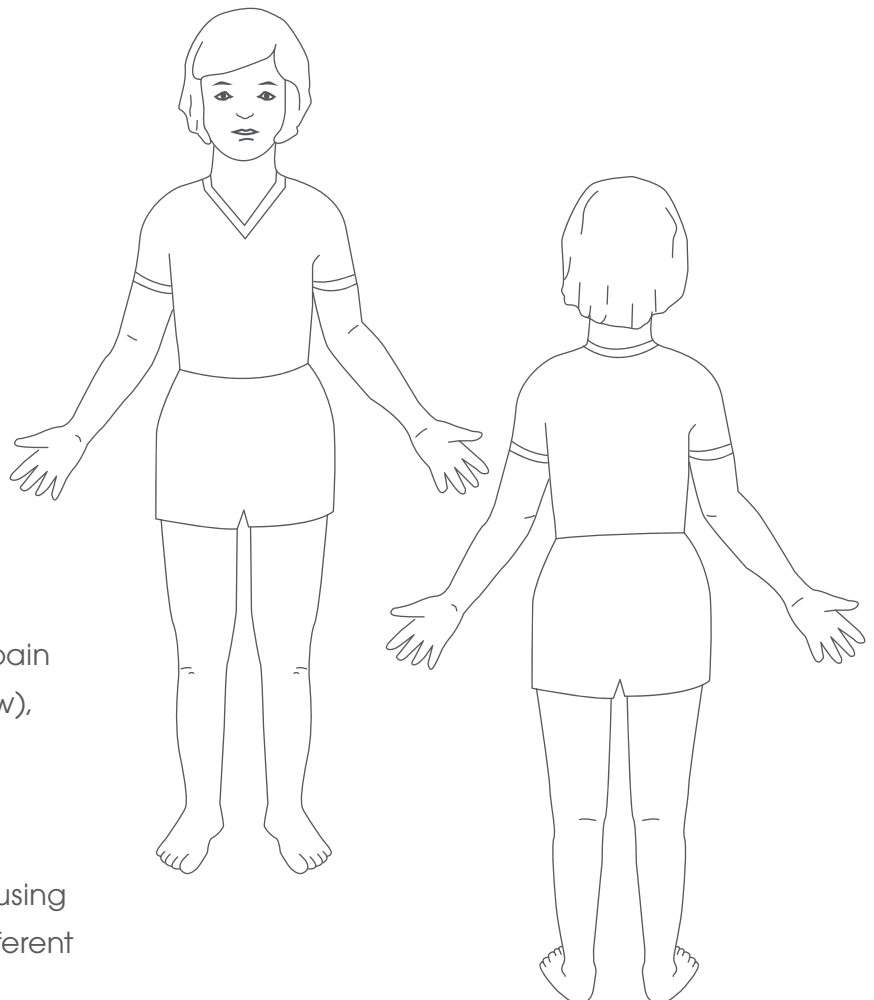
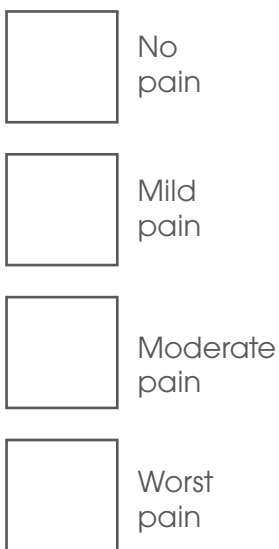


- Use in children over 4 years
- Ask them to point to the face that best depicts their level of pain

# NUMERIC/WORD PAIN SCALE



# ELAND COLOUR SCALE



## INSTRUCTIONS:

get child to assign colours to no pain (e.g. green), Little pain (e.g. yellow), Moderate pain (eg orange) and severe pain (e.g. red).

Ask them to colour in the bodies using the different colours to depict different levels of pain in different areas.



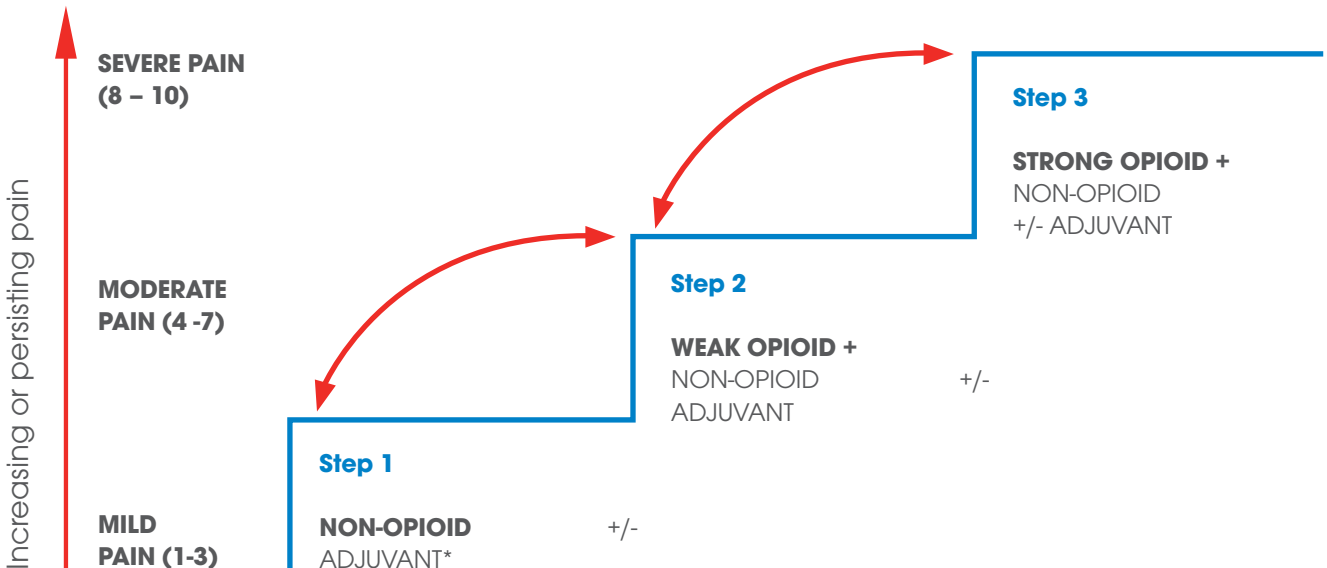
## BASIC PRINCIPLES OF PAIN MANAGEMENT

- The correct use of the correct analgesic will relieve most pain in children
- Reverse the reversible (treat the underlying cause)
- Use both drug and non-drug measures
  - Non-drug measures can be used for both acute and chronic pain e.g. distraction (blowing bubbles, counting) during procedures (acute pain) or touch/massage
- Address associated psychosocial distress (e.g. separation anxiety)
- Continually re-evaluate pain and its response to treatment

### The broad principles of analgesic use in children (WHO):

- By the clock (regular rather than prn dosing)
- By the correct route for the type of pain (preferably oral, avoid IMI)
- By the child (individualize treatment)
  - Remember to calculate the dose based on the child's weight
- By the WHO pain ladder
  - A stepwise approach to manage pain based on severity
  - Continually re-evaluate pain and its response to treatment
  - Adjust pain management accordingly

### The WHO pain ladder



**Commonly used drugs in the ladder:** (see local guidance for drug indications & dosing)

NON-OPIOID	WEAK OPIOID	STRONG OPIOID	ADJUVANT*
Paracetamol NSAID's (Ibuprofen, Diclofenac)	Codeine phosphate Tiilidine (Valoron) Tramadol	Morphine Methadone Fentanyl	Drugs with a primary indication other than pain that have analgesic properties in some painful conditions. Only use after consultation.  Prednisone Carbamazepine Amitriptyline

## SPIRITUAL PAIN

### Common spiritual concerns of children include

- Unconditional love
- Forgiveness
- Hope
- Safety and security
- Legacy – knowing that their lives have made a difference
- Loneliness and separation
- Loss of wholeness and the ability to do what they want to do

### A spiritual assessment centres on

- Understanding the meaning of the child's life to the child and family
- Understanding things that are important
- Child's hopes and dreams for the future – whether realistic or not
- Transcendent relationships
- Review of the child's hopes, dreams, values
- Role of prayer, rituals
- Beliefs regarding death

### To foster a child's spiritual growth

- Respect the way spirituality changes with age
- Provide opportunities for participation in religious observance at age-appropriate level
- Support growth and maintenance of trusting, secure and loving relationships
- Provide support at times of crisis and despair
- Allow time for questioning as part of a child's normal spiritual development
- Refer child to culturally appropriate spiritual care provider
- Offer to explain child's illness to spiritual care provider with family's permission
- Allow time for the child and family to reflect on life's meaning and purpose
- Provide compassionate, constant and developmentally appropriate support
- Respect the child and family's beliefs



#### KEY MESSAGE:

*Children and adolescents are spiritual beings with concerns about the purpose and the meaning of their lives, and transcendent relationships with their mothers when young, and often later with God or a higher power. Spirituality is developmentally defined and involves an understanding of children's approaches to understanding life.*

# SPIRITUAL ASSESSMENT OF A CHILD OR ADOLESCENT

---

**Child's name:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Date of birth:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Age:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Language:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Parent or Guardian:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Religious affiliation (if any):** \_\_\_\_\_

**Name of Spiritual care provider/Chaplain:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Contact details:** \_\_\_\_\_

- Use age-appropriate language during the assessment and sit at the child's level
- Allow the parent or guardian to sit with the child if appropriate.
- You may need to ask the smaller child to draw themselves and their family to show whether they feel as though they belong, and are as important as everyone else.

## **For small babies who cannot talk:**

Is there a constant caring adult who cares for the child? Yes / No

If not, who cares for the child? \_\_\_\_\_

Where does the child live? \_\_\_\_\_

## **For small children with minimal communication skills:**

Is there a constant, caring adult who cares for the child? Yes / No

If, not where is the child cared for? \_\_\_\_\_

Ask the child the following questions:

1. Who do you love? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Who do you go to when you are sad? \_\_\_\_\_

3. What makes you happy? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Who makes you feel special or happy? \_\_\_\_\_

5. What do you like to do? \_\_\_\_\_

**Positive answers to these questions will indicate that the child finds meaning and value in life; has a caring adult to go to, and feels secure.**

## **FOR OLDER CHILDREN AND ADOLESCENTS**

### **Safety and security.**

1. Do you have someone special who loves you?
2. Do you have someone special you love?
3. Who do you go to when you are happy?
4. Who do you speak to when you are sad or angry?

### **Self-image, meaning in life**

5. Tell me about yourself – what do you like about yourself? What can you do well?
6. Do you have a special friend/friends?

### **Future hopes and dreams**

7. What would you like to do in the future?
8. If you could be or do anything, what would that be?

**Faith or Religious beliefs**

- 9. Do you belong to a church or other religious group?
- 10. Do you attend services, and / or take part in activities?
- 11. Do you enjoy the services and activities?
- 12. Do you believe in God, Allah, a Higher Being?
- 13. Do you ever say prayers? When do you say them?
- 14. What do you think happens when someone dies? (ask this question carefully and only when relevant)
- 15. Do you have a pastor, chaplain, priest, Rabbi, Imam , spiritual advisor, you talk to ?
- 16. Do you enjoy yourself – every day? – often? – sometimes? - hardly ever?

**Comments by Assessor**

---

---

---

---

---

---

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Child referred to spiritual advisor or Chaplain      Yes / No

Name of Spiritual advisor / Chaplain: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of referral: \_\_\_\_\_

**Result of referral on follow-up assessment**

---

---

---

---

---

---

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**Sunflower Children's Hospice**

PO box 31021

Fichardt Park 9317

Bloemfontein

South Africa Tel: 051 4483812/3

E-mail: [childhospbfn@telkomsa.net](mailto:childhospbfn@telkomsa.net)

# A CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM DETERMINING THE LEVEL OF PALLIATIVE CARE INTERVENTION REQUIRED

## The Soweto “Cares Score”

Most South Africa hospices use the PEPFAR palliative care class I-III classification system. In this system Class I patients are asymptomatic but are living with a life-threatening illness. Class II patients are symptomatic but independent and Class III patients are symptomatic and dependent/bedbound and require assistance with activities of daily living. This categorization helps to determine the frequency of palliative care visits required.

The PEPFAR Palliative care classes were developed for adults and pose several problems when applied to the paediatric population. Most young children (even healthy ones) require assistance with activities of daily living by virtue of their developmental immaturity. Also all infants and young children need to be looked after by caregivers and vulnerability is dependent on the capacity of their caregiver to meet their needs.

The “CARES score for children” was proposed and tested in the Soweto Hospice Paediatric Palliative Care Pilot site, South Africa.

## Soweto Cares Score Classification

**Level I:** All green

**Level II:** Any orange, some green, no red

**Level III:** Any red

- If red for C1, R1, E1, E2, S1 or S2 : immediate notification of the relevant authorities (child welfare, child protection services etc) is required with consideration of possible removal of the child due to extreme vulnerability.
- If red for C2 or C3 consultation with a healthcare professional is required and hospitalisation or admission to an in-patient unit may need to be considered if the symptoms cannot be controlled.
- Suggested frequency of palliative care intervention
  - **Level I:** monthly.
  - **Level II:** 2 weekly.
  - **Level III:** weekly to daily. Consider in-patient unit admission if possible.



### KEY MESSAGE:

*“Effective palliative care requires a broad multidisciplinary approach and makes use of available community resources; it can be successfully implemented even if resources are limited. It can be provided in tertiary care facilities, in community health centres and even in children’s homes.” (World Health Organisation 2002)*



# THE SOWETO CARES SCORE

ASPECT REQUIRING EVALUATION		GREEN: Class I	ORANGE: Class II	RED: Class III
<b>C- Comfort</b>	<b>C1: Basic needs:</b> food, shelter, warmth (clothing)	Completely met	Adequately met but at risk of not being adequate if challenged by stressor (eg: mother hospitalized, grant not collected, winter weather etc).	Not met (child often misses meals, clothing or shelter inadequate, homeless etc)
	<b>C2: Pain</b>	None	Mild-moderate	Severe
	<b>C3: Symptoms other than pain</b>	None	Mild-Moderate	Severe
<b>A- Access</b>	<b>A1: Transport</b>	Own vehicle, transport always available	Reliant on public transport but would be able to access transport in an emergency	No transport services, no money for transport
	<b>A 2: Healthcare</b>	Easily accessible, good level of care	Average access, reasonable level of care	Not accessible (too far or very poor healthcare facilities)
<b>R- Resources</b>	<b>R 1: Primary caregiver</b>	Good caregiver, responsible, loving, caring	Satisfactory caregiver but may need extra help in a crisis	Not satisfactory, caregiver not coping, elderly grandparent, childheaded household
	<b>R 2: Financial resource</b>	well sourced	Adequate but could become a problem if challenged by an unforeseen crisis	Inadequate
<b>E- Emotional needs</b>	<b>E 1: Child (the patient)</b>	Happy, content	Coping but elements of stress, anxiety or depression observed	Uncontained, suicidal
	<b>E 2: Caregiver</b>	Happy, content	Coping but elements of stress, anxiety or depression observed	Uncontained, suicidal
<b>S- Safety</b>	<b>S1: Abuse/neglect</b>	None	Suspicion of abuse/neglect/exploitation	Confirmed abuse/neglect/exploitation
	<b>S2: Environment</b>	Safe	Elements of concern but not life threatening	Unsafe living environment posing a threat to survival

# PSYCHOSOCIAL SUPPORT AND DISCLOSURE FOR CHILDREN & ADOLESCENTS



# PSYCHOSOCIAL SUPPORT AND DISCLOSURE FOR CHILDREN & ADOLESCENTS



## KEY MESSAGE

*HIV has profound effects on an individual's physical, emotional, social, and economic well-being, and addressing these dimensions of life is an integral part of HIV care.*

Effective HIV treatment programmes provide far more to patients than medication, and take into account a broad range of issues, including: psychological, spiritual, and psychosocial support, as well as, the need for community mobilisation.

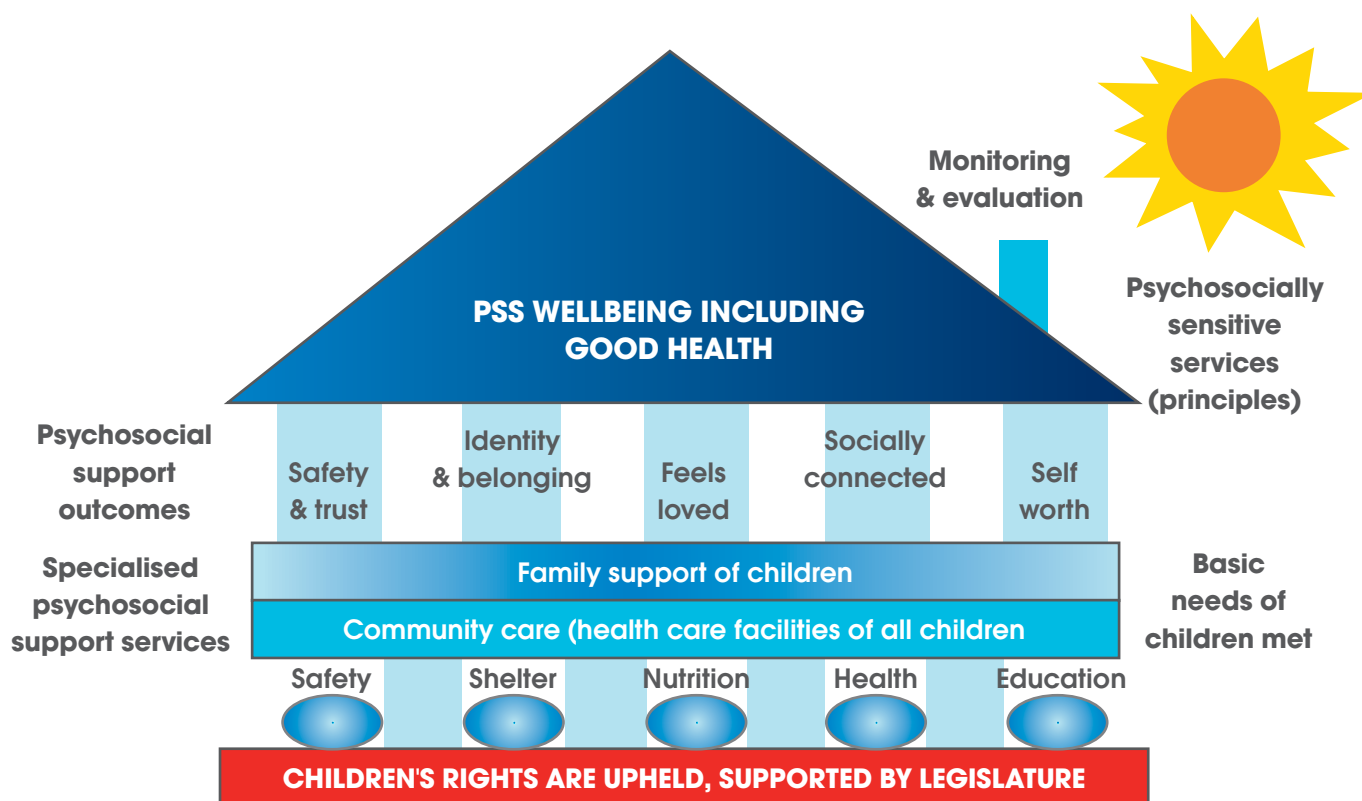
This collection of services – ranging from counselling to practical assistance – is loosely termed “psychosocial support,” and may include:

- Individual, family, and/or group counselling
- Disclosure support
- Identification, assessment, and treatment of mental health problems related to HIV
- Respite for caregivers
- Community and recreational activities for children and families
- Referral for practical assistance (food parcels, nutritional supplements, vocational counselling, employment opportunities, microfinance projects, etc.)
- Referral for spiritual / religious support
- Referral for legal advice



*HIV has moved from an acute, fatal disease to one that can be managed with medication. Today, children will grow up living with HIV as a chronic disease. Thus it is important for children to learn about their disease in a way that they can understand so that they can take an active role in their own treatment and care.*

## Key Components For Understanding Psychosocial Support (PSS) Needs Of Children And Adolescents Infected And Affected By HIV And AIDS



REPSSI. 2009. *Psychosocial Care and Support Mainstreaming Guide*.

Children and adolescents, infected and affected, by HIV, mostly share common problems and concerns. They also experience unique challenges highlighted in the illustration above.

- Children's psychosocial well-being rests on having legislation and policies which protects the rights of the child, and offers guidance regarding the different needs of the child.
- Such support includes meeting the basic needs of children, such as safety, shelter, nutrition, health and education, the building blocks for children's well-being.
- Communities and families are at the frontline of providing basic needs and psychosocial care and support, to children.
- Where there are gaps in psychosocial support offered by communities and families, specialized psychosocial services may be introduced to provide better care for children.
- Health care providers should ensure that children's basic needs (safety, shelter, nutrition, health, and education) are met. Where gaps exist, appropriate referrals should be made.

# COMMUNICATING WITH CHILDREN



## KEY MESSAGE

*Excellent communication skills are vital when working with all people, including children and adolescents. There are however some important skills and practices that assists in effective communication and building relationships with both children and adolescents.*



## THE CHILD FRIENDLY CLINICIAN

### WITH THE CAREGIVER

- Be relaxed and open
- Think about your body language:
  - Lean towards them
  - Keep your face neutral & friendly
  - Maintain eye contact
  - Sit close by & on the same side of the desk
- Remember that you are trying to develop a long term supportive relationship

### WITH THE CHILD

#### WHAT WORKS?

**Get down to the child's eye level:** Let the child see your eyes and read your intentions.

**Speak softly and directly to the child:** Children respond better when you address them and not just the caregiver.

**Smile and play:** A smiling face makes a huge difference and will help your interaction with the child, and remember that for young children play is very important. If they leave laughing, they will look forward to come back.

**Be honest:** Hiding the truth from a child leads to loss of trust.

**Allow and respect normal emotions:** Crying is okay and so is anger – be patient with the child.

**Start with the least invasive activity:** Keep the child on the caregivers lap as much as possible and don't start with painful or invasive activities such as ear examination or blood drawing.

**Give the child choices:** Choices provide a sense of control. Let the child choose whether you examine the left or the right ear first, whether to have juice or water with medication.

**Engage the child:** Talk about things of interest to him or her such as school or friends or hobbies.

**Support the parent/child relationship:** Parents are the experts on their own children and even teens need their parents.

**Maintain your own self-control:** If you find yourself "losing it", take a break or get someone else to work with the child.

**Operate a "3 needle maximum" policy:** If you can't get blood the third time, and its not essential, leave it until the next visit.

#### WHAT DOESN'T WORK?

**Avoid comparing the child to others:** Each child is a person with his or her own individuality.

**Be careful when you touch children:** Physical affection is OK, and you must examine the child for medical reasons, but wait until the child is ready, and don't treat the child like a pet!

**Don't forget the child is in the room:** If you have to have a private conversation, make a separate appointment with the caregiver. This is especially important when discussing disclosure. Children always understand more than you think.

**Don't Pity:** Children need love, support and care but not pity.

**Don't infantilize the older child:** Treat children appropriately for their age.

**Try not to say "Be a good boy/girl":** Children do the best they can, and making them feel inadequate will not help build a good relationship.

**All children are not raised the same:** Approaches to child rearing and discipline are never the same in two families. Don't expect your experience to be the same as someone else's.

**Stop yourself before you threaten the child:** Making the child fear you will not build trust or confidence.

**Don't be grumpy:** A positive attitude and humor is especially effective with children and adolescents. If you are too serious, children will feel depressed about their illness and their visits to the doctor.





# DISCLOSURE

---



## KEY MESSAGE

*Disclosure is an ongoing process and should be individualised to include the child's cognitive ability, developmental stage, clinical status and social circumstances.*



## KEY MESSAGE

*Parents and caregivers of HIV-exposed infants are understandably anxious about the health of their children. Most are worried that their child has or will have HIV infection. Given the complexity of the subject, it can be very difficult to explain the issues around infant diagnosis to parents and caretakers. However, a number of steps can be taken to help them understand the situation better.*

- Begin talking about infant diagnosis as early as possible, preferably during the antenatal period or the first paediatric appointment.
- Inform parents that it can take many months, often as long as 18 months, to be sure that the child does not have HIV infection.
- Prepare them for early diagnostic testing by telling them that the child will have a blood test during the first months of life (6-12 weeks) that will aim to diagnose HIV infection in the baby (see section on HIV testing, page 31).
- Speaking openly with parents at each visit can be very helpful. Also, asking them for their questions, and addressing all of their questions and concerns can lessen their anxiety. Telling them about the baby's progress and highlighting positive findings (good growth, normal examination) can also be reassuring.



## KEY MESSAGE

*It is important to assess each caregiver's awareness of the child's right to understand what is happening to him/her or to someone in the family, and be involved in planning for the future.*




- Protecting the child from painful topics leaves him/her to cope with fears alone: fantasies may be worse than reality.
- Children become frightened when they sense fear in adults: talk naturally to the child about the infection and illness, and let her/him understand that the caregiver feels comfortable with this. Be attentive to a child's ways of expressing anxiety (withdrawal, anger, acting out, regression, craving attention, difficulty sleeping) and encourage him/her to talk about it.

- Start disclosing HIV status as soon as possible in an age-appropriate way.
- Ideally the caregiver should be the one to disclose to the child, with a trusted relative/family friend if possible, and should provide consistent on-going support and loving empathy throughout the process.
- Disclosure to children should be done little by little, and includes encouraging questions, providing truthful answers and making the child understand that he/she can come back with more questions at any time, providing a loving context, and using child-friendly language.
- Listen to the child and encourage him/her to express fears and emotions.
- Always be truthful to gain the child's trust.
- Involve the child in decisions concerning his/her future.
- Reassure the child that it is not his/her fault if he/she or a family member is sick.
- Tell the child whom he/she can talk to about the illness, not that it is a secret.
- Link the caregiver with a peer support group for caregivers of a child infected by HIV.



# STEP BY STEP GUIDE FOR CONVERSATIONS WITH CHILDREN (TOWARDS DISCLOSURE)

- Can be a difficult process for all concerned.
- Effective conversations are dependent on the age and understanding (developmental level) of the child.
- Aim to build up a body of knowledge in the child that leads to the point of disclosure of HIV diagnosis.
- The **first step** is to find out what the child already knows (often more than adults think).
- Failure of full disclosure by early teenage years can lead to:
  - Poor adherence
  - Emotional difficulties
  - Poor school performance
  - HIV transmission if sexually active.

<p><b>VERY YOUNG</b> 0 - 4 Years</p>  <p><b>NO DISCLOSURE YET</b></p>	<p><b>YOUNG CHILD</b> (Pre-school) 5 – 7 Years</p>  <p><b>EARLY DISCLOSURE</b></p>	<p><b>SCHOOL CHILD</b> 8 – 11 Years</p>  <p><b>PARTIAL DISCLOSURE</b></p>	<p><b>SCHOOL CHILD</b> 11 – 14 Years</p>  <p><b>FULL DISCLOSURE</b></p>
<p><b>DEVELOPMENTAL LEVEL</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Depends on adult for all needs and information</li> <li>▪ Child needs comfort, support and most of all security</li> </ul> <p><b>WHAT DO YOU EXPLAIN:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Carry on consultation with child present</li> <li>▪ Child too young for direct information about HIV but explanations to caregiver about how HIV can affect the child remain important</li> <li>▪ Provide ideas to help caregiver support child taking medicine</li> <li>▪ Congratulate child on taking medicines well</li> <li>▪ Address caregiver anxieties</li> <li>▪ Build relationship with the child through play/singing</li> <li>▪ Provide a safe and welcoming clinic</li> </ul> <p><b>AIM</b> BUILD UP CONFIDENCE of CHILD in HEALTH WORKERS and MEDICINE TAKING</p> <p><small>Compiled by Kimesh Naidoo (Department of Paediatrics - University of KwaZulu Natal), Diane Melvin (Department of Psychology - Great Ormond Street Hospital for Sick Children) and Juliet Houghton (Programme Director CHIVA South Africa) Contact Telephone: 031 260 4111/031 309 2217</small></p>	<p><b>DEVELOPMENTAL LEVEL</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Can understand concrete based ideas e.g. real events in the present and past</li> <li>▪ Thinking is based in the present</li> <li>▪ Take the lead from confidence of caregiver interactions with health workers</li> <li>▪ Beginning to link medicines and health</li> </ul> <p><b>WHAT DO YOU EXPLAIN:</b> <b>Child needs to learn about illness but not HIV by name yet</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Introduce ideas of good and bad health by eating healthy food, keeping clean, exercising, looking after teeth etc.</li> <li>▪ Medicines help to keep a body healthy and strong</li> <li>▪ Introduce infections as 'germs' that can hurt or damage the body/make you sick or hurt</li> <li>▪ Introduce (white) blood cells as the part of the body that look for and kill infections or germs</li> <li>▪ Some germs hide and you need to take medicines to help fight the germs</li> </ul> <p><b>AIM</b> UNDERSTANDING that MEDICINES SUPPORT the BODY to KEEP WELL</p>	<p><b>DEVELOPMENTAL LEVEL</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Able to hold onto ideas and apply them to new situations</li> <li>▪ Can understand past, present and future</li> <li>▪ Has social and moral awareness about right &amp; wrong behaviour</li> <li>▪ Beginning to be more curious and take some control over their lives</li> </ul> <p><b>WHAT DO YOU EXPLAIN:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Explain that the germ concerned is a virus</li> <li>▪ Viruses are 'clever germs' which can damage white blood cells</li> <li>▪ If medicines are not taken correctly, the virus can get stronger and stop the medicines working (resistance)</li> <li>▪ Naming of virus as HIV may occur but not essential</li> <li>▪ Need to explain that information is private and should only be shared with those agreed with the caregiver(s)</li> <li>▪ Help the child identify who they can talk with about their health or HIV with</li> <li>▪ Disclosure to symptomatic school age children is strongly encouraged</li> </ul> <p><b>AIM</b> NAMING of INFECTION as HIV VIRUS</p>	<p><b>DEVELOPMENTAL LEVEL</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ More abstract thinking (understands future consequences of actions)</li> <li>▪ Increasingly making decisions on their own regarding identity, independence, school, career</li> <li>▪ Puberty/sexual development</li> <li>▪ Dependence on caregivers decreases</li> <li>▪ Importance of relationships with friends increases</li> </ul> <p><b>WHAT DO YOU EXPLAIN:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Check understanding of health, medicines, sexual development and HIV infection</li> <li>▪ Directly address young person during clinic consultations</li> <li>▪ Need to understand responsibility for not transmitting HIV i.e. safer sex, and their rights i.e. family planning, confidentiality</li> <li>▪ Preparation for future, encourage direct involvement in discussions and decisions</li> <li>▪ Promote the benefits of attendance at adolescent support group</li> </ul> <p><b>AIM</b> FULL UNDERSTANDING and RIGHTS and RESPONSIBILITIES ABILITY to NEGOTIATE own HEALTH CARE</p>

# ASSESSING ADHERENCE

## WHEN WORKING WITH CHILDREN AND INFANTS

---

When initiating and providing paediatric ART, the Health Care Worker (HCW) and the multidisciplinary team work closely with caregivers and, depending upon the developmental level of the child, the child themselves. As with adult ART, this begins with a dialogue in which the patient and caregivers are prepared for life-long treatment and adherence through:

- providing HIV knowledge on disease progression and treatment
- assessing the patient's circumstances
- assessing support systems and treatment readiness
- identification of factors that could possibly compromise adherence.
- assessing caregiver reliability to adhere to treatment needs
- assessing structural factors for medication storage
- demonstration of good insight

The following tool – ***Adherence Counselling Form for Infants/Children*** – has been designed for the HCW when working with the caregiver of the child or infant.

### **Points to remember when using this tool in adherence counselling:**

- It is used over three sessions to gather information regarding the child's circumstances, to assess support available to the child, and assess adherence and treatment readiness. Though three sessions are not a strict requirement prior to ART initiation, the tool assumes limited patient/caregiver knowledge regarding ART, whereby a more thorough preparatory process is warranted.
- It is also used to equip the caregiver with specific information that would promote adherence – in every session there are opportunities to assess the level of knowledge that the caregiver has remembered from the previous session.
- Developing rapport with the caregiver will facilitate the assessment process and can serve as an opportunity to develop a relationship with the caregiver in the long-term treatment and care of the child.
- This tool is designed to be incorporated into the larger psychosocial support process and interventions with the family.



In addition to the HCW having sufficient knowledge and information on ART, this tool would work best if the HCW has sufficient knowledge and an understanding of the key psychosocial support issues in paediatric treatment and care.



**KEY MESSAGE:**

*This tool requires the use of basic counselling skills in conversation with the family. Additional information required to better utilise this tool, would be a sound understanding in working with issues regarding child disclosure.*

This tool has been developed by the Red Cross Children's Hospital in Cape Town and while it has been modified over a period of approximately 5 years, it is considered a work in progress.





# ADHERENCE COUNSELLING

## FORM FOR INFANTS / CHILDREN

---

### SESSION 1

**Have the following issues been discussed with the caregiver /patient?**

1. General Information about how the infant/child was infected	YES	NO
2. What HIV does	YES	NO
3. The difference between HIV and AIDS	YES	NO
4. The function of the CD4 in the body	YES	NO
5. What the viral load is and what it means	YES	NO
6. The purpose of the visit at the ART clinic and the possibility to start ARVs	YES	NO
7. Has the primary caregiver been able to identify an alternative treatment supporter	YES	NO
8. Does the primary caregiver know the infant/child's CD4 count?	YES	NO
9. Has the primary caregiver disclosed to the child?	YES	NO
10. Does the caregiver have any other disclosure issues?	YES	NO

11. If there are difficulties with disclosure, what are the issues and how will they be addressed?

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Have you addressed the following issues with the caregiver /child?**

12. Has the primary caregiver been able to identify an alternative treatment supporter? (Provide the name if possible)	YES	NO
13. Information regarding the clinic and procedures as well as clinic hours	YES	NO
14. If no alternative treatment supporter, treatment could be delayed	YES	NO

**Are there factors that could influence the success of the treatment?**

15. Socio-economic factors	YES	NO
16. Alcohol or drug abuse issues	YES	NO
17. Depression or other psychiatric conditions	YES	NO
18. Marriage or relationship issues	YES	NO
19. Issues related to religion or traditional healers	YES	NO

If the answer to any of the above is yes, please give details.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

20. Does the patient receive a grant?	YES	NO
21. Does the patient have other siblings?	YES	NO
22. If so, were they tested for HIV infection?	YES	NO

23. General Comments:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

24. Does the primary giver /child belong to a support group? If yes, please give details:	YES	NO
--	-----	----

.....

.....

.....

Summarise session:.....

.....

Compiled by: ..... Date: .....

Date of next appointment: .....

## SESSION 2

**Recap on previous session.**

**To answer the questions below, please use the following scale:**

1. No knowledge at all
2. Very limited knowledge
3. Some understanding
4. Good understanding
5. Understands as well as I do (better)

**How well does the primary caregiver / patient understand each of the following:**

RECAP INFORMATION	1	2	3	4	5
25. General Information about HIV transmission					
26. What HIV does to the body					
27. What is the difference between HIV and AIDS					
28. What the function of CD4 count is in the body					
29. What the viral load is					
30. What the viral load means					
31. The reason for the child to possibly start ARVs					
32. Has the primary caregiver been able to identify a treatment supporter?	YES		NO		
33. Has the primary caregiver brought a treatment supporter to this visit?	YES		NO		

Name of treatment Supporter: .....

Relationship: .....

Tel number: .....

34. Have there been any new disclosures since last visit?	YES	NO
---	-----	----

**Have you tackled the following issues with the patient?**

35. How ARVs work	YES	NO
36. When to take ARVs	YES	NO
37. The possible side effects of ARVs		
38. What to do if vomiting	YES	NO
39. What to do if doses are late or missed	YES	NO
40. What food restrictions if any are related to the treatment regimen	YES	NO
41. Stopping ARVs	YES	NO

42. The need to consult with a nurse or doctor before stopping medication	YES	NO
43. How to deal with medical problems between appointments (day hospitals , emergency room, clinic telephone )	YES	NO
44. Their fears around ARVs	YES	NO
45. The need to return medication at appointments	YES	NO
46. The need to take Bactrim/Cotrimoxazole if prescribed	YES	NO
47. The difference between Bactrim/Cotrimoxazole and ARVs	YES	NO
48. How to devise a treatment plan	YES	NO
49. The need to see the counsellor for the first six months	YES	NO
50. What to do in case of holidays or travel	YES	NO
51. Discuss safer sex/sexuality if appropriate	YES	NO
52. Will there be difficulties in the workplace with regard to bringing the child to clinic appointments?	YES	NO
53. The need to tell the HCW of any traditional or herbal medication usage	YES	NO

If so, what are the anticipated difficulties?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

54. General Comments: .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Summarise session:.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Compiled by: ..... Date: .....

Date of next appointment: .....

## SESSION 3

Recap on previous session.

To answer the questions below, please use the following scale:

1. No knowledge at all
2. Very limited knowledge
3. Some understanding
4. Good understanding
5. Understands as well as I do (better)

How well does the patient understand the following?

	1	2	3	4	5
55. How ARVs work					
56. When to take ARVs					
57. The possible side effects of ARVs					
58. What to do if vomiting					
59. What to do if doses are late or missed					
60. What food restrictions if any are related to their treatment regimen					
61. How to deal with medical problems between appointments					
62. The fears surrounding ARVs					
63. The need to return medication at appointments					
64. The need to take Bactrim/Cotrimoxazole if prescribed					
65. The difference between Bactrim/Cotrimoxazole and ARVs					
66. The need to see the counsellor for the first six months					
67. How to devise a treatment plan					
68. What to do in case of holiday or travel					
69. The need to consult with a doctor before stopping medication					
70. Discuss safer sex/sexuality if appropriate					
71. Has the primary care giver been able to identify a treatment supporter?	YES		NO		
72. Has the patient brought a treatment supporter at this visit?	YES		NO		



**Have you addressed the following issues with the patient?**

73. The need to inform all medical personnel when taking the child to any health facility for treatment, that they are on ARVs.	YES	NO
74. The need to contact the clinic if there are difficulties with upcoming appointments.	YES	NO
75. Does the patient want to start ARVs	YES	NO

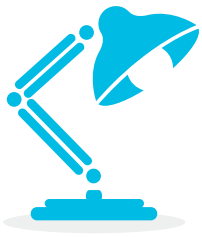
**How well does the patient understand each of the following?**

	1	2	3	4	5
76. How to give /take ARVs (timing)					
77. ARVs are a lifelong commitment					
78. Possible side effects of ARVs					
79. What to do in case of emergency					
80. In your opinion, is the patient ready to start ARVs?	YES		NO		

General Comments:.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

Completed by: ..... Date: .....

# CREATING AN ADOLESCENT-FRIENDLY ENVIRONMENT



## KEY MESSAGE

*Adolescents have different developmental needs than children do. Therefore, the manner in which health care workers relate to adolescents needs to acknowledge this, in order to encourage open communication*

There is a growing need, worldwide, for adolescent-friendly healthcare services, particularly, in response to the increase in HIV infections, amongst this group. Some of the services that adolescents require are different from those of adults, and adolescent-friendly, healthcare services should place a greater emphasis on providing information, psychosocial support, and preventative healthcare.

### **Key features of adolescent-friendly healthcare services include:**

- full participation of adolescents in healthcare decisions and interventions
- peer education, and life skills training
- integration with other services and organizations in the communities
- healthcare workers providing services to adolescents need to be trained in adolescent-friendly approaches, and communication
- an emphasis on privacy
- an emphasis on confidentiality

### **Adolescent-friendly healthcare services should, include information and interventions concerning, particularly:**

- general health  
sexual and reproductive health (STI information & treatment; management and prevention of pregnancy; sexual identity issues; HIV information, testing, treatment, adherence & disclosure)
- mental health
- substance abuse
- information and counseling on a range of issues, for example, nutrition, hygiene, substance abuse, HIV etc.)



## KEY MESSAGE

*It is important for healthcare workers working with adolescents and their families, to regularly assess whether their needs are being addressed.*

## HOW TO TALK TO ADOLESCENTS



### KEY MESSAGE

*Excellent communication is integral to positive interactions with adolescent clients. This means effectively sharing information, as well as listening to the young people who come for counselling and testing.*

TIP	WHAT TO DO AND SAY
Use simple language and short sentences. Avoid technical terms.	No medical terms or language
Use non-judgmental language.	Avoid saying, "You should . . . "; instead say, "You can . . ." or "You may want to think about . . .".
Be aware of the language and slang adolescents use to discuss sexual issues.	
Be clear in your explanations and make sure your clients understand.	For instance, when talking about "sex," clarify that sex includes oral, vaginal, and anal sex. Some youth engage in oral or anal sex because they do not consider it "real" sex.
Be encouraging and affirming	"It is great that you are taking responsibility.....and it seems like you are really trying hard to manage this situation.."
Use "active listening" by paraphrasing your clients' statements and repeating them back. This confirms that you understand what your clients are saying.	If a young person says he is concerned about HIV, you can say, "It sounds like you want to learn how to prevent HIV, and you have some questions about protecting yourself and your partner." This technique also gives your clients the opportunity to correct any misunderstandings.
Ask open-ended questions that will lead to discussion rather than questions that require only a "yes" or "no" answer.	"What do you know about protecting yourself from HIV?" rather than, "Do you know how to protect yourself from HIV?"
Use appropriate eye contact, gestures, and verbal responses to show that you are listening.	Nod your head or say "go on" to help assure young people that they are being heard.
Learn to read body language. Be conscious of what your own body language is communicating by the way you stand, sit, or make eye contact.	If you are frowning and sitting with your arms crossed in front of you, this could convey that you are angry or upset by what your client is telling you.
Make sure young clients understand what you are saying to them.	Do not simply ask, "Do you understand what I have said?" Clients may be too embarrassed to admit they do not. Instead, consider asking questions that will help you determine if the young person understands.
Rather than giving orders, help youth develop steps they can take to protect themselves.	"How do you think you could take care of yourself?"
Be genuine. Admit when you do not know how to answer a client's question, and try to find the answer when you can.	" That is very important....I am not sure about that, could I check and come back to you with the answer to your question?"

Adapted from: American Psychological Association. (2002). *Developing Adolescents. A Reference for Professionals*. Washington, DC.



## KEY MESSAGE

*Adolescence requires a very specific approach due to the complex transition from childhood to adulthood and its associated physical, emotional, cognitive and psychological changes.*

## STAGES OF ADOLESCENCE:

Category of change	EARLY: 10 - 15 YEARS	MIDDLE: 14 - 17 YEARS	LATE: 16 - 19 YEARS
<b>GROWTH OF BODY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Secondary sexual characteristics appear</li> <li>• Rapid growth reaches a peak</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Secondary sexual characteristics advance</li> <li>• Growth slows down</li> <li>• Has reached approximately 95% of adult growth</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Physically mature</li> </ul>
<b>GROWTH OF BRAIN</b> (Prefrontal cortex)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Brain growth occurs</li> <li>• Influence on social and problem solving skills</li> </ul>	
<b>COGNITION</b> (Ability to get knowledge through different ways of thinking)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses concrete thinking ("here and now")</li> <li>• Does not understand how a present action has results in the future.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Thinking can be more abstract (theoretical) but goes back to concrete thinking under stress.</li> <li>• Better understands results of own actions</li> <li>• Very self-absorbed</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Most thinking is now abstract</li> <li>• Plans for the future</li> <li>• Understands how choices and decisions now have an effect on the future</li> </ul>
<b>PSYCHOLOGICAL AND SOCIAL</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spends time thinking about rapid physical growth and body image (how others see them)</li> <li>• Frequent changes in mood</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Creates their body image</li> <li>• Thinks a lot about impractical or impossible dreams</li> <li>• Feels very powerful</li> <li>• Experiments with sex, drugs, friends, risks</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plans and follows long-term goals</li> <li>• Usually comfortable with own body image</li> <li>• Understands right from wrong (morally and ethically)</li> </ul>
<b>FAMILY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Struggles with rules about independence/dependence</li> <li>• Argues and is disobedient</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Argues with people in authority</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moving from a child-parent/guardian relationship to a more equal adult-adult relationship</li> </ul>
<b>PEER GROUP</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Important for their development</li> <li>• Intense friendships with same sex</li> <li>• Contact with opposite sex in groups</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strong peer friendships</li> <li>• Peer group most important and determines behaviour</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Decisions/values less influenced by peers in favour of individual friendships.</li> <li>• Selection of partner based on individual choice rather than what others think</li> </ul>
<b>SEXUALITY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Self-exploration and evaluation</li> <li>• Preoccupation with romantic fantasy</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forms stable relationships</li> <li>• Test how he/she can attract opposite sex</li> <li>• Sexual drives emerging</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mutual and balanced sexual relations</li> <li>• Plans for the future</li> <li>• More able to manage close and long-term sexual relationships</li> </ul>

# ADOLESCENCE CHECKLIST

The following list highlights key topics to consider in promoting mental health in adolescence. These topics may be discussed selectively during office visits, depending on the needs of the adolescent and family.

## SELF

- Self-esteem, including:**
  - Parental support
  - Peer influence
  - Resilience and handling failure
- Mood, including**
  - Stability of moods
  - Depression
  - Suicidal ideation (suicidal thoughts) and behaviours
- Body image, including:**
  - Physical appearance
  - Weight
- Sexuality, including:**
  - Sexual development/puberty
  - Sexual behaviour
  - Sexual identity
  - Parental expectations and communication
  - Prevention of sexually transmitted diseases including HIV/AIDS
  - Pregnancy
  - Sexual abuse and rape

## FAMILY

- Independence and responsibility, including:**
  - Importance of family support in adolescence
  - Increased independence
  - Increased influence of peers
  - Parental expectations and limit setting
  - Family conflict

## FRIENDS

- Peer relationships, including**
  - Peer support
  - Peer influence

## COMMUNITY

- School, including:**
  - Transition from middleschool/junior high to high school
  - Academic success
  - Homework
  - Extracurricular activities
  - Absenteeism, dropping out
  - Transition from high school to college or work
- High-risk behaviours and risk factors, including**
  - Substance use
  - Violent behaviour
  - Firearm use
  - Exposure to violence

## BRIDGES

- Opportunities for early identification and intervention, including:**
  - Anxiety problems and disorders
  - Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
  - Child maltreatment
  - Eating disorders
  - Learning problems and disorders
  - Mental retardation
  - Mood disorders: depressive and bipolar disorders
  - Obesity
  - Oppositional and aggressive behaviour
  - Pervasive developmental disorders
  - Substance use

## NOTES

---



---



# HIV TESTING

## THE "KIDZWHOTEST" MODEL



### KEY MESSAGE

*To date, HIV testing of children has been an adult-focused event between the caregiver and healthcare worker, with the child as an uninformed spectator who becomes afraid and confused. For children to experience this process calmly and without fear, they need to be included in the counselling and testing conversation.*

Healthcare workers lack the confidence or tools to know how to engage with children. The KidzWhoTest Model/Talk Tool uses storytelling to address HIV Pre- and Post-Test Counselling. It was designed to provide healthcare workers with a structured strategy to include the child aged between 4 and 11 years, in the counselling session and to disclose sensitive information in an age-appropriate, non-threatening, informative, and fun-filled manner.

**A child's language is play  
Storytelling is a form of play**



### KEY MESSAGE

*Stories provide children with a non-threatening form of communication that can address their issues and concerns. It builds on a natural way in which children learn about themselves and their relationship with the world around them. Stories are an effective tool when used in more structured counselling sessions. They can enhance self-awareness, aid the process of self-discovery, develop empathic understanding and improve self-efficacy, communication skills, and emotional growth.*

### SIMPLE STORYTELLING SUGGESTIONS:

- Always introduce the child to the storytelling tool first (see Talk Tool page 1).
- Allow the child to create the storytelling if needed, by asking them "What do you see happening here?" You can then fill in any gaps.
- Show an interest in the storytelling process. Mirror back to the child what he/she is expressing through words and body language.
- Let the child teach you, as well. Always be willing to learn something new.

The **Talk Tool** story is about a frog called Sibusiso Selesele (meaning “Blessing”), who is cared for by his caregiver, Mkhulu Noah. We follow Sibusiso’s step-by-step journey through the HIV testing health system. From a child’s perspective we learn if he is HIV-infected or not, and what he needs to do to either remain HIV-uninfected or care for himself should he be HIV- infected.

**The Talk Tool can be used in a variety of ways such as:**

- Preparing the caregiver for the testing and disclosure process of their child.
- During the initial one-on-one counselling, testing, and disclosure process with the child.
- Group pre-test information or general group education sessions.
- To reinforce with the caregiver basic HIV information learned during patient literacy and treatment readiness classes.
- To strengthen the key principles in HIV during routine follow-up care, Patient literacy/ Treatment Readiness and adherence counselling.

**What content does the Talk Tool cover?**

- Identifying and alleviating tension or anxiety from the child and their caregiver.
- Revising HIV basic information with the caregiver.
- Explaining age-appropriate disclosure.
- Establishing a disclosure plan with the caregiver.
- The role of the clinic or hospital in keeping children well & exploring their past experiences with these systems.
- What is a germ/virus?
- TB screening and infection prevention strategies.
- What do germs/viruses do in our bodies?
- The role of the CD4 cell.
- The role of medicines (incl. the difference between general medicines & ARVs).
- Sharing the positive or negative test result.
- Positive Living Strategies.
- HIV Prevention Strategies.
- The CD4 Count Test.
- Closing the session appropriately.

**Using the Talk Tool may be difficult at first, but don't give up.  
Learn something new.  
At times, this may seem silly to you, but it means a lot to the child.**

## THE "KIDZWHOTEST" MODEL CONSISTS OF 7 STAGES:

### 1. Establishing the Relationship (3 minutes)\* (TT page 1)

- Meeting, greeting and welcoming the child and the caregiver whilst creating a relaxed environment.
- To identify any underlying tension and anxiety in either the child or caregiver and bring comfort.

### 2. Preparation (10 minutes)\* (TT page 3)

- To provide the caregiver with a space to share their own HIV history and personal journey.
- Create a safe environment for the confidential sharing of information.
- Recap with or provide the caregiver with basic HIV information.

### 3. Education (15 minutes)\* (TT page 8)

- Providing age-appropriate pre-test education to the child.

### 4. The Testing Process (3 minutes)\* (TT page 22)

- Getting the child ready and conducting the HIV test by introducing the HIV blood test in a non-threatening and fear-inducing manner.

### 5. Disclosure Safety (7 minutes)\* (TT page 23)

- Engaging in an activity where the child creates their own Hand-of-Safety Tool, thus providing a safe platform for the protecting of confidential health information.

### 6. Sharing the Result (Positive or Negative) (15 minutes)\* (TT page 25)

- Providing age-appropriate post-test education around sharing either an HIV negative or positive result.

### 7. The CD4 Count Test (7 minutes)\* (TT page 33)

- Introducing and conducting the CD4 Count Test if the HIV test result was positive.

#### Talk Tool Addendums:

- Video Recording of a Counselling Session
- Sibusiso Selesele Colouring in and Hand-of-Safety templates

#### Footnote:

\*1.Layout consists of a picture board followed by a key message, process, story and questions.

\*2.TimeFrame is a guide and is flexible according to age, context and setting.

# my hand of safety

something that makes you



confused



scared



or sad

if you see



or hear



tell someone



on your  
hand of safety



